



光之守

2

【圣剑之光】

唐家三少引领新一轮幻想风暴强势来袭

本书是唐家三少的处女作 也是他得以一览群山的扛鼎之作
书中某些素材来自于他和他妻子相识、相恋的真实故事

Child of Light

(光之子)

Book 02

Light of the Holy Sword

Tang Jia San Shao

(唐家三少)

Story Description:

A Chinese fantasy webnovel under the sub-genre of “Magical Campus” by the author of Doulou Dalu, Kuang Shen and Shen Yin Wang Zuo. This is not a Xianxia.

The lazy Zhang Gong decides to learn light magic, a magic often ridiculed as useless for it's defensive nature. However, he eventually becomes the legendary Grand Magister. While trying to end the continent's east and west separation in order to unite all of the different races, he becomes every race's Child of Light.

Original Story can be found here: [Link](#)

Volume 4

Chapter 1: Returning Home

After we bid farewell to the friendly Nature Elves, we started to head home. We had finally reached the Xiuda border. Apart from me, everyone had feelings of intimacy as they returned to their homeland.

After three days, at a forked road, we stopped as one of the roads led to Xiuda and the other led to the Aixia kingdom. It was finally time to split.

Big Brother Zhan Hu said, “Zhang Gong, you have to take care of yourself, I will go with the rest to Xiuda to visit my father and family and then head back to my bandit’s nest to practice.”

I replied, “Big Brother, you also have to take care of yourself. Once I return to Aixia, I will also practice hard. In about three years, when I feel that I can seek the Holy God’s inheritance, I will come and find you.”

Xiu Si said, “Everyone must be diligent. Zhang Gong, after three years, we will meet up at Xiuda.”

I nodded my head. The rims of my eyes started to get moist. “Yes! When you head back, please give my regards to Teacher Wen. Dong Ri, you should stop feeling inferior. Except for us, how many people in the world had obtained the God’s inheritance? We are all great, and Hong Xue is a good girl. You have to cherish her.”

Dong Ri embraced my wide shoulders and cried, saying, “Zhang Gong, thank you. I will miss you. Please take care of yourself on your way home.”

We had a group hug. I deeply breathed in a mouthful of fresh air and wiped my tears off my face, saying, “Everyone take care, our Radiant Battle Squad is the best. I shall head off.”

After I said that, I spun around and stepped onto the road home. The tears I had suppressed flowed once more.

There were three months left till the end of the two-year appointment I made with Teacher Di. The first thing on my mind was to head home to see my parents. It had been more a year since I last saw them. I missed them greatly.

Since I was alone, I moved as quickly as possible to an isolated place to use teleportation. I would just need about ten days to reach the city of Sen Ke. I can see them soon. First, I decided to buy them presents. When I reached Sen Ke, I bought mother's favourite cake and father's favourite fruits. I started to carry all of them home.

My familiar village, I have returned. Many of the village children looked at me curiously. It was obvious that I had become an outsider.

Who is that in front of me? A familiar figure appeared in the area about fifty metres in front of me. He had a tall, strong and sturdy body. There was a girl beside him who was dainty and petite. The two appeared white intimate.

I hurriedly walked forward and patted the sturdy guy's shoulder. He turned around. Pleasantly surprised, I said, "Ao De! It really is you."

He looked at me suspiciously, but his expression turned from a bewildered look to a surprised one. "Zhang Gong, is it you? It really is you." We excitedly hugged each other.

Ao De said, "You have finally returned. Your mother missed you deeply. You are taller and more robust than before. I am so envious that you can go to the city to learn magic."

The girl beside Ao De pulled him to her and asked, "Ao De, who is he?" At that moment, I started to size her up. She was a pretty girl. She had a pair of large eyes that showed wittiness. A water green coloured skirt showed her dainty and delicate body. She also had thick and long braided hair.

Ao De awkwardly smiled at me and said, "Come, let me introduce you. This is my girlfriend, Luo Yu Hong, and this is Zhang Gong Wei. He is my childhood best friend. He is also an extremely powerful magician."

I smiled at Ao De and extended my hand. “Hi, you can call me Zhang Gong. It is a pleasure to meet you.”

Lou Yu naturally gripped my hand and said, “Hi! I am glad to meet you too.”

I softly punched at Ao De and said, “You rascal, you are capable of finding such a pretty girlfriend. I am so jealous!”

He laughed and said, “That’s correct, Luo Yu is our school’s flower. Only after I persistently wooed her did I finally get her. Your conditions are better than mine. There will definitely be lots of girls that will love you.” After hearing what Ao De had said, Luo Yu, who was beside him, started to pinch him till he screamed out in pain.

I scratched my head and said, “I have never thought about that problem before. Next time, after I get into the advanced magic academy, I shall find one. Ha ha.”

Ao De said, “I heard from your mother that your teacher had sent you out to gain experience. How was it? This experience will not delay your studies, will it?”

“That does not matter, going out was very beneficial to my training. Alright, I see that you are busy and I’m also in a rush to head home. Come over for dinner tonight.”

“Alright, I’ll go and find you tonight. We brothers should go and have a good drink tonight.”

Luo Yu, who was beside Ao De, pulled his ears and unhappily said, “You are not allowed to drink! You are quickly becoming a drunkard!” At that sight, I started to laugh. “Have fun arguing! I shall head off first.” After saying that, I ran off.

At the entrance of the house, I shouted, “Mother, Father, I’m back, I’m back!”

The door creaked open, then mother came walking out from inside. It had been nearly two years since the two had met. She looked like she had aged a little. “Zhang Gong, my child, you have finally returned home. I

missed you to death." Mother opened the door fully and started to hug me. I hugged her back. "Mother, I also missed you so much." Tears uncontrollably started to flow.

At the same time, father walked out from the house and smiled, saying, "Zhang Gong, you are finally back. Ever since you left, I did not know how many times your mother had cried. She thought about you everyday."

"Father!" After I let Mother go, I moved to father and gave him a passionate hug. Father said, "Ok, it's good that you are home. Come, let's go inside! By coincidence, we were resting today. Otherwise, you would not have been able to find us. Today, let's allow your mother to cook a few dishes. We, father and son, should really have a good drink."

"Great! I love to eat mother's cooking. Eating outside is never comparable to eating at home!" The feeling of being home is great!

After entering the house, father asked me, "How was trip? What did you experience?"

I answered, "It was alright. I did not encounter any major setbacks. It can be considered a success." Continuing, I told them that year's experience. Of course, I did not mention any dangerous moments as I didn't want them to worry.

After listening to me, mother said, "It is enough to just return safely!"

I said, "Father, mother, why don't you come with me? Currently, I am sure that I will be capable of taking care of you."

Father looked at mother once, before saying, "No! You just need to train properly. Your mother and I got used to the life here many years ago. Here, the people are simple and honest. The environment is also good and suitable for our retirement."

I tried to convince them to come with me again, but mother said, "You just need to visit us frequently, but we won't be able to join you either."

"Alright, I will prepare to head there when the time comes. After training at the advanced magic academy for two to three years, I will have to head out again to gain more experience."

Chapter 2: The Warmth of Home

After mother heard that I still had to gain experience, she got anxious. “You still need to gain more experience? I nearly died from worrying all this time, I was so scared that you would run into danger. Do you have to go again?”

I embraced her and said, “Mom, even if I have to go, it’s still a matter for two or three years into the future. We still don’t know what will happen, and we can’t plan for what will change.” Mother started to calm down. “Alright, you father and son continue to chat. I’ll go and make some delicious food.”

“Mom, please make more. I invited Ao De to come to our house for dinner.”

“Ok, I know.”

After mother went into the kitchen, I said to my father, “Father, once I enter and train at the Advanced Magic Academy, I’m afraid that I will have to head out again to gain more experience for a long period of time.” I started to tell him about the task that the God King had given us that I had left out earlier.

Father sighed a lot, before saying, “Child, for the peace and harmony of the world, go. You don’t need to worry about me or your mother. If you can get the God’s inheritance, I will be proud of you.”

I started to choke with sobs. “Fa-Father. Thank you.”

I took a sack out of my pouch and gave it to Father. “This is what Teacher Di gave me for my expenditures during training. I have not used much of it so I could leave some for you.”

Father smiled and took it. “That’s wonderful, my son is being so filial to us. Ha ha.” When he opened the sack, he was shocked by the shine of the treasures inside. The sack was filled with sparkling diamond coins.

“Wow! So much! You should just keep it for yourself.”

“I still have five hundred diamond coins so Mom and you don’t need to

be too thrifty.”

At this moment, Ao De’s voice came from outside the door. “Zhang Gong, I am here! Hurry and open the door!”

“Coming!” I hurriedly ran out to invite Ao De and Luo Yu in.

Ao De said, “Hello, uncle.”

“Good! Quickly take a seat! This should be Luo Yu, right?” Father asked, smiling.

Luo Yu’s face reddened as she said, “Hello, uncle.”

Father laughed and said, “Hello, little Luo Yu is becoming more and more pretty.”

I asked curiously, “Father, you’ve met Luo Yu before?”

Father said, “Of course I have! And I frequently see her. Every day she is always paired with Ao De. Almost everyone in the village has seen her. Ha ha.”

At this moment, Mother carried a dish in and said, “Yes! Look how skilled Ao De is, finding such a pretty girlfriend. When will you be bringing one home for Mom to see?”

“I also want to, but I have not found a match. I am not as capable as Ao De. Who would want to be with me anyway!”

Mother said, “I’m not asking for you to get an extremely beautiful girl. As long as she treats you well and is pretty, I will be satisfied.”

I smiled and said, “I do think the same way as you mom, but I also want to find an average girl. I find that beautiful girls are hard to deal with and have bad tempers.”

Ao De said, “Who says that! You just have to look at Luo Yu. She is extremely well tempered and is also very easy to deal with.” Luo Yu’s face reddened, but did not say anything.

I mock scolded, “Seeing how lucky you are, quickly go and bring the dishes out together with me!”

With everyone's help, the table was soon filled with sumptuous dishes. Everyone ate their meals joyously and harmoniously. I brought out a crystal bottle that contained the fragrant fruit wine, which everyone looked at with curiosity.

I mysteriously said, "This is the Nature Elves' fragrant fruit wine. It is very rare. I helped them a lot so they gifted it to me. Everyone have a taste!" I poured a small cup of wine for everyone. The scent of the fragrant wine filled the whole house.

Everyone looked at their cups curiously. Father, who drank frequently, said, "This is a really good wine! It's so fragrant!"

"It tastes even better! Everyone quickly have a try!" As expected, the fragrant wine subdued everyone. In only a short moment, the bottle of wine was finished and they wanted more! Of course, I told them that I only had one bottle.

Mother brought up the previous topic and said, "Zhang Gong, this time when you return to the academy, you must bring a girlfriend back home no matter what. If not, I will not forgive you. You are already about twenty years old! Usually everyone starts to get married at eighteen or nineteen, but you still have not found one yet!"

With a look I appealed to my father for help, who in turn said, "In this case, I cannot help you this time as I also wish for you to get married soon. At that time, you can give me a grandchild. Ha ha." After listening to what Father said, my entire face reddened.

I replied, "Ok! At that time, I will find an ugly daughter in law and come home!"

Mother smiled. "That does not matter, as long as she does not look worse than me!"

Father whispered, "Please don't find someone like your mother. You have to find someone with less attitude. If not, you will suffer for your whole life."

Mother's hearing was still very good and she had heard everything he

had said. Immediately, she angrily said, “My temper’s very bad? When have you suffered? After today, I won’t cook you food or wash your clothes anymore. I serve you everyday, yet you say I’m no good!”

Father immediately begged for mercy. “No! No! my wife is the best, prettiest, gentlest, wisest and kindest of them all! You are definitely a role model to any future mother that wants to be a good wife and a loving mother!” Father’s comical expression made all of us laugh.

Mother smiled and said, “You pathetic old man!”

Father asked me, “When are you returning to the academy?” Mother wordlessly looked at me.

I smiled and said, “This time I will be staying a few days to keep you company. In about a month’s time, I will start to head back. Does that sound fine? Mother, are you satisfied?”

Mother smiled and nodded, then said, “That is good enough! Out of the three hundred days in a year, you were never at home. Your father and I could only stare at each other every day. You don’t even know how lonely I was.”

This time, it was Father that shot back. “You were lonely when you were with me?”

Mother smiled. “Ha ha, who told you to say that I had a bad temper earlier!”

I hurriedly said, “That’s right! Father, Mom, do you want to learn some advanced magic? I can teach it to you! This is so that when I leave, you can practice the magic in your free time and will no longer feel lonely.”

Mother excitedly said, “That’s wonderful! It is a great idea, but the magic you learn is light magic. Your father and I are water and wind magicians. Can we still learn it?”

I said, “That does not matter as your bodies’ magic abilities are not very high, so even if you totally give up on learning, it will not be a big problem. You just need to relearn light magic. Light magic’s healing techniques are better than water magic’s anyway. Moreover, light magic’s

offensive power are also very powerful!"

Father said, "That's fine then! In any case, staying idle is still boring. Starting from tomorrow, your mother and I will learn light magic from you!"

Ao De said, "Add us in as well! We also want to learn!"

I said, "Alright! I'll start teaching you all tomorrow. The lesson will begin in the morning!" I am a light magic Magister. In the entire world, aside from Teacher Di, I should be the best at understanding light magic. Even so, teaching them will still prove to be a very difficult task.

Chapter 3: Return to the Academy

Early morning the next day, Ao De came running over. I smiled, saying, "You are quite impatient! Where is Luo Yu?"

Ao De panted and said, "I rushed here to tell you not to start the lesson yet. Luo Yu stays at Senke. I will meet up with her first and return afterwards. Can you start the training after we arrive?"

"Alright, hurry up! I'll be waiting for you."

As I saw the figure of Ao De's back leaving, I could not help but shake my head. Having a girlfriend really looked tiring. I decided I shouldn't find a pretty girl in the future, as they are troublesome.

"Zhang Gong, breakfast! Who was that?" Mother called out to me.

"Coming! It was Ao De. He said that he will first meet up with Luo Yu, before coming here to learn magic." While I said that, I hurriedly ran back into the house. Breakfast was sumptuous. It included milk, eggs, deep fried steamed bun, and lots of other stuff.

"First come, first serve!" I grabbed a fried steam bun and stuffed it into my mouth. Wah! It was scalding hot!

"Eat slowly, nobody is going to steal from you."

After we finished eating breakfast, they arrived. I said, "Have you eaten your breakfast? Do you want to eat something first?"

Luo Yu said, "We have already eaten. Ao De always said that you're good at magic. Please quickly start the class to enlighten me."

"You're even more impatient than Ao De. Alright!"

Father, Mother, Ao De, Luo Yu and I went to the courtyard. I said, "Ok, we will now learn some light magic. Firstly, if we want to start using light magic, we must learn how to gather the light elements. The light elements are peace loving elements. They symbolize radiance and righteousness. When gathering the light elements, you must not command their thoughts. The light elements are our friends..."

Just like that, I started their light magic cultivation. Actually, Ao De originally didn't want to learn with me because the previous incident had left an extremely deep impression on him. However, due to Luo Yu's insistence, he had no choice but to summon his courage to learn magic. After a few days of practice, since there were no incidence of the numbing sensations that he had felt previously, he started to calm down.

I used a month to successfully help them to gather light elements and taught them some basic light magic. I wrote down the incantations for intermediate light magic and left it for them.

It was time to go again; I had to leave once more.

"Father, Mom, please take care of yourselves! During the holiday in half a year's time, I will return. You will also need to train hard in light magic. I will check on your light magic when I return. Father, I'm giving you this bottle of fragrant wine. You will have to drink it slowly as once you finish drinking it, there will be none left." Originally, they were very reluctant to let me leave, but once Father saw the fragrant wine, his eyes immediately brightened. Mother also asked, "Son, do you still have some more wine? Give your mother one bottle as well." I brought back a total of five bottles. I drank one, and gave one bottle to Father, so I was left with three bottles remaining. I dealt with the pain and took another bottle out. "This is really the last bottle, you must drink it carefully."

Mother took it in high spirits and gave a warning expression to Father. "We will drink separately. You are not allowed to steal from me!" Looks like Mother had also fallen in love with the taste of the fragrant wine. Maybe it had something to do with the cultivation effects that the wine gave.

I looked at them, unsure of whether if I wanted to cry or laugh. I shouted, "I really should start to head out!"

Father waved his hands. "Go!" I smiled bitterly, before turning around and walking on the road back to school.

As he watched my fading back, Father smiled. "Silly child." Mother hooked an arm through Father's arm. "Seeing him go like this is also not

bad. If not, I will get upset again." The thought of not seeing her son for half a year made her eyes start to go red again.

Father sneakily said, "How about this? You give the fragrant wine to me, and I will bring you to see your son. How about that?"

Mother hurriedly hid the fragrant wine in her bosom. "No! I don't want to disturb my child. I want him to practice properly."

Leaving home, I wandered within nature. It had been nearly two years. I wondered how Teacher Di was. I walked into the forest and found an isolated area, before taking the magic array out of the book. I remembered that when I left Teacher Di initially, he told me that I just had to use this array to return to the school. I decided to try it out!

I carefully drew out the magic array. I drew every single line seriously. If I didn't, one mistake could change my destination unimaginably.

After using two days to draw, I finally completed the magic array. I set a concealing pattern within the magic array so only I could use it. If I were to reverse the magic array, I would return here. I left the same magic array at the Nature Elves' place. I even placed a mental connection on it. Using a special method, they could tell me their situation, if they needed to. The main purpose was so I could get there in time if they were ambushed by the dark elves.

After I checked every detail of the the magic array again and found that everything was in order, I stood in the center of the array and chanted, "Using my magic power as the medium, shift space and time!" Instantly, my body was sucked into the magic array. The magic array emitted a strong light and disappeared from the land.

I used my magic power to control the stability of the spell. With my current magic power, controlling the magic array was very easy.

A white light glowed, and I appeared in the backyard of the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. Wasn't this just outside Teacher Di's sleeping area? So he had placed the other end of the magic array here. This was really convenient and helped to cut down a lot of trouble.

Just as I started to head towards Teacher Di's bedroom, the door creaked open. Teacher Di's familiar body figure appeared. I hurriedly stepped forward a few steps and kneeled in front of him. "Teacher, I have returned!"

Teacher Di pulled me up. "I predicted that you should be coming back already. Just now when the magic power fluctuated, I hurriedly come out to have a look. It really is you! Come, enter the house."

I recounted all of the events of my trip in one go. It took a total of three hours. After Teacher Di heard the part where the God King explained that to become a true Grand Magister one must reach a state where there is no place in the whole body without Gold Dan, he shook in excitement.

"Looks like this experience had been very beneficial to you. Not only did you complete the task, but your magic power also reached the Magister level. It seems that I don't have anything left to teach you. What are your future plans?"

I replied, "This is what I am planning. I plan to go to the Advanced Magic Academy to train for a few years. Even though I won't learn much from that place, I really want to train there. The ambiance at that place is better. This way, I can also prepare myself to defeat the Demon King in the future!"

Teacher Di said, "Okay, then we'll do that! I'll make some arrangements for you. After you rest up for two days, you should start to head over there."

Chapter 4: Reunion of Brothers

The Kingdom of Aixia's Royal Advanced Magic Academy Year 3 Class 3.

The homeroom teacher, Water Magister Si Lan Yu, stood on the lecturer's platform. "Please quiet down! I have to introduce a new transfer student, Zhang Gong Wei."

Following what Teacher Yu said, I entered the classroom. I stood in front of the platform and smiled faintly toward the class. "Hello everyone, I hope that you will take care of me. My magic Major is Light and Minor is Spatial."

"Where did he come from?! How did he skip to our year 3 class? He should be starting from year 1, right?"

"Exactly! He looks quite handsome, but we still don't know how powerful he is." Two female students whispered to each other.

"You guys shouldn't have known this; he is already very famous. He is a talented student who came from the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. He has been one of the top students for five years consecutively. Powerful, right? I heard he even reached the Magister level!" A female student beside them exclaimed.

"Ah? Really!? So powerful? He and the teacher's skills aren't that different. It wouldn't be too bad to be his girlfriend!"

[TL Miki: This is when Zhang Gong's harem started to form :P]

[ED AmberShadow: even though he really doesn't want it to :3]

"Stop dreaming! With your figure, you want to be his girlfriend? If he's looking for one, then he will come for me!"

"You should also stop dreaming!"

....

Teacher Yu said, "Zhang Gong, take a seat in the back row. There is a vacant seat there."

I nodded and replied, "I will. Thank you, teacher!"

Afterwards, I walked to the back row and sat down.

Teacher Di had arranged everything really quickly; in only two days he had managed to get me admitted into the academy. I heard that Ma Ke was in another class and since I had yet to see him, I decided to go and find him during the break between classes.

“Ok! I shall begin teaching! Today, the class will be about how to control Advanced Magic. Firstly, you will need to have very strong magic power to support the magic spell. You can only start to talk about control after you have excess strength for the spell. Otherwise, you won’t be able to hit your target accurately. The spell might backfire and harm your own team members.” Teacher Yu paused with a terrified expression after what he said.

The students started to laugh. This teacher’s way of teaching was interesting. I leaned my head on my right hand and watched the approximately forty years old teacher.

“Previously, I wanted everyone to focus on cultivation to improve their magic power. This is really important! Magic power is the source of all magic. Now! We shall return to the original topic. Once you have strong magic power to support you, you will have to rely on your spiritual power to control the spell. Ma Ke, a student from class 1, has very strong spiritual power. He can easily control the spells he casts to reach his intended outcome. For example, if you throw a simple fire ball straight at an enemy, the enemy will dodge it. But if you control your spell to travel along an arc to hit your target, the chances of successfully hitting your target increase. If you can control it to chase after your target you will be close to mastering the technique.”

I thought in my heart, ‘Ma Ke is quite famous! He’s even close to a teacher that is not from his class. Looks like he didn’t remain idle for the last two years and has definitely improved greatly, but I don’t know if he’s reached the Magister level yet!’

In a short moment the class that Teacher Si Lan taught ended and I left to find Ma Ke. I had always carried around the dagger that he had

previously given me and I would frequently take it out to have a look whenever I have a free moment. It was as though I was seeing him in person! After all, Ma Ke is one of my best brothers and I start to get excited in anticipation of meeting him soon.

I turned my head to ask the female student who was sitting beside me, “Excuse me, how do I get to Year 3’s Class 1? I’m trying to find someone.”

The female student beside me looks ordinary, but her body figure is amazing. She is around 1.7m. She seems to be a daydreamer, lacking in understanding of what is said to her. Her hands are also very beautiful and fair. A faint brilliance seems to circulate under her skin, so it seems that her skills aren’t bad.

When I look into her eyes, I am stunned. Her large eyes give off a very familiar feeling and are also very alluring. If there is a ranking for eyes, hers will definitely be one of the most beautiful. I do not understand why I feel as if her eyes have a peculiar radiance emitting from them. I slowly become more confused as she continues to stare blankly at me.

[TL Miki: Did Zhang Gong fall in love with her?]

[ED AmberShadow: Thought he didn’t want a pretty girl...]

I returned to my senses first and waved my hands in front of her eyes. “Sorry to trouble you, can you please tell me how to get to Year 3 Class 1?”

“Ah!” She also came back to her senses and lowered her head. “It is the second room on the left after this classroom.”

“Thank you!” I did not think further. I had to make use of the break between classes to find Ma Ke. I followed her directions and found Year 3 Class 1’s classroom. The students were also taking a break. The class was in disarray, especially the corner that was full of female students. It seemed that they were chatting about something.

I shouted, “Excuse me! Is Ma Ke Sai here?” Due to my loud voice, the entire class looked in my direction.

Ma Ke’s slightly matured, but familiar voice rang out, “I’m here. Who are you?” His familiar face appeared from the corner full of female

students.

I smiled at him. He was at a loss for a moment before realizing it was me standing at the entrance.

He pushed past the female student beside him and hurried over. He opened his arms to give me a tight embrace. “Brother, is that really you? You are finally back!”

I hugged him back. “Of course it is me! Who else would it be? I have finally returned!” Our brotherly reunion made me so excited that tears started to flow.

I surveyed the class and noticed that almost all of the students’ mouths were frozen in ‘O’ shapes. Could it be that they thought that we were in that kind of a relationship? I whispered to Ma Ke, “Let’s change the location to have a chat. I don’t want to stay in the limelight.”

Ma Ke also surveyed the classroom and understood the situation. “Come! Let’s go to the field!” He pulled me out of his classroom.

Behind us, there were chattering voices. “Who was that who made Ma Ke so emotional?”

“Right? He looks quite handsome, but I have not seen him before! Is he from our academy?”

“Ma Ke couldn’t be homosexual, right?”

“You! You dare to badmouth Ma Ke! I will use my Fire Magic to burn you!”

“That’s right! We will never forgive anyone who dares badmouth him!” A group of girls exclaimed.

I nudged Ma Ke, “I didn’t know that you had changed so much after only two years in Advanced Magic Academy. You are no longer unwanted and have gotten popular enough to have so many female fans!”

Ma Ke hit me once, before jokingly scolding me, “Stop making fun of me! I am already extremely irritated by them. If you want them, you can have them!”

Chapter 5: Situation in the Academy

“I didn’t expect for you to be this happy at this academy! Looking back to that year where you kept on chasing Hai Yue, you don’t have to worry anymore.” It was clear that Ma Ke’s mood dampened after I mentioned Hai Yue. “How is Hai Yue?”

Ma Ke just raised his head to look at the blue sky without answering and started to sigh.

“What is the matter? Hai Yue should still be studying in the academy.”

Ma Ke nodded. “She is currently still in the academy, She and Hai Shui are in the same year as us, in Class 2, and Hai Ri is in year five Class 1. In my whole life, it seems like there’s never been hope for me to be with Hai Yue.”

I looked at Ma Ke seriously. “Now I know that you are truly serious when you say you have feelings for her. I had always thought that you were just playing around when we were in the Intermediate Magic Academy. I did not think that you were so smitten. Are you still chasing after her? Did Hai Ri forbid you from doing so? By now, you should have gotten together with her already.”

Ma Ke shook his head. “Hai Ri did not forbid me from doing so. He even allows it. The main problem is that Hai Yue has not developed any feelings for me. She just treats me as though I am an insect. I don’t stand a chance at getting her at all.”

I patted his shoulder. “I will not be able to help you in this case. I am in a worse case than where you are now. You at least know who you like, while I don’t have any targets yet. Ha ha, in my opinion, I think that you should be more proactive in trying to get her. With your conditions, how could she not fall for you? Just take it easy and relax!”

“There really is no hope already. She has a boyfriend, the eldest son of the Ri family. I heard that he is the successor of the family and is very powerful. He is called Feng Liang Ri. Although we haven’t dueled, he should not be any better than me. He is the same age as Hai Yue. When

our looks are compared, I also should not lose to him, but Hai Yue just continues to choose him over me.”

[TL Miki: tears Ma Ke, you poor guy!]

“It might be that she had a very deep, bad first impression of you. Do you need me to deal with the guy? Even if he is extremely powerful, I will still help you deal with him!”

Ma Ke hurriedly shook his head after hearing what I said. “No! You must not do that! Hai Yue will only hate me more in that case. I have not been interacting with her at all lately. I want to pass my feelings for her onto someone else to get over her, but my heart just can’t let her go! Boss! Let’s stop talking about this. From your tone earlier, you seem to have greatly improved your strength.”

I smilingly extended my left arm and made a slicing motion in the air. A white, radiant light flashed across, containing a large amount of light elements within it.

Ma Ke was shocked. “Wow, you are so powerful! You definitely have the strength of the advanced class. How did you do that without an incarnation and still get such large effects? This is too unbelievable. Do- Don’t tell me that...”

I nodded my head. “I have already reached the Magister level.”

Ma Ke was elated. “That’s great! After today, the world will have another Magister. I still require a few more years as currently it is just impossible for me to breakthrough to reach that level!”

“You also should not be too impatient! Luck also plays an important role. I can only tell you that you will need to deeply understand the thoughts of the magic elements.” I smilingly said.

“The thoughts of the magic elements?” Ma Ke curiously asked.

I shook my head. “You must understand them by yourself for it to be useful so you should not ask me how I understood them. Let’s get back to the topic about Hai Yue. You should do something that will make her look at you in a completely new light! You will have a chance that way!”

Ma Ke doubtfully scratched his head. “To be looked at in a new light? I will give it a try! How was your trip this time? Did you obtain the Holy Sword?”

I felt like crying when I heard ‘Holy Sword’. That Holy Sword had completely disappeared after entering my body. I had searched my whole body with mental energy for it, but to no avail. I had promised Teacher Di to never tell anyone about meeting the God King so I couldn’t tell him.

“Don’t even mention it! What a joke! I can’t find it anywhere (this is near the truth), even after making lots of friends!” I told him all about how I met Zhan Hu and the rest of the team. Ma Ke listened with great interest.

“I really wish that I had been there with you!” He showed a longing expression.

I patted his shoulder. “It’s ok! This time you couldn’t come, but there will always be another chance. During the next opportunity, we will definitely be able to become famous in the world.”

“Yes! We will definitely succeed!” Ma Ke’s eyes brightened with excitement.

“Right, Ma Ke! I have just returned to the academy. Can you give me an overview of what is happening?”

“The Royal Advanced Magic Academy is really complicated. It is not as simple as the Intermediate Magic Academy, where it is enough to just practice. The current emperor is aging and has no successor. Therefore, anyone who enters the Advanced Magic Academy will have their status increase greatly as people in power will fight to recruit them. The whole Kingdom of Aixia is currently enveloped by darkness. Aixia is a kingdom that is famous for its magicians so of course the big powers are targeting Advanced Class Magicians.”

[TL miki: Politics are all a pain in the a** XD]

I frowned. “It’s so complicated! How many powers are there?” If Aixia had a civil war in the near future over the succession, it would greatly

affect the fight against the Demon King.

Ma Ke continued to say, “Currently, there are three main powers. The first is Duke Te Yi. Have you heard of him before?”

I thought for a while. “I think I do remember hearing about him, but I’m not very familiar.”

“He is now extremely powerful as he currently controls the Royal Mage Union and he has a great influence on the kingdom’s economy, so he is a very strong royal competitor. The Royal Mage Union all graduated from this academy. Although there are only five hundred of them, their power is equivalent to that of the whole kingdom. Their power is definitely at least stronger than that of a Magister as the leader of the Royal Mage Union is one of the ten Magisters in the world. He is an earth Magister: Dun Yu Xi. Oh, right! It should be eleven Magisters instead! Ha ha!”

“Stop joking already! Dun Yu Xi is the leader of the Royal Mage Union. Why would he listen to a duke? Shouldn’t he only follow the direct orders of the emperor?”

“That is the most incredible point about the duke. I don’t know if it’s due to bribery or blackmail, but currently, Dun Yu Xi is standing on his side.”

“Who are the other two powers?”

“The two powers are....” Ma Ke suddenly stopped explaining in the middle of the conversation and stared in a fixed direction.

“Hey! Hey! What are you looking at?” I followed to look in the direction that he was looking in.

Chapter 6: Situation in the Academy II

It was Hai Yue! It had been a few years since I had last seen her, and she had become a young woman. Her elegant look hadn't changed at all! If anything, she had become even more graceful. I had wondered why Ma Ke had suddenly stopped talking - so it was because he had seen the girl of his dreams.

I lamented, "Hai Yue became even more beautiful, no wonder you can't get over her."

Ma Ke sighed, "The guy at her side is her current boyfriend, Feng Liang Ri!"

Only then did I notice the twenty years old man by her side. He was almost the same height as me, approximately 1.9m. His lean body contained strong powers. Although his looks were average, his large and lively eyes suited his face. It was likely that girls often grew fond of his looks.

I whispered to Ma Ke, "Let's go and greet them!"

Ma Ke startledly said, "No! She will definitely treat me badly."

I pretended to be angry and scolded, "You are such a coward! No wonder she hasn't developed any feelings for you. Quickly follow me!" After saying so, I took the initiative and walked up to them. Ma Ke had no choice but to follow behind me.

When I neared them, I laughed and said, "Why aren't you greeting your old playmate?"

Hai Yue looked up and down at me and showed a sudden expression of understanding. "Ah! You're Zhang Gong, it has been a few years since I last saw you!"

I pointed at Feng Liang at her side. "Aren't you going to introduce him to me?" Feng Liang's eyes flashed with caution.

Hai Yue's face reddened. "He is my boyfriend, Feng Liang Ri." I felt Ma Ke's body tense up behind me. Hai Yue pointed at me before saying, "He is

Zhang Gong Wei. He was my classmate when I was at the Royal Intermediate Academy. He even fought against my brother!"

I extended my hand and Feng Liang shook it asking, . "Hello, are you also studying in this academy?"

"Yes! I just transferred to the Year 3 Class 3. Today is my first day. Please look after me."

I pushed Ma Ke to the front. "Since we are all friends here, quickly give them your greetings!" Since I was much taller than Ma Ke, Hai Yue did not notice him standing behind me. Once she saw Ma Ke, her expression darkened.

[TL Miki: Why do you hate him so much? pout]

Ma Ke awkwardly smiled. "I hope you're doing well."

Hai Yue did not give him any face and interrupted. "Well? How am I well? I don't feel well at all when I see you. Zhang Gong, if you are here to be a middleman to convince me to go out with him, you're just wasting your time!"

I curiously asked, "What middleman? Oh~ you are talking about that year when Ma Ke pursued you. You don't need to worry about that. You still hate him after so many years? He didn't do anything to you. We've already known each other for so many years. You don't have to always treat him as though he is an enemy, even if you don't get along."

It was Hai Yue's turn to become awkward. Feng Liang, who was at her side, stood in front of her. "What Zhang Gong said is right. Hai Yue, you don't need to continue bickering over past things. Class is starting soon, let's head back."

Hai Yue snorted and walked away without another word.

Ma Ke's energy level deflated like a balloon and he lethargically said, "Boss, now you have seen it. I obviously don't stand a chance."

I gave him a violent slap on his head and angrily said, "You're truly worthless! I've never seen anyone more cowardly than you. You've yet to

be defeated but you're already cowering. How could she fall for you? She doesn't like a guy who's only heroic on the outside. I really don't understand what you're thinking. When you see Hai Yue, you are just like a mouse meeting a cat. Let's go! Class is starting."

Ma Ke frustratedly followed me back to the classroom, but did not go back to his. He sat in the same back row as me in my classroom. I did not listen much to the lesson. I started to ask Ma Ke, "Please continue to tell me about the academy's situation? Let's leave the talk about Hai Yue for next time."

Ma Ke regained some of his mood. "The three main powers are the Ri, Yue and Xing families who formed an alliance to form an elder group. As all of the families held powers over the kingdom for several generations, they all are already deeply rooted to the country. They could also influence all of the territories in the country, making it impossible to ignore them."

I curiously said, "If they are allies then why did Hai Ri still encourage you to chase after his sister? If Hai Yue marries the eldest son of the Ri family, won't it lead to a more beneficial marriage?"

Ma Ke bitterly smiled. "You think Feng Liang is such a good guy? I heard that he has already gone out with many girls and that they've ended up the same way. He plays with them and then dumps them. Brother Hai Ri knows I've been chasing after his sister for many years, so he knows that I'm seriously in love with Hai Yue. He doesn't care about Feng Liang at all so he encouraged me to chase after her."

[TL Miki: hmmph! If Hai Yue were to get dumped in the future, she will regret not choosing Ma Ke! As her punishment~, I hope that Ma Ke will move on by then!]

[ED: annoyance: i second that]

[2nd ED: Kai : with even more beautiful girl]

"Oh~ So it's like this! Ok now tell me who the last big power is."

“The last big power is the Emperor’s ’s blood related younger brother, Prince Ke Zha. He was also a great general in the Wang Kingdom so he holds lots of influence in the military. When comparing the Emperor’s strength to his, he is definitely stronger. Brother, I have been hiding something from you. Please forgive me after hearing me out.”

I seriously looked at him. “Just say it. Is it about your family?”

Ma Ke was surprised and said, “How did you know?”

I smiled. “When you previously refused to head out with me to gain experience, I’d already guessed that your family was not that simple. You can just tell me directly that you are from one of the three families.”

Ma Ke looked at me in shock and was flabbergasted.

At that moment, I sensed some danger and hurriedly cast a Light Shield. “Pu~” After that sound, I could tell from the fire sparks that it was just a small fireball.

I looked in the direction where the attack had come from. At the lecturer’s platform, there was an elderly magician. He seemed to be the teacher for the current lesson. Judging by his angry expression, we may have provoked him. In his angry expression, there was a also a sign of surprise, as he did not think that I would be able to thwart his sneak attack so easily.

The old magician scolded, “Did you come here for a lesson or just to chat?”

Ma Ke whispered to me secretly. “He’s known to have an extremely bad temper. We shouldn’t continue to provoke him.”

At that moment, the entire class of students was looking in our direction, including the ordinary female student sitting beside me. She seemed to have heard what Ma Ke was talking to me about before. I did not care about it at all as the facts should have been known to everyone already. She was not hearing anything new so it shouldn’t have mattered much.

I awkwardly smiled. “Ah~ Sorry, teacher. I will stop chatting and start to

seriously focus in class.”

The old magician’s expression softened a little. “You should be the new student. After class, please come to my office. Ma Ke, why are you here in Class 3? You should head back to your class. If you two continue chatting, I will have you scrub the toilet as punishment!”

Ma Ke surveyed the class and saw that the students were sniggering. He had no choice except to stand up and head to his class, but only after whispering to me, “I’ll tell you my identity later.”

Chapter 7: Vengeful Love Letter

The girl beside me whispered, “Serves you right.”

Did I irritate her? I didn’t. I took a baffled glance at her direction, but she pretended not to notice, and just continued to stare at the blackboard. I suddenly wanted to play a trick on her. I secretly condensed light elements into a small light beam the size of a finger. It passed through from under my armpit and poked at her *****.

She quivered for a moment before standing up and unexpectedly shouted in front of the whole class, “What are you doing?! Teacher, he molested me!”

I fell. I violently fell. Why did she have such an intense reaction? You don’t have to be like this!

The old mage, whose anger had just calmed down only moments ago, exploded once more. He angrily howled, “New guy! Get out and stand in the corridor!”

The other students in the class threw me despicable gazes as if I wasn’t worthy of my good looks. To think that I would actually molest that girl, with her looks only being average, was simply not up to my standards! I bitterly smiled and stood up, then started to walk out. Before leaving, I furiously glared at that girl. A look of ridicule flashed in her eyes, and she glared back unyieldingly.

I leaned against the corridor wall. Damn! I had just been played by a little girl. I had to have my revenge. I simply must! That action just now was too hateful, but how could I get my revenge? Throw a worm into her schoolbag? Use magic to humiliate her? No good, none of those ideas were good. They were just too ordinary. I had to think of an even better way to punish her. Humph!

[Kai : wow he sure is childish]

After class, the old mage brought me to his office. “Are you coming here to attend class or are you just here to play around?”

The old man was truly fierce. I lowered my head, “I’m sorry, Teacher. I know I’ve done wrong.”

“Humph! Save your act! From now on, I will be watching you closely. Did you not enter the academy through your connections? Even if you only came here to mingle with those of background, you cannot disturb the study of others. Tell me, just what is the name of the government official who gave you the recommendation to let you join this academy?” His tone was full of ridicule. It seemed that he had taken me for a noble.

I honestly told him, “It was Teacher Lao Lun Di who recently recommended me.”

The old man frowned and said, “Lao Lun Di, Lao Lun Di, don’t tell me he is the esteemed principal of the Intermediate Magic Academy?”

I nodded, saying, “That’s right, that old man. I’m his successor.”

“You’re Principal Di’s successor? Even if you are, you still shouldn’t disturb the class. Please take note of this from now on. You may leave.” His tone became much softer. I snickered to myself; Teacher Di’s name was quite useful.

After I left the office, I directly returned to the classroom. The students in class were surprised to see me return unscathed. I just continued to sit beside that girl.

I whispered to her, “You’re pretty fierce and daring to get me into trouble.”

With a cold “hump”, she said, “I got you into trouble? It’s just that lechers such as yourself should just die.” She humped again.

[ED annoyance: i feel like i am being addressed...]

Who would have imagined that a magnificent Magister such as myself would be played by a little girl. Very well, I must take my revenge. I will definitely let her know that I am not someone to be trifled with.

I suddenly thought of an excellent idea. I immediately took out a piece

of paper and began to furiously write in that paper. I actually did not even know which lesson we were currently on. It didn't matter. In any case, what the teacher was lecturing about was unsuitable for my cultivation. Every night, I just had to meditate and that was enough.

When the girl beside me saw that I was studiously writing things down, she could not help but look at me, baffled. I used my body to obstruct her view, making her unable to see what I was writing.

Writing through no less than half the class, I finally finished. I let out a long sigh and held the white paper up and read it once through from start to finish. I nodded my head in satisfaction.

I lightly tapped the shoulder of the classmate sitting in front of me. He turned around and frowned, before impatiently saying, "What do you want?" I suddenly made a diamond coin appear out of thin air. His brows unfolded and he gently asked, "What is the matter?"

I chuckled and whispered, "You just have to tell me the name of that violent girl who is sitting beside me, and this coin will be yours."

He sneakily took a glance at the girl beside me and said into my ear, "Her name is Mu Zi Mo." I snickered to myself. It seemed like the charm of money was still quite large. After that, I quickly wrote a few more words at the very top of the paper.

Mu Zi saw me acting very secretively and was curious. She wanted to steal a peek at the paper in my hand. I coldly looked at her, "You want to have a look?"

She was shocked and immediately moved backwards, saying, "What do you want?"

I handed the white paper over and said, "Here. Didn't you want to have a look at it?" Her curiosity urged her to take the white paper that was in my hand. Just from reading it, her face grew red. Although she wasn't very beautiful, her brightly reddened face was similar to that of a red apple. After looking at it, you just felt like wanting to take a bite.

This was what I had written on the white paper: Hello, Miss Mu Zi. Ever

since I first looked at you, I felt like we were destined to be together. Your large eyes attracted me in a way that made me unconsciously fall in love with you. Although you always acted coldly toward me, so much so that you even set me up, I am not one bit angry at all. Truly. Not angry at all. (...Omission of 2000 words...) I continuously teased you, simply wishing to attract your attention, to make you aware of my existence. I am too embarrassed to say to this in front of you as I am afraid of your refusal. I could only use this love letter to convey my feelings to you. Will you agree to date me?

Inscribed with sincere love for you, Zhang Gong.

This was the best plan that I had. Didn't she say I molested her? First, I would make her fall in love with me, before I started to get my revenge. Hehe. This idea was pretty good.

[ED Miki: Be careful what you wish for Zhang Gong! You might fall in love instead!]

After Mu Zi finished reading the love letter I gave her, she surprisingly did not dare to turn her head towards me. After a moment of peace, her blush faded away. She then turned her head towards me and said, "Boring. Stop using such cheap tricks to play with me." She crumpled the letter I gave her and threw it back to me. This was the result I had expected earlier on. With her bad impression of me, would she be fooled? Don't worry, take your time. Sooner or later I would have you in my trap.

I lowered my head, feigning a heartbroken appearance and tried to straighten the love letter. I carefully folded it and put it into my pocket. Afterwards I didn't say a thing and gazed at the blackboard, but my mind was planning how to arouse Mu Zi's affection and bring about my revenge.

Mu Zi looked at me, her eyes full of complicated emotions.

The bell ending class rung, but I did not move my head. I did not know whether or not my cool behavior moved her. Forget about it. I had to find Ma Ke first. That fellow still hadn't told me his identity.

Chapter 8: Ma Ke's Background

After taking only two steps, I saw Ma Ke walking in my direction. He seemed to be looking for me as well.

I pulled him along. "I was just about to come find you. Let's go and eat! After we eat, we'll take a break at the dormitory; before we continue to go for the afternoon lessons."

At the dinner table, Ma Ke was stunned when he saw me savagely sweeping up my meal. He said in shock, "Boss, you're still eating your meal in this manner. I'm impressed." I glared at him, indicating for him to shut up and quickly eat his meal.

A feminine voice sounded. "If he wasn't eating like this, he wouldn't be called White Rice Bucket. Don't you think that I'm right, Zhang Gong?"

With my mouth still full of food, I turned my head to have a look. It was a pretty girl that looked similar to Hai Yue. Ah~ I suddenly realised that she was the girl who used the spells Absolute Disruption and Water Dragon's Chant. I hurriedly swallowed my food and awkwardly smiled before saying, "Long time no see, Hai Shui! You've become even more beautiful."

Hai Shui's fair face reddened and said, "Really? I just heard from my sister that you'd returned. I figured that you'd be the same as before and rush to have your meal as quickly as possible. It really was as I expected! You haven't changed at all, you only grew taller and sturdier."

I started laughing. "You're also not the same as before. You grew up to be so beautiful! You're definitely the flower of our academy. Right, Ma Ke?"

In front of Hai Shui, Ma Ke could still be himself. "That's right! Currently, her potential suitors could form a whole squadron." (Five hundred people in a squadron) Hai Shui pouted playfully. "You're really hateful! Ma Ke, you're exaggerating too much! Since when did I have that many suitors?"

I pretended to panic and glanced around before looking at Ma Ke. "Let's

quickly finish our meals and retreat! If not, we'll be assaulted by a mass of students." After saying so, I laughed loudly with Ma Ke, causing the students near our table to look in our direction.

Hai Shui ran to my side and hammered me with her fist. "You're so hateful! How can you tease people like this?" She really is an amusing girl.

I winked at her. "How did I tease you?"

Hai Shui interrupted. "Enough of you already! I'm going to eat." She turned around and walked away.

I smiled at Ma Ke. "Her attitude is completely different from her sister's. She's so lively and adorable. Why don't you court her instead?"

Ma Ke suddenly became secretive and whispered in my ears, "Boss, you don't know about this, but she already likes someone."

"Really? Who?"

"The person who she likes is~... you."

[TL Miki: Ma Ke is an expert in relationships from chasing Hai Shui haha I am not sure of the credibility of him being an expert though :P]

I frowned. "That's enough! You're only joking with me. How could she possibly like me?"

"This's something you couldn't possibly know. Ever since that time when you defeated her, she couldn't forget about you. While you were out exploring the world, we were in the Advanced Magic Academy. She came to me a number of times asking for you. I told her that you had gone out to gain experience. She just didn't believe me and said that you had definitely gone to another school. She looked really depressed back then."

Ah~ that couldn't be true! How could she like me? Even though she was younger than Ma Ke and I by a year, her age was still similar to ours. I had always thought of her as a sister. I rumbled, "She can't really like me." At the same time I imagined dating her, and her casting Absolute Disruption on me whenever we argued. I wouldn't be able to stand that. I

shook my head rapidly. She also had such fierce siblings. I couldn't consider her being mine, and I didn't feel anything for her anyway.

I warned Ma Ke. "You're never allowed to bring this topic up again. Understood? Let's just eat and go!"

Before leaving, I took a sneak peek at Hai Shui. She was looking at me. After seeing my face, her face flushed red and she lowered her head. I quickly stopped looking. It seemed as though Ma Ke hadn't lied to me. I had to run away!

I dragged Ma Ke along with me as I ran to my dormitory. I sat on the bed and panted for a moment, before calming down.

Ma Ke was annoyed and said, "Boss, what are you doing? What's wrong with Hai Shui? You're acting like you had seen a ghost!"

I replied, "Just stop trying to help pair us up! You like Hai Yue, but I don't like Hai Shui. Please stop trying to get us together. Do you understand?"

Ma Ke curiously said, "What is wrong with Hai Shui? She's quite adorable and one of the top beauties of this academy."

I impatiently said, "Enough is enough! Can you just stop talking about this and quickly tell me your identity? You haven't settled your outstanding debts."

Ma Ke quickly apologized and smiled. "Haha, Boss, I was in the wrong. I shouldn't have purposely hidden my identity from you. It's just that my identity was only known by Teacher Long, even Teacher Di didn't know."

I teasingly said, "Enough! Stop rambling in circles and say that you are the young master of a famous family."

Ma Ke opened the dormitory door to check that nobody was listening in our conversation and locked the door before returning. (Usually students wouldn't be at the dormitory at noon) He came near my ears and whispered, "My father is Prince Ke Zha, also known as Ke Zha Ao Er. My real name is Ma Ke Ao Er, the second son of Prince Ke Zha."

“In other words, you’re royalty. Does anyone else know your identity?”

“Of course not! I have hidden my identity for two reasons: first so I could study and gain knowledge, and second, so I could observe talents and analyse the situation in the academy.”

I continued his words. “This is also for your father to recruit talented students, right? Please don’t try to recruit me! I don’t want to be an official, or worse still, a soldier.”

Ma Ke awkwardly smiled and said, “Why would I do that? How could we brothers talk about recruitment? You just need to support me in the future! Haha.” Ma Ke’s really was counting his chickens before they hatched. My teacher and I were both Light Magisters, where my teacher was ranked third among the ten current magisters, and was the principal of the Royal Intermediate Academy. We would definitely be able to influence the Aixia kingdom, as it specialised in magic powers. Although he had different plans when he first met, I knew his friendship wasn’t fake as, when we first met each other, we still weren’t that strong.

I patted his shoulder and said, “That’s enough! Say no more. As brothers, I will definitely help you.”

Ma Ke excitedly grabbed my hands, “You won’t blame me, will you, brother?”

I shook my head. “No problem! Now stop doing this, if someone sees us like this, they’ll think we’re homos. Let’s go! Afternoon lessons are starting!”

Chapter 9: A Duel of Words with the Teacher

I lazily walked into the classroom and sat in my seat. I had no idea what was happening during the lesson. Forget it! I decided to sleep for a while.

While lying on the table in a subconscious state, I felt a burning gaze on my back. Even if my senses were not very sensitive, I still would have easily noticed it. I thought that it was Mu Zi who was looking at me. I sniggered in my heart. Did she really believe that I had fallen in love with her? I decided to just ignore her and make her wait in suspense.

Without realizing it, I started to doze off.

In my semi-conscious state, I felt someone pushed me strongly. I instinctively pushed the person's hand away from me. However, that person kept on pushing me as I continued to push him away. I got annoyed and sat up, shouting, "What on earth do you want? Why are you so annoying? Stop disturbing my sleep!"

I was surrounded by gasps. Only then did I remembered that I was still in class. At that moment, I woke up from my sleepy state. I looked in the direction of the person who had been pushing me and saw Mu Zi angrily glaring at me. I blankly asked her, "Why did you push me?"

Mu Zi's face reddened instantly and she pouted and her lips pointed in a direction. The students near my desk heard our conversation and started to laugh loudly. I followed the direction her lips were pointing to. Wah~ There was a middle aged male teacher with an ashen expression on his face on the lecturer's platform. Hmm~ Why were his lips shaking?

[TL Miki: Zhang Gong, you are just too dense shakes my head and sighs~]

The male teacher said in a low and shaking voice, "You, stand up!"

I used my finger to point at my nose and questionly asked, "Are you talking to me?"

"Yes, you! Quickly, stand up now!"

I lazily stood up from my seat. It seemed like my brain had not fully

woken yet. I totally did not understand what the teacher meant. I asked, "Teacher, you don't look well. Are you unwell? I think that you should go to the hospital to have a checkup. If your illness is serious, it'll be terrible."

My surroundings suddenly became quiet. The students were all thinking, this student really dares to challenge the teacher's authority? In the morning he irritated one, and now, in the afternoon, he's irritating another one. It was just too impressive. They looked as if they were filled with anticipation as to how the teacher would deal with me.

The lecturer inhaled deeply as though trying to calm his strong emotions. He glared at me and said, "You come up and answer this question. I want to hear your explanation." As he said that, he pointed to the whiteboard, which had the main question for the lesson. Likely the teacher thought, if Zhang Gong answers wrongly or doesn't know how to answer, I'll immediately send him out of class and punish him by making him stand in the corridor.

I looked at the whiteboard and saw that it was about the relationships between the magic elements..

I frowned and thought for a moment. The teacher thought that I didn't know how to answer and was about to scold me, I started to speak.

"I believe that asking about the relationships of all magic is too general. Everyone should know about the different elements of magic. The six main elements are light, dark, water, fire, earth and wind. I said I found the current question too general because the relationships between the magic are just too complicated. In simpler terms, I believe that all magic can simultaneously support and counter when they interact."

The lecturer coldly smiled and said, "Able to support and counter each other at the same time? Everyone knows about magic countering each other, but support I've never heard of. In that case, water magic and fire magic can fuse together to become a flame?"

My brain had finally fully woken up. I thought, aren't you just trying to put me on the spot? I'm afraid that you can't. Your knowledge level can't

be compared to mine as even Teacher Di found my theory new. There is no way that you can fight against my theory.

I smiled and said, “Of course, water magic can become fire magic, and wind magic can also become earth magic. These examples are the simple ones. Light and dark magic have many similar properties. Let me ask everyone, if there is no light, where does darkness comes from, and vice versa? Even though they are countering magic, did that occurred naturally? If we dare to make a daring assumption, maybe before light and dark magic separate into two different magic, they were actually one kind of magic.”

“Are you just frightening the class? If not, how are you going to prove that what you just said was true?”

I shook my head and said, “I haven’t found any actual proof for it, that’s why I said it was a daring assumption. Even though I haven’t determined the exact relationship between light and dark magic, I can show an example of magic simultaneously supporting and interacting with each other.”

The lecturer was stunned, and seemed to forget that he was just making things difficult for me, said, “Continue speaking.”

I smiled and said, “It’s hard to believe if I just say it, so take a look.” I lifted both of my hands and casted two equally sized balls of water and fire magic. (I could use any elementary magic, except for dark magic.)

I continued to explain, “Everyone should know that water and fire magic counter each other. It should be like this.” I fused the two magic together. “Pu Su~” The two magic balls completely vanished.

“This is what happens when the amount of elements are the same. But if they had different amounts, what would happen? Everyone take a look at water and fire magic fusing together.”

Like last time, I summoned a ball of fire and water in each hand, but this time the fireball was much larger than the waterball. I slowly placed the waterball on top of the fireball. The waterball started to steam. This was because the fire magic was stronger than the water magic. Under my

control, the waterball caught on fire. (To those who know physics, they should know that water can be separated into hydrogen and oxygen gasses. One of the gasses was used as the catalyst in combustion.) Slowly, the two balls started to fuse and become one.

All of the students, including the lecturer, gasped in amazement.

The lecturer asked curiously, "How on earth did you do that?"

"Actually, it is very easy. At a certain point, the water can be lit on fire but won't be extinguished." This new information was hard for everyone to digest and accept fully.

"I will now continue to demonstrate fire becoming water."

This time, I used my left hand to cast a light magic ball of about fifty cm in diameter and casted a small fireball in my right hand, before placing the fireball in the center of the lightball.

I easily controlled the two magic and said at the same time. "Everyone! Please focus on the inside of the lightball." As expected, in a short moment, droplets of water began forming inside the lightball

I stopped the magic and made a conclusion. "That will be all. Those were two examples of magic interacting with each other. The countering aspect of magic is only part of the truth. There is nothing that is absolutely right as under different situations, it can be changed. This is something that I am still researching on. Teacher, I'm done answering the question."

The lecturer looked as if his spirit had left his body. It was not only him; the other students were in similar states. Any student who could attend the Academy was undoubtedly a genius, but they were being restricted to traditional magic. After my demonstration and explanations, everyone felt as though they had gained new knowledge about magic, but couldn't exactly tell what the new knowledge was. Thus, they were caught up in their own worlds and thoughts.

I looked at Mu Zi who was beside me. She was also in the same state as the rest. Haha, looked like my explanation wasn't bad. I decided to let

them continue to think about it, and play chess with their 'God of Dreams'.

Chapter 10: The 10 Great Masters

When the bell signalling the end of school rang, I slowly began to wake. While Mu Zi was still packing up her desk, I happily smiled at her and said, “Can I treat you to a meal? How was the lesson today? What I said made the teacher speechless!”

Mu Zi coldly replied, “Who would want to eat with you? You would only ruin my appetite. Besides, everything you said was false. The teacher just didn’t want to fuss about you.”

I showed a wronged expression. “How was it false? Those were my results from a long period of research. What’s so scary about me treating you to a meal? Let’s go together!”

Mu Zi coldly snorted and walked away without looking back at me.

I thought, why are you playing so hard to get, even though your looks are just average? I will definitely make you fall for me, just wait for it.

There was still time before dinner so I went to chat with Ma Ke in the dormitory and taught him some magic. After dinner, I did my everyday routine of cultivation: I slept.

Once I awoke, I felt very refreshed and full of magic power ready to be used at any time.

Just as I was about to go and look for him, Ma Ke arrived. “Ma Ke! Are you interested in a spar with me? My body is itching for one!”

Ma Ke instantly shook his head. “That’s not necessary! My level of magic can’t be compared to yours so how would that even be a competition? And I don’t want to be bullied by you. If you really want to fight, it’s not that difficult. You just need to challenge the top ten ranked students of the school.”

“The top ten ranked students of the academy? What’s that?”

“This academy has a ranking system. Those who can get themselves ranked are the top experts of the academy.”

“How do you get ranked?”

“That’s really easy! You just need to challenge a student who has a higher rank than yours. If you win the match, you will get that person’s rank and the ranking below that position will shift.”

“Do you have a rank?”

Ma Ke proudly exclaimed, “Of course I do! I am currently fifth ranked.”

Ma Ke was only fifth ranked despite his level. It was clear that the academy had numerous talented students. This sparked my interest. “Who else is in the top ten rankers?”

Ma Ke said, “The top ranker is a year 5 student who specialises in earth magic. He is extremely powerful. You should know that earth magic is generally good at defense, but bad at offense. However, not only does that person have an impregnable defence, but his offensive power is also even more unpredictable. He is extremely hard to deal with. I’ve also fought against him before, but even I couldn’t break his defense. He should at least be at the magic scholar level. You should go and directly challenge him. If you win, you will be the top ranker in this academy. He is known as Si Wa Ming.”

I curiously asked, “What about the rest of them?”

Ma Ke explained, “The second ranker is someone you know. He is big brother Hai Ri. He is extraordinarily gifted. In the past few years in the Advanced Magic Academy, he rapidly improved himself; even his fire magic is slightly stronger than mine. Basically, there isn’t much of a power difference between the top ten students. Who do you think is the third ranker?” Ma Ke gave me a secretive look.

Who was it? Did I know that person? It was probably Hai Shui. Her skills slightly exceeded those of her older sister, Hai Yue, so I decided that she would be my answer.

“Is it Hai Shui? Her Absolute Disruption and Water Dragon’s Chant should be more powerful than before.”

Ma Ke shook his head. “Hai Shui’s is a rank lower than me at sixth.”

“If it’s not Hai Shui, then who else could it be? It couldn’t be that scion

of the Ri family right?"

When I mentioned him, Ma Ke's expression darkened, but he still continued to shake his head. "Although he is powerful, he is only one rank higher than me at fourth."

"Ah~ I definitely won't be able to guess it. Those were all the students I know so just quickly tell me, who is the third ranker?"

Ma Ke grinned and said, "You know the third ranked person; she is none other than the girl who sits beside you, Mu Zi Mo."

I said in shock, "I wouldn't have thought that it would be her. She didn't seem that powerful. This is too unbelievable!"

Ma Ke smiled and replied, "Why is it unbelievable? Mu Zi is a very low profile person, but her wind magic is the best I've ever seen. Her magic control is greater than mine. She is definitely at the magic scholar level. If it wasn't for Tu Ke Feng, it's possible that the first rank would be hers. When I first attended this academy, I lost when I fought against her during the newcomer students' battle event. I was not satisfied with the outcome of the battle, so I challenged her many times afterward, but lost every time. Now I don't dare to duel with her. If you challenge her, I'll treat it as you helping me take my revenge."

I sighed. "You didn't know about this, but today I wrote her a love letter."

Ma Ke jumped in surprise and shouted, "What?! You actually wrote her a love letter! Although Mu Zi's magic power is strong, her looks are just ordinary. She is also the academy's well known ice princess. The last person who tried to court her faced a terrible outcome. Why did you choose her? You should have chosen Hai Shui. I don't think that Mu Zi deserves to be your girlfriend!"

I laughed before telling Ma Ke the motive behind the love letter. Ma Ke suddenly understood what was going on. He lifted his thumb. "Boss, the stunt that you just pulled is exceptional. I am impressed. It also serves as

a way for me to settle my grudge. Ha ha, don't worry! I definitely won't tell anyone about this."

"Let's head back to class! I will decide who I want to challenge after school."

During the lesson, I did the same thing as the day before. I took out a paper and frantically wrote on it. It read: Mu Zi, I was extremely surprised to find that you are the academy's third ranker. To prove that my power matches your strength, I have decided to challenge one of the other top ten experts of the academy. Can you cheer me on? Right now I'm just falling more and more in love with you... (The rest of the letter's contents were typical of what one would write to his girlfriend. I shall not waste my time by writing all of that down.)

Just like the day before, after I wrote the letter, I gave it to Mu Zi. She coldly looked at me and did not take the letter. "You are just too bored."

I tried to give the love letter to her again. "Just take a look, this is important! If you don't read it, you will regret it."

Mu Zi glared at me before skimming through the letter. Her face started to turn red, perhaps because what I wrote was too corny. It seemed that I still stood a chance, so I need to be even more serious.

It was just too bad that my letter was treated extremely terribly. She crumpled it into a ball, but this time she did not throw it back to me. She just directly threw it out the window.

I instantly became mad at her. I stood up and shouted, "It's fine if you don't accept me, but you can't just toss my love letter away?! I have sincerely written that letter!" After my outburst, the classroom dissolved in uproar.

Shoot! I realized I was still in class. Mu Zi's face paled and her lips seemed to start to shake.

Teacher Si Lan Yu, who was standing at the lecturer's platform, said, "Zhang Gong, what are you doing? This classroom is not a romantic place for you to confess your love."

I apologetically said, “Sorry Teacher Yu, I will pay more attention next time, but just now, Mu Zi tossed out a paper out the window. For the cleanliness of the academy, can you please give me permission to retrieve it?”

Teacher Si Lan Yu stared at me before erupting in laughter. “Go ahead, you mischievous kid!”

Chapter 11: A Proper Challenge

If Mu Zi hadn't been so powerful, the students probably would have teased her.

I ran downstairs as quickly as I could to retrieve the second love letter. Before I sat back in my seat, I glared furiously at Mu Zi. After that, I stashed the second love letter, just as I had with the first one.

I seethingly ignored her. 'She really didn't know how to cherish my hard work. Did she know that I was just playing with her? It couldn't be. I'll continue to think about that the next day. Today, I really wanted to play with one of the top rankers. I wondered who I should pick?'

'If my first challenge was with the top ranking earth magician, it would seem like I am a show-off; that would be a terrible decision. The second ranker is big brother Hai Ri, but I don't feel like fighting him. The third ranker is Mu Zi. If I challenge her, would there still be any chance of chasing her after? No. For my grand plan, I can't challenge her. The fourth ranker is the Ri family's scion. That's right! It shall be him. I can also help Ma Ke have his revenge. Haha, if Hai Yue sees me defeating her boyfriend, I wonder what would happen. I might even create a chance for Ma Ke. Great! That will be my choice!'

Thinking about that, I couldn't stop myself from giggling. Mu Zi looked at me from the side and thought aloud, "What is he plotting now..."

My hearing was very sensitive. I looked at her and whispered, "You will find that out after school."

A day of lessons quickly ended. Once the school bell rang to signal the end of school, I dashed out of the classroom and immediately ran to the main school building. I took a deep breath and shouted, "Feng Liang Ri! I am Zhang Gong Wei. I am here to challenge you to a duel. If you hear this, please come to the school's field. I will be waiting for you there!"

A clear and bright voice sounded from the building. "Alright! I accept!"

Success! Ha ha, I quickly ran to the field and waited at the center of the field for my opponent to come.

I checked my body's status. 'My magic power and mental energy were in top conditions. I was extremely confident as I definitely didn't believe that Feng Liang Ri could stand against my Magister level power.'

'It looked like my previous shouting had had an effect; in a short period of time, I was surrounded by students.'

"Who is that? I've never seen him before and he actually dares to challenge Feng Liang!"

"It's been a long time since someone last challenged the top ten rankers. This match will be exciting to watch."

"Will he even be able to win? He looks quite handsome, but I'm not sure about his magic power."

The surrounding students discussed amongst themselves.

Ma Ke pushed his way through the crowd and ran to my side. He whispered. "Boss, why are you challenging Feng Liang RI?"

I was stunned and said, "Why can't I challenge him? I am challenging him for you. I want to help you get your revenge. Is that bad?"

Ma Ke hurriedly circled around me. "Boss, you've caused me severe trouble this time. Hai Yue will definitely think that I asked you to challenge Feng Liang. She'll hate me even more now!"

I laughed while bending my body forward. "What do you think I should do now? Do you really think I'll withdraw from the match now? You also see the crowd that's formed. If I withdraw from the challenge, I won't be able to continue attending this academy. It's already happened. You have to look at the situation calmly. Hai Yue doesn't like you. If she hates you more, it'll be better, because it can help deepen her impression of you."

"Boss, what are you talking about...?"

At that moment, Feng Liang Ri arrived. His girlfriend, Hai Yue, was by his side.

Hai Yue ran over in anger and shouted at me, "Are you insane? Why are you challenging Feng Liang? He has never offended you. If you really have

the ability, why don't you just challenge the top ranker Si Wa Ming!"

I gave her a helpless expression and smiled. "Why? Are you afraid that your lover will lose to me? You don't trust him?"

Just when Hai Yue was about to retort, Ma Ke quickly explained. "Hai Yue, Zhang Gong doesn't have any bad intentions. He just wants to get a rank."

Hai Yue was still furious so she turned to face Ma Ke. "It's you! You must've been the one who encouraged him! You are so despicable. Just give up! I, Hai Yue, will definitely not fall for a despicable person like you! Hmph!"

Ma Ke's face immediately paled. I patted his shoulder. "Stop causing more trouble and go stand at the side." Hai Yue's disrespectful attitude towards Ma Ke was making me furious.

Hai Shui also ran over and pulled Hai Yue away. "Sister, we should just let them battle. It's impossible to stop the match from happening." After saying that, she stared at me for a while.

Feng Liang's clear and bright voice voiced out, "I've heard from Hai Yue that your magic spells are very strong. Do enlighten me! Everyone, please back up! Hai Yue, it's alright. Please step out of the ring."

Feng Liang Ri and I finally stood face to face at the center of the field. I shouted, "All students, please back up and allow us to have a 500m circumference of space to prevent any accidental injuries that may happen during the duel." A colourful rainbow-coloured magic spell suddenly covered 500m of the field with Feng Liang and I at its center.

I would definitely show my prowess to Feng Liang so he would know that we brothers were not that easy to bully.

I made a hand signal as a sign for him to have the first move. "Let's begin and let me experience your Ri family's exceptional magic spells!"

Feng Liang smiled. "I won't be modest and will begin the battle. Free wind, listen to my command, form a violent Wind Tornado!" A small Wind Tornado gathered in front of him. 'What was he up to? Why was he not

directly attacking me? I didn't need to chant my spells anyway so I wasn't impatient. I decided to continue to see what would happen.'

"Free wind, listen to my command, form a violent Wind Tornado!"

"Free wind, listen to my command, form a violent Wind Tornado!"

.....

'So that's what he was doing! In a short period of time, Feng Liang had actually cast nine small Wind Tornados.' I told him, "The Wind Tornado will always be powerless against me; no matter how many times you cast it. Please stop wasting your magic power!"

Feng Liang grinned at me. "Really? Violent Wind Tornado! Release your power to destroy and tear apart everything in front of you!"

Following his chant, the intermediate class Wind Tornados actually moved and collided with each other. They swirled up sand and stones. Finally, all nine Wind Tornados fused into one Wind Tornado. The surrounding air seemed to become a vacuum. When the Wind Tornado reached a critical point, it exploded!

'This is bad! It was a wind fusion magic spell. It was very powerful and it could unexpectedly reach the level of an advanced level spell. It looked like Feng Liang wasn't that simple after all!'

I hurriedly cast three light shields to gain some time.

"Great Light elements! Please lend me your great powers! Let the unlimited light shine on the whole land. Illuminate - Brilliant Empire!" I chose to fight back relentlessly.

Chapter 12: Heavenly Sun Devouring Hound

I slowly rose from the ground, my body glowing with light. I raised my head. The Gold Dan from my upper dantian surged with magic power that filled my entire body. I gathered the light elements to make an approximately five meter in diameter pillar and made it fly toward Feng Liang.

“Light magician!” The surrounding students gasped.

With my magic power at the time, Brilliant Empire was very different from before. When the violent Wind Tornado and Brilliant Empire spells collided, Feng Liang’s magic power was unexpectedly very powerful. This was probably related to the way his spell was cast.

Atop the field, a hurricane began swirling into existence. I was pushed back three steps by his Wind Tornado as I wasn’t prepared for it. The air that was lost came back again.

Feng Liang was fine, but he looked shocked. “You could actually easily counter my violent storm wind!”

I dusted the dirt off my body. “It’s been some time since someone placed me in a disadvantageous position. The magic spell you just used was great! Is that your original spell?”

Feng Liang nodded. “I made Wind Tornados spinning in opposite directions to collide. The final, fused Wind Tornado has a very strong offensive power.”

I was surprised. “Your magic control is really strong. Let’s continue! I want to see if you have any other exceptional spells. Any spells weaker than the one you used just now will be useless against me.”

Feng Liang couldn’t help but smile. “You’re interesting for warning your opponent. A good opponent such as yourself is really hard to find. I shall let you experience my Ri family’s traditional magic spell.”

After hearing that he was going to use a traditional spell, my heart trembled in fear as I remembered how disastrous it had been when I

previously fought with Hai Shui. I instantly raised my guard and secretly started to gather my magic power in my right hand.

Feng Liang quickly chanted and six walls of wind swiftly gathered in front of him to protect him. ‘It was obvious that it is to gain some times to cast the more powerful spell. Seeing how cautious he was, I knew that the long spell he was chanting wouldn’t be easy to counter.’

I waved my right hand and a huge light blade struck his defensive wall of wind. Feng Liang’s facial expression suddenly changed. “The day lights up in the sky, the heavenly hound shall descend. It is impossible to resist and will engulf everything and bring endless darkness to the land—Heavenly Sun Devouring Hound!”

Once my light blade succeeded in breaking his walls of wind, he finished chanting the spell. Feng Liang’s face paled and his blond hair turned black and straightened. His eyes seemed to emit a light. He started to chant something I didn’t understand. A dark aura surrounded his body.

When the light blade struck at his head, the dark aura vigorously scraped against the blade. The light elements unexpectedly started to diffuse and no longer released their powers.

‘I was scared! What was that magic? Why did it seem so similar to that magic clan’s Zhu Gan’s magic? Wasn’t Feng Liang from the Ri family? How could he know dark magic?’

Mu Zi, who was in the crowd watching the match, showed a strange expression and was very interested in the spell Feng Liang cast.

The black aura surrounding Feng Liang thickened. He started to speak in a foreign language. “This is our Ri family’s Heavenly Sun Devouring Hound spell! You are lucky that I only recently inherited the spell. The main special effect of the spell is that it can engulf everything, including magic elements. I hope that you will not be the first sacrifice to this spell! Hehehehe...”

Hai Yue who was behind him was also frightened by his evil appearance. She had never imagined that her prince on a white horse could become so cold. He was like a totally different person.

I was totally frightened from his sudden change and hurriedly chanted, "Righteous, gentle, warm, serious, strict lights and lights of destruction! Please gather at my side and become endless light rays to exterminate all evil and bring salvation to the world!-- Infinite Radiant Lights!" This was my last trump card, the advanced spell I had only learned recently.

Feng Liang's spell finished. He suddenly let out a long, mourning cry. The black aura surrounding his body surged out and formed a huge hound shape before pouncing towards me.

A strong pressure suddenly covered the area. My body began to radiate golden lights. They were from my upper Dantian's Gold Dan, a clear, spherical, transparent golden ball the size of a ping pong ball that could increase my magic power. All I could do was release it to increase my magic power gathering speed. The light elements from my surroundings started to gather. Under my control, my Gold Dan released a ray of gentle, one meter in diameter golden light, and shot it towards the 'Heavenly Hound'.

The 'Heavenly Hound' in the air opened its mouth to try and devour the golden light. I could feel my magic power quickly decreasing. Feng Liang's situation was also not that good. Once the 'Heavenly Hound' started to absorb the golden light, his entire body shivered and he coughed out a mouthful of blood. He continued to bitterly hold on as supporting the spell used a lot of his energy. He continued to chant foreign words and his body kept supplying dark energy to the 'Heavenly Hound'.

'This couldn't carry on. If I allowed him to continue supporting the spell, my power would eventually weaken and the spell would totally engulf me along with my magic spell! I could only fight using all of my abilities.'

'I thought of my total failure in defeating him as I made the Gold Dan emit golden light and simultaneously made it go towards the mouth of the 'Heavenly Hound'. As the Gold Dan and the golden light vanished in the huge mouth of the 'Heavenly Hound', I got nervous. If I couldn't defeat it with that move, my chances of succeeding would decrease, even

if I was to recover all of my lost magic power.'

The 'Heavenly Hound' that was in the air tumbled and slowly lost its Hound shape. "Peng!" The 'Heavenly Hound' exploded, leaving the dim Gold Dan in the air. I immediately used my remaining power to retrieve it. I had used a lot of magic power, but luckily the Gold Dan hadn't been completely used up.

Feng Liang showed a strange expression and I started to shout. Not good! Feng Liang spat out a mist of blood. Blood came gushing out from all seven of his apertures and he fell to the ground.

I used short distance teleportation to move to his side. 'Previously I really couldn't have held back! If not, I really would've been engulfed by that magic spell.'

When I appeared in front of him, his hair had gone back to normal. He was in a severe condition. I immediately used my remaining power to cast a recovery spell to stabilize his condition.

Chapter 13: A Student Facing Death

The first person to run up after the barrier dispersed was Hai Yue. She glared at me viciously and shouted, “You are ruthless! If Feng Liang dies, I will make sure you are buried along with him! Gentle water, form a cone of ice and charge towards my foe!”

I had just used all of my remaining power to help Feng Liang. I heaved a sigh of relief; it should be enough to secure his life. The ice cone flew over. With my whole body devoid of strength, I could only watch as it hurtled towards me. When the cone was about to pierce through my chest, an unfamiliar power suddenly surged out from my body and stopped the ice cone after it pierced half an inch into my body.

The impact of the ice cone still made me fly backwards and sent violent shock through my body; which made me spit out a mouthful of blood.

“What are you doing? Can’t you see that Zhang Gong was saving Feng Liang?” Ma Ke shouted as he ran in front of me and shielded me. Hai Yue directed the same vicious gaze to him. “You’re all terrible!” After this outburst, she lifted Feng Liang, turned around and walked away.

Ma Ke sighed and hurriedly came to help me. “Boss, are you ok?”

I held onto my pain throbbing chest and said, “I will survive, but Hai Yue was really fierce.”

Ma Ke said, “We will be her enemies from now on! There is nothing we can do to salvage the situation! That said, you really are capable, Boss. Even after such a tough match, you still had enough power to cast a defensive spell at the end. I’m truly impressed by your strength.”

Hai Shui walked over and Ma Ke instinctively shielded my body.

There was a complicated glimmer in Hai Shui’s eyes as she spoke. “I don’t have any bad intentions. Just let me have a look at Zhang Gong’s wound, will you?”

Ma Ke turned his head and looked at me questioningly. After seeing me nodding my head, Ma Ke stepped aside.

Hai Shui chanted, “Gentle water, use your kind heart to form a recovery potion and completely heal the wound before you.” The water elements gathered in her hand and formed a light blue colored ball that flew towards my chest. An icy feeling flowed through my entire body as the wound on my chest slowly healed and my internal injuries recovered and my internal pain I was feeling felt much better. Only the massive amount of magic power I had used had not fully recover.

I smiled, “Hai Shui, thank you.”

Hai Shui shook her head, “Why did your relationship with sister become so terrible? Please don’t blame sister, alright? She was just too angry to think about what she was saying.”

“Why would I blame her? If I had been in her shoes, I probably would’ve reacted even more fiercely than she did. I’m alright already, you should head back to check on your sister.”

Hai Shui was elated and said sweetly, “Thank you, Zhang Gong! I’ll head back. See you later!”

“See you later!”

Watching Hai Shui’s back fade, Ma Ke said, “Boss, it looks like Hai Shui really does have feelings for you. If she didn’t, she never would’ve treated you.”

I frowned and said, “Stop talking nonsense and help me go back.”

Ma Ke supported me all the way back to the dormitory.

A pair of clear eyes were focused on our backs, and its owner muttered to herself, “Did you challenge Feng Liang for me? Your magic power is stronger than before. Could it be that you really fell in love with me? I should hate you, but I just can’t. Why did you have to disturb my heart? It is impossible for us to be together, you should have chosen Hai Shui instead.” After muttering these words, she turned around and walked in the opposite direction. I didn’t hear the mutters at all.

After we reached the dormitory, Ma Ke asked, “Boss, how are you feeling?”

I lay on the bed. “Ma Ke, please don’t blame me, okay?”

Ma Ke quietly sighed, “Boss, why did you do that? Why didn’t you inform me before you challenged Feng Liang Ri? After this, I have no hope of getting her.”

I slowly shook my head. “Stop thinking like this, there is still hope. As long as you continue to love Hai Yue, nothing is impossible. When I fought against Feng Liang, did you see the last spell he cast, ‘Heavenly Sun Devouring Hound?’”

Ma Ke nodded. “I saw, why?”

I replied, “Don’t you feel that he looked really sinister at that time? If he really does have an evil personality, there is a big chance that Hai Yue will dump him. There are three reasons as to why I challenged him. First, I wanted to help you to get your revenge. Second, I wanted to have a look at his power, and lastly, I also wanted to figure out his personality flaws through his magic power. If I know his weak points, then you will stand a chance in getting Hai Yue. Do you understand?”

Ma Ke looked thoughtful. “I believe that even if they really break up, she still won’t fall for me. There’s nobody she hates more than me.”

I smiled. “Actually, there is a positive side to her hating you to the core. If she didn’t care about you, you would really have no hope at all. She hates you, which means you still have a place in her heart. Whether you can turn this hatred into love depends entirely on you. The best way is to do something that will move her to the point where she’ll forgive every single one of your shortcomings.”

This got Ma Ke interested. “What should I do to move her to that extent then?”

I frowned. “You really are incorrigible! How could I teach you this? You have to create chances on your own. If you can’t change Hai Yue’s heart before graduation, you’ll really lose her. You have to head back and think carefully about what you want to do. I need to start cultivating now, I’ve used up a lot of my magic power.”

Ma Ke said, "Thanks a lot Boss! I'll head back now, you should rest up."

When seeing Ma Ke out, I quietly laid back down. I thought back to the spell that Feng Liang had used. 'It was very similar to the spell that the magic clan's Zhu Gan used, but it was slightly different. It felt more sinister. Feng Liang Ri was from the Ri family, so he couldn't be from the magic clan. He seemed to have unusual secret, one I would have to investigate later on.'

I closed my eyes and focused on the dim Gold Dan to gather magic power. Light element slowly filled the Gold Dan as I went into my meditative state.

When I woke up, it was already daytime. It should be the next day's morning. I got out of bed and moved my body, feeling much better. 'At least eighty percent of my magic power has recovered. The gathering speed of my magic power also seemed to be much quicker than before; this was probably related to when the God King shed my mortal body and exchanged my bones.'

My stomach kept on growling. I hadn't eaten anything since last night, so I figured I'd head to the canteen. I wondered why Ma Ke hadn't come to find me.

Chapter 14: Stirring the Heart

When I walked out of the room, it was quiet. Where had everyone gone? When I reached the lower floor of the dormitory, I met the dormitory's receptionist, an old man. He grinned at me. "You're already late for class! Why aren't you rushing?"

I was in shock. "What time is it? Why am I late?"

He replied, "If you don't hurry up, the third period of the morning classes will soon end."

Ah! It was already that late. After thanking him, I rushed out of the dormitory. When I reached the entrance of the classroom, Teacher Si Lan Yu was teaching the class. Let's just face the music! It's just being late anyways.

I shouted, "Permission to enter!"

Teacher Yu replied, "Enter!"

I pushed open the classroom door. When I walked into the classroom, I lowered my head. "Teacher, I'm sorry for being late." I could feel that all of the students are looking in my direction.

Teacher Yu said, "Please remember to be on time next time and quickly take your seat." Teacher Yu is really so easy going! Haha, it seems that I've been let off the hook! I calm down and sit back in my seat. Something feels different today. The gazes in the students' eyes aren't as complicated. All of their eyes seems to all be filled with respect and even have signs of longings instead. It looks like the victory over Feng Liang had a huge effect in the class!

I peeked at Mu Zi, who was at my side. She was the only one who hadn't looked at me since I entered the classroom. I whispered to her, "Hey, were you there when I fought against Feng Liang yesterday?"

Mu Zi didn't look at me and coldly replied, "I wasn't and please stop talking to me during class."

I pouted and took a piece of paper out from my bag to resume the love

letter battle. I frantically wrote on the paper and didn't even bother to head out during the break. Finally, after the fourth period, I finished writing my 2000 word masterpiece.

What I wrote wasn't corny at all. It was the feelings I had felt when I sparred with Feng Liang. I used the remaining few sentences to express my feelings for Mu Zi. I flipped through the pages. 'I hope this time Mu Zi won't tear it up. If she really tears it up, it will mean failure. I won't have any more chances to make her fall for me. Currently, I don't know why, but my feelings of revenge are lessening. I even like her cold attitude instead of hating it.'

I placed the papers on her table and waited to see if she would take them. She turned her head and glared at me while I smiled back at her. She took a look at the papers and, found that they weren't some corny love letter, but a battle analysis. She became serious and looked really interested in what she was reading. 'There's hope! Haha! Wonderful!'

Mu Zi flipped through the pages and wrote a few words on the last page before handing them back to me. I almost screamed out in joy because she didn't tear up my letter and even replied. A soothing feeling passed through my entire body.

I took back the letter and saw a line of unkempt words. 'I was shocked not because of what she wrote, but rather because her handwriting was just too awful! It looked just like tadpole writing.' I turned my head to look at her before looking back at her writing. While suppressing my laughter, I seriously tried to decipher the words from her tadpole handwriting.

'Luckily, my deciphering skills were strong and I somewhat understood what she had written: 'You are indeed very strong as you were able to defeat Feng Liang Ri, but it is just impossible for us to be together. From now on, please stop disturbing me.'

'As I read her words, I didn't feel any sadness, but instead became extremely happy! I've finally moved her! This isn't the same uncaring attitude as before; she replied me. There's hope! Great hope!'

I carefully stashed the letter. My passion hadn't seem to reach her yet.

‘I will continue trying to chase her tomorrow. I believe that if I continue to chase her without giving up, I’ll get some results.’

After school, I found Ma Ke. “Why didn’t you come to get me this morning?”

Ma Ke replied, “I was afraid that the after effects of yesterday were too severe, and that you hadn’t fully recovered. Judging from your appearance, it seems that you are fine already.”

I happily said, “Of course I am fine! My current magic power recovery speed is very fast. Let’s go and quickly grab some food! I’m starving!”

After we walked into the canteen with our arms around each other’s shoulders, I showed my White Rice Bucket characteristic and crazily gobbled up my food. Suddenly, an attractive scent floated over as Hai Shui sat at the same table as us.

She asked, “Zhang Gong, how are you? How are your injuries recovering?”

I smiled as I replied. “I really have to thank you for this. If you hadn’t helped me treat my wounds yesterday, I might not have been able to get out of bed today.”

Hai Shui said, “As long as you’re fine, it’s enough!” After saying that, she seemed to have felt something, and her small, fair and delicate face reddened.

Ma Ke teased her. “Why is your face so red?”

Hai Shui glared at him and pouted playfully, “It wouldn’t do if he was injured.”

I hurriedly intercepted. “Hai Shui, how is Feng Liang? He shouldn’t still be in a dangerous condition, right?”

Hai Shui frowned. “He is alright. He’ll survive and has already woken up. However, it’ll take a long time for him to fully recover. Your moves were truly ferocious.”

I sighed, “I didn’t have any other choices at that moment. You should’ve

seen the match. The magic spell he used was too unusual. It seemed to be dark magic. If I hadn't fought with all my might, you probably wouldn't be able to see me today."

Hai Shui giggled and replied, "Feng Liang not only didn't blame you, but wanted to thank you for what you did yesterday. If you hadn't treated him immediately, he would have died already. Although it is an impartial competition, the results will be undesirable if someone really loses his life in the academy. Furthermore, he has the powerful Ri family supporting him! That's right! About the Ri family, you should keep an eye out for them. You never know when they will get their revenge. Yesterday, after Feng Liang's grandfather, an esteemed elder of the Ri family, Si Feng Ri, found out that you severely injured Feng Liang, he was raged in anger. If you hadn't been in the academy, he would've already come to get his revenge. That stubborn old man will do anything to maintain the prestige of his family. For now, you should try and keep a low profile. He should calm down after Feng Liang recovers."

I smilingly said, "Thank you for telling me this; but so what if the Ri family wants to take their revenge? Are they just going to justify it with their nobility? Feng Liang and I were fighting in an impartial competition. I really want to see what they'll do to me!"

Hai Shui hastily said after hearing my words, "Lower your voice! It'll be terrible if someone else heard what you said. It can't be that you don't know that the whole kingdom will be in a civil war soon? Currently, the Emperor is on his last breaths. Once he stops breathing, the civil war will begin. Furthermore, the three main families holds lots of powers in the kingdom."

Chapter 15: Returning Home to Report

I was startled and asked, “It can’t be grave to the point of starting a civil war?” I looked at Ma Ke. He was also in shock. He clearly didn’t know the current state of affairs.

Hai Shui replied, “Why isn’t it possible? The three main powers are currently all preparing their militaries! Anytime now, they’ll start a civil war.”

I sighed. “War is the cruellest! If war really happens, the commoners will be ones that suffers the most. Furthermore, the kingdom’s power will weaken drastically during a civil war. It’ll disturb the balance between the three kingdoms.”

Hai Shui stared at me for a while, eyes wide. “Wow~ I didn’t expect that you’d analyze the situation like that. It would be great if you joined our Xing family. With your magic power, it should be able to bring the family to its peak!”

I laughed and anxiously looked at Ma Ke. “I think that we should forget about that suggestion as even the problem we currently have with your sister can’t be solved.”

Ma Ke supported me, saying, “Right, right! You should stop putting Zhang Gong on the spot!”

Hai Shui pouted her cute and small lips, “Humph! Sister isn’t the problem! I don’t care! Are you going to tell me if you’re going to agree or not? I’ll just ask my grandfather, okay?” ‘Hai Shui was one of the candidates to inherit the Xing Family so her position in the family was very high. If she really suggested for me to enter her family, the chance of success would definitely be very high.’

I immediately shook my head. “No! Just forget it! I don’t want to be restrained and love my freedom. Moreover, I just offended the Ri family. If I join your family, won’t it lead to conflict between the two families?”

Hai Shui lowered her head and thought. “What you said is right! However, my offer still stands. If you ever change your mind, you must tell

me! You carry on having your meals; I'll head back first."

As Ma Ke focused on Hai Shui's back as she left, he said to me, "Boss, thank you! I know that you refused Hai Shui because of me. I really don't know what..."

I patted his shoulder. "Stop saying such things! We are brothers! Anyway, I won't join your family as well. Honestly, I hope that this will not result in war! Is peace so bad? We can only continue flourishing ourselves if we stay united. During my previous adventures, I met the Magic race. They didn't look at our human race with good intentions and rather wanted us gone. If we have an internal war, won't it be the perfect chance for them to invade us?"

"Magic race? Boss, you met the Magic race?"

"Yup! Why?"

"This is a big issue! I will immediately inform my father. The information that the Magic race might invade us is super important!"

I curiously asked, "You don't need to be this nervous, right?"

Ma Ke rebuked, "How could I not be nervous? The Magic race must have used an unknown method to enter the our Eastern continent. This proves that they have terrible intentions towards our human race. This information is extremely important!"

I scratched my head and thought back to the exquisite, beautiful face of the Magic race's princess. "The Magic race isn't that terrifying. They are just like us, living in the world. Why do you look like you've met a ghost?"

"The Magic race and our human kind are not the same! They are enemies to all of the human race."

"Alright! I don't want to continue arguing with you. Just do whatever you like! Let's quickly finish our meal! I want to head back to the dormitory for a break."

Ma Ke left the academy and headed home to report the important information to his father that night.

During the next day's class, I wrote another letter to Mu Zi. I wrote just a few sentences: "Yesterday when I received your reply, I was extremely elated. I just want to ask you, why do you think it's impossible for us to be together and want me to not to disturb you anymore? I really can't stop myself from really liking you. Even though you are very cold to me, I know that you're actually very kind hearted. Can you please give me a chance? I promise I will forever protect you!" While writing, I no longer thought of revenge. 'Mu Zi's plain appearance had become so adorable. It couldn't be that I'd really fallen in love with her? No, it couldn't be.' I silently reminded myself not to forget to execute my revenge on her.

After I gave her the letter, she replied on the paper, "Stop asking me! We definitely can't be together. I will never fall for you! Just give up! Hai Shui is the one who loves you. She should be the one that you choose!"

After I finished reading her unkempt words, I focused on her face. She felt my hot gaze and looked at me. I whispered to her, "Please give me a reason?" When I asked that, my heart actually felt a dull ache.

Mu Zi's eyes showed a complicated expression and she whispered back, "Just don't ask, okay?"

She didn't not look as cold, but was actually really delicate. My heart began trembling. I suddenly reached out to hold her cold, yet tender hand. Once I touched her hand, She screamed out in shock and almost toppled out of her chair.

It was the current lesson is with the annoying old mage. "Zhang Gong, what are you doing? It is class time!"

I awkwardly laughed, "Teacher, Mu Zi got scared by a cockroach just now so I just went to support her." Mu Zi's face flushed, but didn't say anything. She just looked down at her lapels.

The old man, finding he did not have any evidence to use against me, angrily shouted, "Please take note of that next time! Students, I will teach up to here as it is nearing the end of the class. We will have a test to test your knowledge on magic spells tomorrow. I hope that every student will come to class prepared for the test to achieve good grades for it. There's a

chance for those who fail to be unable to advance to year four!" After saying that, he glared at me.

'No! This can't be happening. There's a test tomorrow? I haven't been listening much in class, and the classes are short. How am I supposed to take the test on the knowledge of spells? It isn't the same as a test on usage of magic spells! Damn him! I'll need to rely on Ma Ke this time.'

I whispered to Mu Zi, "You didn't hurt yourself, did you? How about we have lunch together today?" Mu Zi did not reply, but took out a paper and wrote on it before throwing it to me.

I looked down at the paper. She wrote: "Please stop disturbing me! I am begging you! Now, I am the laughingstock of the class. In the future, please also stop writing letters to me." When I read her words, my heart coldly shuddered. However, I remembered her reddened face. I knew that she had some feelings for me. Since she refused to join me for lunch, then I would just forget about it. I'll take it easy for now, but one day I would definitely get her to willingly come into my arms.

Chapter 16: Audience with the Prince

After the first lesson of the day ended, Ma Ke came to find me. Looking at his serious expression, I knew that something happened.

He pulled me to a secluded area. “Boss, something bad happened. When I went back to tell my father about you meeting the Magic race, my father was astonished and told me to bring you to see him. What do you think?”

I frowned. “Is it really that serious? How is the Emperor’s condition? Is it as bad as what Hai Shui told us?”

Ma Ke seriously nodded his head. “My father said that the Emperor only has three to five months left to live. The Emperor also does not have a son to inherit the throne. Once he passes away, the internal affairs of the kingdom will change greatly. The competition for the throne will be really intense.”

I thought for a while. “Alright! I will meet your father. When shall we head over?”

Ma Ke replied, “Tonight. After classes today, I will come and find you.”

I noded. “Alright!”

After returning to class, my mood became serious. ‘If the Emperor dies, there is a high chance that the kingdom of Aixia will become segregated. It’ll be worst case scenario that I don’t want to see. Now there are three groups of main powers. If one falls, it will badly influence Aixia. To be truthful, Ma Ke’s father, Ke Zha Ao Er, should be the top candidate for the throne as he is the Emperor’s blood related brother. His strength is also stronger than that of the Emperor. However, in the current situation, the other two main powers obviously have the intention of teaming up. It’ll be hard for Prince Ke Zha Ao Er to fight against them, especially since Duke Te Yi has the Royal Magic Mage Union as his main trump card. This is so frustrating!’

I shook my head. ‘What does this really have to do with me? It isn’t as if I am also fighting for the throne. But no, if the war really happens, doesn’t it mean that it’ll be a terrible situation? Is there a way to avoid

this? As an individual, what can I do? Even if I am a Magister, there is still no hope of stopping this war. During the meeting with Ma Ke's father tonight, I'll try to understand what kind of person he is.'

Suddenly, there was a piece of paper in front of me. I sat, stunned for a while, before picking up the paper and reading it. This was what was written on the paper, "What are you thinking about so deeply?" 'It was from Mu Zi. It really was her! I looked at her in high spirits, but she just continued to look at the whiteboard as if she didn't know that I was staring at her.'

I quickly wrote, "Some important, worrying issues regarding the kingdom. This is the first time that you've written me a letter. It made me really happy. It can't be that you have fallen in love with me?"

After I wrote it, I passed it to Mu Zi. She read it and looked at me, before whispering, "You are just driveling! What important issues regarding the Kingdom? All you do everyday is just play. I have never seen you pay attention in class and you are now worrying about the big issues happening in the Kingdom? I was just afraid that the teacher would call for you so I wrote a note for you to remind you to listen properly. Don't misunderstand, I don't like you." After she said that, her face reddened for a moment.

'Her expression serves to be a proof that success is nearing.'

Ma Ke and I left the academy and went directly to the prince's mansion that night.

"Your house is really huge!" As I look at the imposing prince's mansion, I gasped in awe.

Ma Ke smiled wryly. "Well, my father is a prince so his household is held to a higher standard. Let's quickly head inside!" At the entrance, when the guards on duty saw Ma Ke they immediately bowed. "Welcome back, Second Young Master!"

I curiously asked Ma Ke, "Why aren't they calling you young prince?"

Ma Ke's face reddened. "Boss, stop making fun of me! How can I be a

young prince? I will always be your brother. Quickly go and inform my father and say that I brought the magic scholar Zhang Gong." The second sentence was meant for the guard. Ma Ke said I was only a magic scholar so that he wouldn't expose my actual abilities.

The guard respectfully looked at me. 'The youngsters these days are incredible. He's able to become a magic scholar at such a young age.' He then turned around and ran into the mansion to relay the message.

Ma Ke led the way in front of me. While we walked, he said, "I will first bring you to my father's study as he usually meets his guest there."

I smiled and replied. "At your house, I will definitely listen to you. Let's go!"

The height of the interior of the mansion was very tall. It was both interesting and appealing. There was a rock garden and a forest in the mansion that quivered under the moonlight. Every 20m stood a guard. After walking for a while, we finally reached the study that Ma Ke had previously mentioned. 'How was it a study? It looked like a small scale library instead. It was 500 m in diameter and tall bookshelves surrounded the place. Many books were dazzlingly lined up on the bookshelves.'

Ma Ke told me, "Boss, you can take a seat first. I'll check whether my father has arrived." As he said that, he led me to the center of the couch meant for guests.

After Ma Ke went out I got bored as I didn't have anything to do. I stood up randomly took a book off one of the bookshelves. << Three Hundred Poems>>. It looked really old as it was even bounded by strings. The pages had also turned yellow.

'I opened the book and realized it was just ancient poems that I hadn't seen before. I skimmed through the book and found that it was rather interesting.' Just as I was about to read more of it, a guard announced from outside the room. "His Highness has arrived!"

I hurriedly returned the book and went back to the couch. When the door opened, Ma Ke entered the room first, but stepped aside. Behind him, a middle aged man with a belt of embroidered jade stepped firmly into the

study. ‘He seemed to have an imposing appearance and manners. He looks similar to Ma Ke, but has a royal aura.’

When he entered the room and looked at me, his eyes dazzling with radiance, I unyieldingly returned his gaze. It was obvious that the magic level of this prince was not low. He laughed. “You must be Zhang Gong! You’re so young! Please have a seat. Don’t be modest!”

I bowed and said, “Your Highness, it is a pleasure to meet you.”

The prince said, “You can treat my place as your own home. There is no need for etiquette. Please have a seat. Ma Ke, come and join us.” As he said that, he just sat down first.

While Ma Ke and I sat facing the prince, servants served us some tea. “You can all retire for the night. Without my order, no one is to be within thirty meter circumference from the study.”

“Understood!” The servants and guards withdrew.

The prince took a sip of his tea before raising his head and said, “I heard from my son, Ma Ke, that you’ve already reached the Magisters level. This is really worthy for a celebration!” The prince’s wording instantly gave me a good feeling. Ever since he entered the room, he was very polite, and he didn’t directly ask about the Magic race, but instead congratulated me on becoming a Magister. It could be seen that he highly valued talented people.’

Chapter 17: Secret Talk in the Dark of Night

I respectfully replied, "I was just lucky. Ma Ke's not far from reaching the Magister level either."

The prince laughed. "You're a really humble child. You have accomplished so much, but you aren't arrogant at all. It's really rare for this to happen. I'll need you to help me discipline Ma Ke in the future as I have high expectations for him. Since his elder brother doesn't have much abilities, I plan to pass all of my duties to him." The prince seemed to be a very good natured elder.

I smiled and replied, "Ma Ke has been really hard working. I'm sure he will meet your expectations."

The prince replied, "Let's hope so. Since you are a friend of Ma Ke's and the same age as my son, I'm not being formal to you, so please stop calling me prince. It makes me feel like we are far from each other. From now on, you can just call me uncle Ao Er." Even though I knew he's trying to pull me to his side, my good impression of him kept on increasing.

The prince continued to say, "Yesterday, I was in shock when I hear from Ma Ke that you've met the Magic race. The Magic race is our human race's enemy. If we allow them to invade the northern side of the world, then our human race will go extinct. Can you tell the whole incident to uncle in detail?"

I replied, "Alright!" I told him the story of meeting the magic race at Serene Dream lake. After the prince heard what I said, he sighed. "I really don't know how they managed to do that. They actually crossed Si Te Lun to reach our land. It's just too unbelievable!"

I asked, "Could they have climbed over the Heavenly Falling Mountain?"

Ma Ke replied for his father, "It's impossible. The Heavenly Falling Mountain reaches high above the clouds and the midpoint of the mountain is completely covered in snow and ice. It's impossible for any life forms to pass through that point."

The prince said, "It's been two years since that happened. If they

wanted to invade us, why is there no movement at all? Is it because they are unprepared? No. Currently, the Kingdom of Aixia has enemies in and outside of it. Zhang Gong! You should know that the three main powers, including mine, are waiting for the time where the Emperor cease to live. His Majesty had come to find me and said that he wanted to pass the throne down to me, but the current situation won't follow the Emperor's decision. The three main powers and Duke Te Yi have already prepared to team up to deal with me. If it's just military force, I am not afraid of them, but they also have many advanced magicians. My force's magical abilities can't be compared to theirs. Moreover, I can't assemble the whole kingdom's army. With my current power, it's impossible to fight against them."

I asked, "If they aren't royal, how are they going to fight for the throne?"

The prince replied, "From what I know, they want to form a democratic government and use policies to decide future matters so there'll no longer be any election of another Emperor. If that happens, the kingdom that our Ao Er clan that has always painfully governed will be taken over by them."

I asked, "Is it impossible to use the issue of the Magic Race to negotiate with them? Fighting against the enemy should be the first priority!"

After hearing my words, the prince eyes brightened. It was obvious that he had been moved. "That idea is not bad, but it'll not be able to solve the competition to get the throne. Even if we come to a truce for a moment, it's still impossible to solve the contradictions with their natural instincts. If...."

The prince didn't continue speaking and only shook his head. Ma Ke anxiously asked, "Father, if what? Please quickly carry on saying the rest of that sentence."

The prince helplessly said, "Saying it out is useless anyways as it won't be able to happen."

I said, "Since you have thought of a solution, you should just say it so

that we can try to help think with you and maybe even think it through.”

The prince replied, “If we can manage to suppress them with the highest level of magic, I definitely will have the confidence to successfully win the power battle. After all, this is a magic Kingdom. As long as our magic power is really strong, it will be the most useful negotiating tool.”

I thought before asking, “Does the highest level magic competition refers to the competition of how many Magisters there are in both of the opposing forces?

The prince nodded.

I continued to ask, “How many Magisters do the opposing forces have?”

The prince replied saying, “In the northern part of this world, there are ten Grand Magister. This kingdom has eight Magisters. The opposing three main powers, including the Royal Magic Union Mage Union’s leader earth Magister Dun Yu Xi, has four Magisters in total. Dun Yu Xi has also always been the second rank of the Magisters.”

I wondered, “Who are the other four Magisters?”

The prince explained, “One of the other four Magisters is the Royal Advanced Magic Academy’s principal, Chuan Song Zhen, a Spatial Magister. (He is worthy of learning spatial magic as even his name is related to time as his name means to be able to change time?) The third ranked Magister is the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy’s principal, light Magister Lao Lun Di. He is also your teacher. The seventh ranked is the Intermediate Magic Academy’s vice principal, fire Magister Xin De Long, Ma Ke’s mentor. The ninth ranked is the Royal Advanced Magic Academy’s vice principal, fire Magister Si Di Lie.”

I continued to ask him, “Don’t you and the opposing force currently have an equal number of Magisters?”

The prince smiled, “How can it be that easy? Currently, only Ma Ke’s Teacher Xin is helping me. The other three Magisters hold neutral positions. If they decide to help me, with their reputations and many years of teaching experiences, when it is revealed to the public, the power

I holds will rise drastically. I will then stand a chance against the opposing force. The overall situation now is that the opposing force's Magisters are ranked second, fourth, fifth and sixth, but our rankings in Magisters will be the first, third, seventh and ninth rank. We'll still be in a disadvantaged position. Moreover, there is also no certainty that the other three Magisters will be on my side."

'I finally understand why the prince called me here. First, he wanted to ask about the Magic Race, and second, he wanted to ask me to convince Teacher Di. Teacher Di and the Royal Advanced Magic Academy's principal Chuan Song Zhen have deep relationships. This way, the prince can gain the support of four Magisters, including me. He will then gain an advantage. He's really crafty!'

The prince, seeing me deep in thought, did not say anything or even pressure me for my answer, and just waited for me to speak.

I silently sighed. 'For the commoners of the kingdom, how can I not help him? Moreover, this concerns Ma Ke as well.' I raised my head and said, "Uncle Ao Er, I hope you'll treat the citizens of the Kingdom of Aixia kindly. I'll do my best to convince Teacher Di."

Chapter 18: I'm the Mediator

The prince smiled honestly and cordially said, "Zhang Gong, don't worry! Right now, fighting the Magic race is most important. Duke Te Yi is an extremely selfish person and the three big families are also not united; if they really governed the kingdom, they'd lead the kingdom's downfall."

We mustn't conduct a coup d'etat right now, but instead find a peaceful method to solve the inheritance of the throne. The commoners are innocent. I definitely won't let them be harmed by the power battle." 'He really is an old fox; he definitely noticed that I care greatly about the commoners and said that to appease me.'

I nodded. "Alright, uncle. Let's leave it as it is. I'll head back first. You just have to wait for my good news!"

After bidding farewell to the prince, Ma Ke and I returned to the academy. On the way, Ma Ke asked, "Boss, what do you think?"

While still walking I said, "Actually, I know that your father is just using me." As I said that, I looked meaningfully at Ma Ke. Ma Ke just lowered his head and didn't say anything.

I patted his shoulder. "You don't need to overthink! I didn't mean anything much; I just feel a little uncomfortable. However, it's better to that your father inherit his rightful throne than the opposing powers. Just stop worrying! I'll definitely help your father."

Ma Ke grabbed my hand and excitedly said, "Boss, I really don't know what to say!"

I raised my head to look at the time. "You don't need to say anything! Let's walk faster! You return to the academy first. It isn't too late right now so I'll visit the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy and find Teacher Di to see if I can get his support."

At a forked road, Ma Ke and I split up. I quickly arrived at the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. At the familiar academy I had previously attended, the guard recognised me. I said that I had come to find Teacher

Di and he quickly let me in.

After reaching the entrance of Teacher's Di living area, I couldn't help but remember the past. He cared for me so dearly and was also a lonely elderly man. My heart filled with gratitude for him.

I shouted from outside, "Teacher Di, I am here to visit you!"

When the door opened, Teacher Di walked out of the room and said with a smile, "Why are you back already, after attending the Advanced Magic Academy for only a few days? Can't bear to leave here?"

I walked over and clung to his arm, acting like a spoiled child. "Of course, I miss you! Haven't I come to visit you?"

Teacher Di laughed. "You really are a good child. Let's go inside the room!"

I awkwardly smiled and said, "I didn't buy you anything and just came over. Are you busy with the Academy's work?"

Teacher Di reclined in his seat and smiled. "It's alright. It isn't that busy as a lot of things doesn't need me to personally deal with them. To be honest, I am thinking of retiring soon. How about you inherit my position after you finish settling the Demon King problem?"

I immediately waved my hands at him. "No! No! I am too young! How can I become the representative of the school? Isn't Teacher Long a better candidate to succeed your position? I also think that you should slow down in your work."

Teacher Di said, "Teacher Long is indeed one of the best candidates, but now he has already gone to join the power battle. He can't remain calm during such a time. How do you think I can give the academy to him without worrying?"

It seemed that Teacher Di hated the current power battle. 'How am I going to ask him?'

Teacher Di saw me not saying anything. "Did you come back to ask me for something? Just say it, you want me to help Prince Ke Zha."

I dumbfoundedly replied, “Yes.”, and then snapped back to my senses and looked at Teacher Di with my mouth gaping open. I was in shock. “How did you know? Have you learned a spell that lets you foresee the future?”

Teacher Di smiled, “How could I not understand you? With your relationship with Ma Ke, how could Ke Zha not make use of you to convince me?”

I scratched my head and said, “Teacher, you really are amazing. Prince Ke Zha is indeed trying to make use of me to convince you.”

Teacher Di sighed. “The situation in the kingdom of Aixia is really tense. If you make one wrong move, you will be caught up in the chaos of the war. Since you know that Ke Zha is using you, why did you still come?”

I smiled and said, “I really missed you, so can’t I visit you?”

Teacher Di laughed at my reply. “Stop drivel and tell me the truth!”

I became serious and earnestly said, “Actually, I did come to try and convince you, but it’s not for Prince Ke Zha. It is for the numerous commoners in the Kingdom of Aixia instead.”

Teacher Di got interested. “Hmm! continue speaking.”

I explained, “If you continue to remain neutral and don’t help any side, the civil war will definitely occur. Our homeland will be filled with blood and the commoners won’t be able to continue to live in peace as they’ll inevitably be caught up in the battle. If, at that time, the Magic race was to invade, we would have too many problems on our hands and wouldn’t be able to unite with the other two kingdoms to fight back. Furthermore, in a few years, the Demon King will also appear. Who knows what method he’ll be use to do so? If the human race isn’t united, there’s a possibility that the human race will become extinct. For the future of the human race, I’m begging you to help the Prince Ke Zha. Teacher Di, do you think I am overthinking the situation?”

Teacher Di shook his head, “You aren’t overthinking. That situation

might really occur. I'm curious about why you aren't asking me to support Duke Te Yi and the three big families. Even though I'll just be a redundant addition to their forces, their chance of victory will be much higher, even though their strength already exceeded that of the Prince. The reason you're supporting Prince Ke Zha can't be Ma Ke, is it?"

I replied, "Even though Ma Ke can influence my decision to an extent, he's not the main reason. More importantly, if the throne is succeeded by Prince Ke Zha, it'll be logical as he's current Emperor's only brother. The commoners and nobles should be able to accept that. If we have the strength to suppress Duke Te Yi and the three big families and let them know that their plans are impossible, I believe they won't continue to rebel too intensely."

After all, they aren't suited to inherit the throne. At that time, they'll just try to secure their nobility and life. We just need to make some moves to appease them at that moment. If they rebel again in the future, it will no longer be a problem for us to worry about anymore. I feel that the Prince is really skillful and strategic so he should be able to deal with them.

On the other hand, if we were to support Duke Te Yi, it would be hard to say what would happen as Prince Ke Zha is the rightful successor to the throne. Prince Ke Zha definitely won't compromise with them. He also currently holds the entire kingdom's military power. If we can't pull out the grass by its roots and let him escape, he'll definitely return to get his throne back. The civil war will then definitely happen. This is why I chose to support Prince Ke Zha."

Chapter 19: For the Sake of the People

Teacher Di stroked his beard and nodded his head with an approving expression. After hearing what I said, he started to laugh for a long time.

I was shocked and hurriedly asked, “Teacher, how are you feeling? Are you feeling ill?”

Teacher Di slowly calmed down and said, “Good! Good! Good! You deserve to be my student. Zhang Gong, your analysis is extremely detailed. I’ll do what you requested. I’ll go and meet Prince Ke Zha and a few old friends tomorrow. These old friends are none other than the Advanced Magic Academy’s principal, spatial Magister, Chuan Song Zhen, and the Royal Magic Academy’s vice principal, fire Magister, Si Di Lie!”

I stood and bowed deeply to Teacher Di. “Teacher, I thank you on the behalf of every commoners who lives in Aixia. With the other teachers and you joining, the two opposing sides have four Magisters each. This’ll serve as a bargaining chip during negotiations.”

Teacher Di smiled. “Silly child! It isn’t four against four Magisters, but instead five against four Magisters. Don’t forget that you yourself are a Magister. However, you must keep this secret and not tell anyone about it. You understand? That’s right! I heard that you seriously injured the grandson of the Ri family. How did that happen?”

I sheepishly smiled and replied, “Yeah.” I told Teacher Di the story. Teacher Di frowned. “You’re really foolish! Even if he has a special spell, you shouldn’t need to win so strenuously! You are a Magister. There should be a difference in the quality of the strength!”

I stunned. “What was I supposed to do then?”

Teacher Di explained. “It’s actually really simple. Have you forgotten your self-created magic fusion technique? You can use it to increase the strength of your magic spell! Also, you didn’t use the fusion spell, but instead used a large area spell in a one on one battle? Do you still remember the fireball Ma Ke used on you? It was a good method, but you

didn't use it! You're really foolish! You won't be able to defeat any of the ten Magisters in your current state. That battle with Feng Liang shall be a learning experience for you. Next time, please think a little bit more before you act. You're not just my hope, but also the entire human race's hope! Do you understand?" It was clear to me that he wanted me to become a Grand Magister from what he said!

"That's right! Why didn't I think of that?" I lowered my head and said, "Thank you for your guidance. I'll definitely work harder training in that area!"

Teacher Di replied, "You don't have to head back today, just stay for the night."

I smiled. "That's great! I also want to accompany you."

A silent night passed and the morning of the next day came. I set off to the Advanced Magic Academy. Before classes started, I went to find Ma Ke and told him the good news. Ma Ke became so jubilant, he completely skipped classes to head home and tell his father the news, which also allowed his father to prepare to receive Teacher Di.

After solving this matter, I was ecstatic. My face was filled with overflowing happiness!

Mu Zi curiously looked at me. "What happened to make you this happy?"

I leaned towards her and stopped only when I was really close to her face. "Because you don't seem to despise me as much already. I'm definitely happy about that and even dreamt about you."

Mu Zi pushed me away. "You're so hateful. Keep your distance! Didn't I tell you that it's impossible for us to be together? Just give up on me already!"

I moved closer to her again. "Why is it impossible? This matter depends only on the individual. As long as you like me, it'll be enough. So? Have you been captivated by my handsomeness, talent and great strength?"

Mu Zi's face reddened. "Who is captivated by you? Keep your distance!"

We are in a classroom. It's bad to be seen like this by others!"

I laughed. "In that case, if it isn't in a classroom, I can be intimate with you?"

Mu Zi's face further reddened. "You're despicable! Using my own words against me! I didn't mean it that way. You should sit down already-class is starting. Don't tell me that you've forgotten that the teacher is going to test us today?" This was the first time Mu Zi showed me her childish side.

'Ah! I really did forget about it. What do I do?' I grabbed her arm and shook it. "You must save me! I don't want to be scolded by that stubborn old man again!" I felt the tenderness of her skin and got excited, even though it was through her shirt.

Mu Zi shook off my hand and turned away from me. "Hmph! You reap what you sow! It's your fault for not listening in class. I won't help you!"

"Mu Zi, you are a good person! Please help me! If it wasn't for you, that old man would have never pick on me."

Mu Zi just glanced at me with her beautiful eyes, which said: How dare you say that? She took a piece of paper from her bag and gave it to me. "The rest will be up to you. The main points are in here!"

I elatedly took it and looked at the densely packed, unkempt words. 'I have a way to cheat!' I gestured to Mu Zi, wanting to hug her, but she immediately dodged away. "What are you doing? If you continue to be this unreasonable, I'll ignore you forever!"

I felt wronged. "I just wanted to express my gratitude to you. I won't do it again so please stop being angry."

Mu Zi sighed. "I really don't know what to do about you! Teacher is coming! Quickly take your seat!"

The old man took a stack of paper and entered the classroom. He surveyed the class once before saying, "There is a test on your magic knowledge today. I hope that everyone is prepared for the test!" After speaking, he intentionally looked at me.

The test was handed out, and all of the questions were on advanced spells. Actually, it wasn't too difficult for me. However, it had been two years since I had last properly listened to class. I only vaguely remembered those advanced spells. I would've been much better off with a test on the usage of spells. Luckily, I still had the small paper note that Mu Zi gave to me.

I stucked the slip of paper onto the chair of the student in front of me. Mu Zi immediately whispered, "You're being too obvious!"

I replied, "We mustn't whisper during the test! Your two ears and your nose shouldn't be concerned with any external affairs, just focus on the exam with your heart and soul!" Mu Zi was stunned by my literary talent. 'Seeing her stunned expression, I was secretly happy. This was something I read in the Three Hundred Poems from the prince's mansion and was the only phrase I remembered. I managed to make use of it today! Haha!'

I copied down as much as I could. After a while, I was unsatisfied and just placed the cheat sheet directly next to the test paper and copied it.

Chapter 20: An Invitation to Dinner

‘This is bad! The old man noticed me.’ He grinned and walked directly towards me. Mu Zi was so frightened she didn’t dare look up.

‘If I get caught by him, I’ll be in great trouble! What should I do? It’s too late to hide the notes. Since I’m dead already, I’ll use my ultimate move!’

I calmly sat upright and looked at the teacher. I placed the slip of paper in front of my nose and blew my nose really hard, which resulted to the paper to land into a corner of the classroom. The teacher glared at me, but didn’t dare to pick up the evidence that I was cheating.

He just turned around and walked away. I let out a long breath and thought. ‘That was extremely close !’ Mu Zi who was sitting beside me giggled uncontrollably as she laid her upper body on the table.

I whispered, “Make sure you don’t get saliva on your paper.” Mu Zi then forced herself to stop laughing. She raised her head to continue answering the test questions.

I looked at my paper. Since I’d copied quickly, I’d answered seventy percent of the questions. I would at least pass. I absent-mindedly answered the rest of the questions, then leaned back in my chair and waited for the papers to be collected.

The lesson finally ended. After the test papers were collected, I happily said to Mu Zi, “There should be no problem this time. Haha. Thank you so much for your help. How about I treat you to lunch today?”

Mu Zi replied, “Your reaction earlier was really fast. The teacher should be terribly angry with you this time. He obviously knows that you were cheating, but can’t get the evidence.”

I complacently smiled and said, “Of course! I am a counter expert! Are you or are you not going to have lunch with me?”

Mu Zi thought for a moment. A hint of cunningness flashed through her eyes. “Alright! However, I don’t want to eat at the academy’s canteen. I want to leave the academy to eat.”

I generously said, “No problem! You can pick where to eat. After classes today, let’s go and eat.”

Mu Zi said, “You’re the one who said that! You’ll need to bring lots of money as I can consume lots of food.”

‘Can your ability to eat even compare to mine? I am the famous White Rice Bucket. Heh heh. I want to see who will win.’ I couldn’t possibly tell her that, instead I said, “Relax! I promise I’ll let you eat until you’re satisfied.”

Mu Zi smiled. “Great! It’s been some time since I last had a good meal. I want to eat a lot of delicious food.”

‘This was the first time the morning lessons have ended without her being furious with me.’ After school, I followed her out of the academy. I followed for a long time, but we still hadn’t reached the destination.

I curiously asked, “Hey little missy, where are you bringing me?”

Mu Zi mysteriously smiled at me. “What? Are you scared that I’ll kill you for your money? You were the one who said you wanted to treat me to a meal so stop asking so many questions.”

I hurriedly said, “Alright! I’ll just follow you.” I’m a Magister! I fear no one.

We reached the destination, but it couldn’t be a restaurant! Mu Zi had brought me to a place filled with gold and jade splendor. It really looked as if it could even be compared to a palace, although I had never entered a palace before. The title of the place was, in huge golden words, Ascending Jade Tide. The maître d’hôtel at the entrance came and greeted us. “Mister and young lady, are you here for a meal?”

Mu Zi nodded her head. “We want a quiet table for two.”

The maître d’hôtel smiled and replied, “Understood. Welcome to the restaurant!” The service was excellent . That, however, made it a costly establishment . We followed the maître d’hôtel and entered the Ascending Jade Tide.

Wow~ The inside was even more luxurious. On the floor was a famous and valuable carpet, and gold and jade ornaments were everywhere. The maître d'hôtel brought us to a window seat on the second floor and even helped pull the chairs back for us to sit. “Please wait a moment. A waitress will come to take your orders.”

As expected, in a moment, a young and beautiful waitress came and gave me a menu. To show the elegant demeanor of a gentlemen, I didn’t even look at the menu and gave it to Mu Zi, gesturing for her to go for it.

Mu Zi wasn’t modest and took the menu from me. She turned to the first page and skimmed through it, and then looked at the second page. After looking, she returned the menu to the waitress. “I want a set of all of the dishes on the first two pages of the menu and a liter of Ascending Jade Tide.”

The waitress looked shocked as she stared at Mu Zi. “So much? Can you two even finish all of them? We do not allow withdrawal of any orders in this restaurant.”

Mu Zi frowned. “You just need to serve us the dishes. How could you know that we can’t finish them?” The waitress agreed and withdrew with the menu.

I asked, “What is Ascending Jade Tide? Isn’t that the restaurant’s name?”

Mu Zi replied, “You don’t know? Ascending Jade Tide is an extremely famous beverage. The restaurant became famous due to that beverage so the boss of the restaurant also changed the name of the restaurant to be Ascending Jade Tide.”

So it was like that. “You seem to be familiar with this place. Do you come here often?”

Mu Zi replied, “That’s right. I often came here to eat, but I used up all of the money that I had brought from home. I had no choice but to eat at the academy’s canteen.”

I asked, astonished, “You love the food here so much that you spent all

of your money on it?" Even though I love to eat, it's not to her extent.

Mu Zi bashfully smiled. "That's right. I take great pleasure in eating, especially your human race's food. It's amazing!"

"Our human race? You aren't human!?"

Mu Zi looked as if she had divulged something and mockingly scolded, "You're the one that isn't human! Since we're already here for the meal, why are you asking so many questions? You don't feel like paying?"

I immediately surrendered. "Ok! Ok! I'll just stop asking."

The dishes came. I then knew why the waitress was afraid that we wouldn't be able to finish the meal previously. Mu Zi had ordered so much it couldn't fit on one table. Another server pulled over another table and filled half of the other table with dishes.

I asked in shock, "So many dishes? It's bad to waste food!"

Mu Zi pouted. "Who said we'll waste food? Quickly eat! If the food becomes cold, it won't taste good." As she said that, she started to eat some prawns with her chopsticks. She ate it with relish. "Yummy! It's been a long time since I last ate here. This's just too wonderful."

'Since I was the one paying, it wouldn't be worth it if I didn't eat any.' I picked up the jade green colored Ascending Jade Tide and had a sip. It gave me a really fresh and cooling feeling. The cold juice instantly permeated my entire body. It felt a little cold and sweet. It was pretty good!

I said, "I'll eat as well." I started to bury myself in my food. The dishes looked, smelled and tasted almost perfect. When I was eating, I even almost swallowed my tongue together with the food. It was just too delicious. Mu Zi really knew how to pick a place. The dishes in front of us were rapidly being wiped out.

Chapter 21: Exchanging Titles

After half an hour passed, over ten empty plates lay in front of me. The food was really good. It was the best meal I'd had since birth. I patted my stomach in satisfaction, then exhaled deeply and looked at Mu Zi.

Wow! 'This can't be happening-she's still eating. She really knows how to eat!' There were many empty plates in front of her too, and I remembered her taking some food from my dishes.

I dumbfoundedly passed her a serviette and said, "Take your time to eat! Don't choke on it!"

Mu Zi took the serviette and wiped her mouth. She indistinctly said, "You should also eat, I won't be so polite anymore." After she finished saying that, she continued to eat.

I stared at her, stupefied, until she completely finished all of the dishes she'd ordered.

Mu Zi let out a long breath in satisfaction and wiped her mouth. "That's great! It's been some time since I had such a good meal."

I curiously asked, "You're too formidable! I concede. Doesn't your stomach feel bloated after eating so much?"

Mu Zi simple-mindedly said, "I don't feel bloated at all. My metabolism is really good. Moreover, I haven't actually eaten a lot. Waitress! Please bring me two more portions of deep fried dragon meat, a set of blue whale wings, 2 portions of dessert and 2 portions of ice cream."

After she ordered more dishes, I hurriedly said, "I'm already filled to the point where I couldn't possibly eat any more!"

Mu Zi looked at me. "You may not be able to eat anymore, but I'm still hungry. Those dishes were for me!"

On the sidelines, I watched in awe as she wiped out yet another pile of food. Mu Zi patted her stomach. "That's really satisfying and wonderful! Alright! You can settle the bill already. I'm not eating anymore."

I secretly wiped off my cold sweat. She had finally stopped eating.

I called the waitress over and asked for the check, which she promptly brought. “Mister, the total will be one hundred and three diamond coins, four gold coins and eight silver coins.”

I cried out, “What! Isn’t this robbery? So much?” I looked at the waitress in disgust. She patiently explained, “Mister, the ingredients here are rather rare. For example, the dragon meat costs two diamond coins per portion...”

‘No wonder Mu Zi told me to bring more money! I’ve been thoroughly cheated for wanting to treat her.’

Mu Zi said from the side, “Ah! It costs so much now. I used to spend only seventy diamond coins for a meal previously. I’m sorry you have to pay so much money.”

What else could I say? I took my amethyst card from my spatial dimension and passed it to the waitress. The waitress respectfully took it from me and said, “We’ll give you an eight percent discount for using an amethyst card. Please wait for a moment.” After hearing her words, my heart felt slightly better.

Mu Zi anxiously asked, “What was that useful card you used to get discounts? I want to get one of those as well!”

‘I won’t offer to treat Mu Zi to more meals in the future. My White Rice Bucket title should go to her.’

Mu Zi suddenly looked pitifully at me.

I asked, “What’s the matter?”

Mu Zi bashfully said, “Can I get another liter of Ascending Jade Tide to drink in the afternoon? It’s really nice and is only five diamond coins.”

I instantly felt as if the sky was spinning and the earth going round. “Alright! Whatever you say!”

I don’t know how I returned to school as when I snapped back to reality I was already in class for the afternoon lessons.

Mu Zi nudged me. “What are you thinking about so deeply? Do you also

want to drink some Ascending Jade Tide?”

I replied, “Oh! I’m not thinking of anything. You can drink that by yourself.”

The female student in front of Mu Zi asked, “What are you drinking? It has a sweet scent.”

Mu Zi replied, “It’s Ascending Jade Tide. Here, have a taste!”

The female student gasped, “Wah! It’s actually Ascending Jade Tide. I heard it’s really expensive. You’re really loaded with money.”

Mu Zi pointed at me. “It wasn’t my money. Zhang Gong bought it. I can share some with you.”

The female student enviously looked at Mu Zi. “He treats you so well. He’s handsome and his magic spells are very powerful. You’re so lucky!”

Mu Zi pouted. “If you like him, you can have him.”

I quietly listened to their conversation until that part. I angrily said, “Mu Zi! What did you say?”

Mu Zi turned to me and said, “I haven’t even agreed to be your girlfriend! Why are you being so fierce?”

I instantly became speechless. ‘She indeed hasn’t agreed to be my girlfriend. It looks like I wasted my diamond coins.’ I just collapsed on the table. For some reason, my heart felt really painful.

Maybe it was the Ascending Jade Tide that I drank. The female student wasn’t bad as she supported me by saying, “Mu Zi! How could you say that to him? Your words are really hurtful.” Mu Zi remained silent.

Finally, class ended and I immediately rushed out of the classroom. I was unusually moody.

I met Ma Ke after walking for a short while. Ma Ke, who had a face overflowing with happiness, stopped me and said, “Boss, it’s great! We succeeded!”

I gloomily asked, “Succeeded? In what?”

Ma Ke curiously replied, “Boss, what happened to you? Are you in a bad mood? Obviously the success I was talking about is the successful formation of the alliance. Today, Teacher Di went to the prince’s mansion to visit my father. After talking for the whole morning, they finally reached an agreement. In the afternoon, they went to find the other three Magisters. Teacher Long can’t be counted on, but the other two Magisters, the academy’s principal and vice principal, both agreed to support father.”

“This is really a good news!” I replied, “That’s great! When shall we make our move?”

Ma Ke replied, “My father said that in order to avoid unnecessary clashes, it would be better to start settling the problem as soon as possible. They decided to find Duke Te Yi and the three big families to negotiate terms tomorrow.”

I replied in shock, “So soon?”

Ma Ke continued to explain, “Initially, father wanted to ask you to come join them, but Teacher Di said that you’re our secret weapon and that we shouldn’t let the opposing forces know about you.”

I replied, “How am I supposed to be a secret weapon? Anyway, I’ll just wait for the good news tomorrow and just head back to the dormitory.”

Ma Ke asked, “Boss, what happened today? What made you so irritated? Let’s go out for a good meal!”

I hurriedly waved my hands at Ma Ke, fearful of the thought of eating again. “No! Wait until everything is settled, then we’ll celebrate. I don’t know why, but I feel extremely tired today so I’ll head back first.”

Ma Ke replied, “Alright! I won’t disturb you anymore. You should feel better after a night’s rest.”

After bidding farewell to Ma Ke, I returned to the dormitory and lay on the bed. My heart was roaring like the sea. ‘Why did Mu Zi make my heart hurt so much? Could it be that I have really fallen in love with her?’

No, that's impossible! What's so good about her? She's neither beautiful nor gentle! Yet, Mu Zi's silhouette continues to appear in front of me.'

Chapter 22: Two Tender Encounters

I woke up early in the morning and started moving my body to warm up before circulating the Ascending Dragon's Battle Spirit that Zhan Hu had taught me. My battle spirit had improved a lot without me noticing. After putting in lots of effort, I managed to hover above the ground. The battle spirit rapidly rushed out from under my feet. I was really surprised that I could levitate, even though I could only maintain it for five minutes. It was just too awesome!

My mood was slightly better. When I entered the classroom, it was that old mage's lesson. I sat in my seat without even glancing at Mu Zi.

The old mage said, "I'll start class now. The results for yesterday's test are out. Overall, everyone did well and passed, but some students passed using dishonest methods. I hope you know that laziness won't lead to any good fortune. Alright! Today I will be teaching..."

'It's obvious he's talking about me but I'll just ignore him now that the test is over.'

Mu Zi nudged my side and whispered, "Are you still angry?"

I replied flatly, "I'm not angry. Why should I be? You were right that I'm nothing to you so how could I be mad at you?"

Mu Zi replied, "You're so petty!"

I replied angrily, "I'm petty? You spent eighty of my diamonds coins just yesterday."

Mu Zi's face reddened and said sheepishly, "Then you're not petty, so can we eat at that place for lunch again?" 'Eat there again? I'll be bankrupt in less than a month at this rate.'

I replied angrily, "I don't feel like eating so I'm not going."

Mu Zi pouted and said, "I knew you wouldn't go there again. You're just like the other guys who tried to court me." After she said that, she lowered her head dejectedly.

I relented and said, "Fine, then we'll go eat at noon."

Mu Zi's eyes brightened after hearing that, but then she became depressed again. "I think we shouldn't go since you'll have to spend so much. I don't know why I have this bad habit of loving to eat so much."

I was moved by her pitiful look, and said, "This can't be a bad habit if you're not stealing or robbing. It's just eating food so stop being so dejected. We'll go there at noon."

Mu Zi started to tear up. "Zhang Gong, you're so good. Thank you so much! What shall we have for lunch?" After she asked that, her eyes brightened.

I laughed bitterly in my heart as I couldn't be stingy. "It'll be up to you. We'll eat whatever you want."

Mu Zi exclaimed, "Yay!" 'Even though I am about to spend some huge sum of diamond coins, my mood is surprisingly better.'

I whispered to her. "If you agree to be my girlfriend, I'll bring you out to eat everyday!"

Mu Zi looked at me and said, "Are you really going to bring me out to eat everyday?"

I replied, "Yes!"

Mu Zi said, "Alright! I'll temporarily be your girlfriend, but you have to keep your word!"

I pounded my chest. "Of course! As a gentlemen, how could I go back on my word?" 'It seems that bringing her out for food was more effective than giving her love letters.' Just as I thought that, Mu Zi said, "I have a condition, though, before I agree to be your girlfriend. You still have to write love letters to me every day."

'Ah! it seems she is just as vain as other girls.' "No problem! I'll start to write one for you now." I took a piece of paper out and hurriedly wrote on it. My heart was filled with feelings for her and I finished writing her love letter extremely quickly. As for the contents, they were as corny as they could be.

Mu Zi contentedly read the love letter. She repeatedly showed a bashful expression on her blushing small face.

After reading the letter, she stretched a hand out to me. I was stunned and replied, "What do you want?"

Mu Zi replied, "Please give me the love letters you already wrote for me. I know you kept them."

I consented, saying, "They're in the dormitory. I'll give them to you at noon."

After morning classes, we went to Ascending Jade Tide again. It was so painful! Even though Mu Zi was more reserved in her orders, it was still fifty diamond coins after the discount. 'If this continues on, one day I will definitely be coming here to wash the dishes!'

After Mu Zi agreed to be my girlfriend, her attitude toward me changed. She occasionally showed shy expressions, and didn't rebuke me as she had before. I was elated.

When we returned for the afternoon lessons, Mu Zi was, for the first time, not focusing in class; because she was reading the letters that I had written for her before. 'It looks like my relationship has finally gotten off to a good start and she is starting to accept me.'

When it was close to the end of class, Mu Zi asked, "Let's eat at the canteen tonight?"

I replied, "Great! I haven't eaten with you at the canteen before."

When class ended, we went to the canteen. There weren't many students as the ones not in the dormitory usually headed home to eat. We found a quiet spot and ordered some dishes and ate them in great pleasure.

As I ate, I asked Mu Zi, "Mu Zi, how can you not get fat after eating so much everyday?"

Mu Zi glanced at me and said, "How have I not gained weight? I'm much fatter than before."

I replied, "Really? I can't see it. I think it would be better if you were

slightly fatter."

At this moment, a gentle voice said. "So you're eating here, Zhang Gong." I turned around and saw Hai Shui.

I curiously asked, "Aren't you supposed to eat your dinner at home? Why are you at the canteen?"

Hai Shui walked to my side, but didn't reply to my question. She frowned at Mu Zi. "Zhang Gong, why are you with Mu Zi? Mu Zi, how are you?"

Mu Zi smiled politely and replied, "So it's Hai Shui! Let's eat together!" 'I wonder why she isn't curious about how Hai Shui knows me.'

Hai Shui placed her hands on my shoulders and smiled towards Mu Zi. "Are you and Zhang Gong familiar enough with each other to be eating together?"

Mu Zi replied shyly, "How can I be familiar with him? We're just classmates."

I frowned and said angrily, "Mu Zi, how can you still be like that? Didn't you agreed to be my girlfriend this morning?"

Mu Zi smiled. "Why are you angry again? I'm only your temporary girlfriend! I still need to test you."

Chapter 23: Battle for Kingship

While listening to our conversation Hai Shui's face paled drastically. Her body swayed and she looked as if she was going to faint. I hurriedly went to support her. "Hai Shui, are you unwell?" I helped her sit in the chair beside me.

After she sat down she forced a smile and said, "I'm fine. Zhang Gong, congratulations on getting Mu Zi."

I proudly said, "Thank you, this is the result of my persistence. You have no idea how cold she was before."

Hai Shui's expression became even paler. I worriedly asked, "Hai Shui, your complexion doesn't seem to be good. Do you want me to bring you back to the dormitory?"

Hai Shui stood up and said, "You don't need to. I'll head back on my own. It might just be because today was hot. You guys just continue to eat. I'll head back first."

I asked curiously, "You're sure you'll be alright?"

Hai Shui smiled, distressed. "I'll be alright. See you."

As I watched Hai Shui leave, I asked Mu Zi, "What's going on with Hai Shui? Strong magicians rarely fall ill."

Mu Zi giggled and said, "Are you really that dumb or just pretending? Even the blind can see that she's like that because of you. Her previous affectionate actions didn't seem like those of a normal friend."

I apprehensively asked, "How could it be because of me? Why didn't it seem like normal friends?"

Mu Zi pouted. "She likes you, so when she saw us together and heard that I'm your girlfriend, she got upset!"

I hurriedly explained myself. "Mu Zi, please don't misunderstand! Hai Shui and I are just schoolmates from the Intermediate Magic Academy. We're just friends. I've always treated her as my sister."

Mu Zi replied. "I didn't misunderstand! Ask anyone and they'll tell you that she likes you. Actually, Hai Shui is not bad. She's pretty and from an illustrious family so she suits you better than I do."

My expression darkened. "What are you saying? If I liked her, I would have courted her already, but the one I like is you!" After I said that, I was startled. 'It's as though what I said was really what I felt for Mu Zi. Could it be that I've actually fallen in love with her?'

After Mu Zi heard what I'd said she looked down, blushing bashfully. "Can you lower your voice? Alright, let's not talk about that and just eat."

After dinner, Mu Zi and I wandered around school for a long time. We didn't talk much. Just having her by my side was really soothing and made me very content. I subconsciously held her hand. She tried to remove her hand from mine, but didn't put in much effort. 'The feeling of holding her hand is amazing. It's very slender, fair and tender, as if it doesn't have any bones.' We just spent our time together until the sky turned dark and I escorted her back her dormitory. I realised that I had already fallen deeply in love with her and my initial hatred had disappeared completely. After sending Mu Zi back, I returned to my dormitory. Ma Ke was waiting in my room. Once he saw me, he exclaimed, "Boss! Where have you been? I've been waiting for a long time!"

"Oh! I was just wandering around the academy. How did the negotiations go?"

Ma Ke replied, "It's hard to say. Right now, both sides have chances of winning."

I curiously asked, "We still can't make them surrender with our current power?"

"Surrender? Why would they do that? They have four Magisters as do we; it isn't easy to make them surrender. After negotiating for half a day, we finally decided to compete against each other. The winner will have the right to control the kingdom of Aixia."

I frowned. "A competition? Isn't that just child's play? The succession of

the kingdom is a very important matter. How could they just use a competition to decide?”

Ma Ke sighed. “Actually, this is already the best possible outcome. Aixia is a magic based country. If you have a lot of magic power, you’ll be respected and your status will rise along with your power. If the two opposing sides really fought against each other, the one with more magic power will win. Anyway, it’s still a magicians’ battle so it is better to make it a competition and avoid unnecessary injuries and casualties.”

I considered it and thought ‘It is true that a good way to avoid unnecessary casualties is to downscale the battle into a competition.’ “It makes sense that way!”

Ma Ke smiled. “Of course it makes sense. This is Teacher Di’s suggestion, and Principal Zhen supports him. After a lot of negotiations, the competition is finally set. The winner will get control over the kingdom and the party that loses must concede defeat. However, during the competition it’s forbidden to harm the opponent seriously.”

‘So it is Teacher Di’s idea. I can stop worrying, as Teacher Di is an extremely earnest person.’ I asked Ma Ke, “How are we going to compete?”

Ma Ke explained. “Initially, our side suggested that the winner of three matches wins. However, they said it was unfair as we have Teacher Di and Teacher Zhen, whose ranks are higher than their magisters’, so they suggested best of five matches instead. Since we brought up the competition, we could only agree to their request. After three days, we’ll secretly compete at the palace. Teacher Di told me to tell you that after asking for a leave of absence from the academy tomorrow, you need to go find him so you can train for a while and increase our chances of winning.”

I asked, “I’m also participating? Their magic experience and ability is so high! How am I going to compete against them?”

Ma Ke chuckled. “Boss, you’re wrong! You’re our secret weapon. Other than a handful of people, who knows that you’re a Magister? You’ve been

chosen to fight the last match, so you'll have a slight advantage over whoever is sent out to fight you. Haha. This is also why we agreed to the five matches request."

'This is really a good plan. However, I still have an inkling feeling that there is something amiss. Since it is already decided though, I'll just take a leave of absence from the academy tomorrow.'

I patted Ma Ke's shoulder. "Don't worry! I'll do my best to help your father succeed the throne."

Ma Ke gratefully grabbed my hand. "Boss, I promise you that my father will definitely be a good king!"

I smiled. "You have to remember your promise! I'll keep you to it!"

Ma Ke exclaimed, "I will!"

'The final battle to decide the fate of the kingdom of Aixia is starting. I really hope that it will be possible to determine who will win or lose by the fourth round so I won't need to compete.'

Chapter 24: Training Before the Competition

I went to the academy to ask for a couple days leave of absence from the class teacher-in-charge. Teacher Yu immediately agreed, probably because Principal Zhen told him about it.

When I went to the classroom, not many students had arrived yet, as it was still early. However, Mu Zi was there already. I sat in my seat and said, “Morning! I have something to tell you.”

Mu Zi smiled, “Why are you so early today? Usually, you come to class at the very last minute before the bell rings. What do you want to tell me?”

I awkwardly scratched my head. “Am I usually that late? Anyway, for the next three days, I won’t be coming to class as I have an important matter to settle.”

Mu Zi frowned, “What is so important that you can’t attend class?”

I giggled. “You can’t bear to be apart from me, right?”

Mu Zi blushed and said, “Who can’t bear to be apart from you? You’re so annoying. What is the matter?”

I looked appreciatively at her flushed face. “It’s an extremely important matter. I can’t tell you now, you just have to wait for my return. I won’t be in any danger so you don’t have to worry about me.”

Mu Zi replied, “If you can’t say it, then forget it. Are you leaving now?”

I said, “That’s right! I have to leave now. I’ve applied for three days of leave. I’ll be back in three days, but you’re not allowed to cheat on me. Hehe.”

Mu Zi knocked on my head. “You’re so annoying! I’ll definitely go on dates with other guys. What are you going to do about it? If you’re scared, then stay to check on me.” Her expression showed a sign of reluctance over me leaving her.

I seriously replied, “Mu Zi, I also can’t bear to part from you, but this matter is very important. Please just wait for me. I can’t continue to chat

with you as I need to leave already. See you later.” After saying that, I stood up.

Mu Zi remained silent for a while. “Please be careful and come back safely!” From her words, it seemed like she knew that I was going to do something dangerous.

I wordlessly nodded as I was afraid that I wouldn’t be able to leave if I continued to chat with her. I turned around and walked out of the classroom then went back to the dormitory to find Ma Ke first so we could head to the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy together.

After arriving outside of Teacher Di’s office, I shouted, “Teacher Di, I’m back!”

Teacher Di’s benevolent voice came out from the room, “Zhang Gong, You’re back, quickly come inside!”

When we walked into the office, there were already four people inside. Other than Teacher Di and Teacher Long, there were two other old magicians I didn’t know. ‘They are probably the principal and vice principal of the Advanced Magic Academy.’

Ma Ke and I bowed towards them and jointly said, “Greetings to the teachers.”

Teacher Di hadn’t said anything, but the old mage wearing a black robe said, “You don’t need to be this polite! You must be Zhang Gong. Ah, Lao Lun found such an exceptional successor.”

As I looked at Teacher Di, he smilingly said, “Zhang Gong, this is the Royal Advanced Magic Academy’s Principal, Spatial Magister Teacher Chuan Song Zhen. The magic array book I gave you last time was written by him. The other mage is the Royal Advanced Magic Academy’s Vice Principal, Fire Magister Si Di Lie.”

I greeted them again. “It is my pleasure meeting you teachers.”

Teacher Zhen said, “Zhang Gong, are you in Teacher Si Yu’s class?”

I replied, “Yes!”

Teacher Zhen said, “Zhang Gong, for the next two days we will give you special training for the competition that will be held in three days. You should know that this competition determines the fate of the Kingdom of Aixia so we hope that you will work hard in these two days to improve your abilities. Ma Ke will also be training with you. He’ll serve as a reserve for the competition. You will be the kingdom’s new pillars as we are already getting old. You will have to depend on yourselves in the future.” ‘Teacher Zhen is obviously the representative for the teachers as he’s held the position of top magister for the past fifty years.’

Ma Ke and I replied him. “Yes, we will. Thank you for your tutelage, teachers.”

Teacher Di said, “Let’s go to the courtyard.”

After arriving at the courtyard, Teacher Zhen said, “Lao Lun and I will be in charge of Zhang Gong’s training. Since Xing De and Si Di are both fire Magisters, they’ll be in charge of Ma Ke’s training. Let’s begin! Ma Ke and Zhang Gong, what are your magical beasts? This competition allows the use of magical beasts.”

I replied, “My magical beast is called Xiao Jin, he’s a dragon.”

Ma Ke replied, “My magical beast is a rank 8 Fire Lion.”

Teacher Zhen was surprised and said, “Zhang Gong, what did you say? You say your magical beast is a dragon? Quickly summon him for me to have a look. Lao Lun, you actually kept me in the dark that your successor has a dragon.”

Teacher Di and I glanced at each other. “Xiao Jin, come out!” A golden light flashed. Xiao Jin’s over thirty metre long body appeared in the training ground. It had been a long time since I’d last called him out. Once he saw so many people, he elatedly let out a long roar. At that moment when he roared, Ma Ke had also summoned his fire lion, but he was so frightened by Xiao Jin’s roar that he cowered and trembled in fear.

The golden dragon’s horns had already fully grown, and each had branched into three points. Golden scales covered his body like a strong armour. He had five large claws, and made some claw marks on the

ground. The enormous wings on his back were the most beautiful part of the body. Golden light also glowed from its' enormous body. He sent me a mental message asking me who he should attack. I hurriedly told him that he just needed to remain still.

Except for me, everyone, including Teacher Di, was stunned. Teacher Di said, flabbergasted, "It's only been two years and Xiao Jin has grown so much!"

Ma Ke admiringly said, "Wah! Boss, Xiao Jin is so beautiful!"

Teacher Zhen said, "This is a dragon? It's life force is so strong. He doesn't seem to be an ordinary dragon."

Teacher Lie, who hadn't said anything, said, "He definitely isn't an ordinary dragon! Only a Dragon King will have golden scales. This dragon should be a mature dragon that's at least two thousand years old already."

I smiled bitterly and said, "No, that can't be. It's only seven years old."

Teacher Lie was astonished and said, "That's impossible! At seven years old, it should only be at the infancy stage, but it's obviously not..."

Teacher Di had already snapped out of his stupor and explained, "The dragon actually almost died once, but Zhang Gong sacrificed half of his life to save it. He life span is only about 60 human years now, which is equivalent to nearly 20,000 years for a dragon. According to that proportion, it's only natural that it's seven years of age are nearly comparable to a 2000 year old adult dragon."

Chapter 25: Bombardment

Teacher Zhen exclaimed, “Zhang Gong sacrificed half his life for the dragon?”

I nodded and emotionally said, “Xiao Jin is my most important partner. How could I turn a blind eye and let him die?” Feeling the surge of my emotions, Xiao Jin lowered his head and nuzzled against me, prompting me to affectionately pat him.

Teacher Zhen shook his head. “Unbelievable! It looks like it’s unnecessary to train the dragon as I doubt I’ll be able to defeat Zhang Gong with Xiao Jin’s assistance. Our chances of victory are much higher now.” He had already gauged Xiao Jin’s strength from his life force.

Teacher Di replied, “Even if that’s the case, we still don’t know who they’ll send out in the fifth match. Zhang Gong and Ma Ke, you two must make some breakthroughs in the next two days. Since magic power can’t be improved in such a short period of time, we’ll focus on training your defensive spells and spell techniques. Alright! Ma Ke, Xin De and Si Di will go to that side of the courtyard to train. Zhang Gong, you just stay here. We’ll immediately start!”

Just as Ma Ke and his teachers walked towards their designated area, Teacher Zhen suddenly shot a small dimensional slash at me. As expected of the first ranked Magister; a very strong attraction force surged from the small dimensional slash, one much stronger than mine. A small spatial crack appeared beside me and a strong attraction force instantaneously surged out from inside it.

Because I was unprepared, my body was momentarily pulled towards the spatial crack. Just as I was about to counter the spell, an enormous body moved in front of me. It was Xiao Jin! He waved his almost twenty-metres-long left wing at the spatial crack. Hong! His attack actually managed to make the spatial crack disappear. Xiao Jin glared at Teacher Zhen and got ready to attack him.

Teacher Zhen looked like he didn’t know whether to laugh or cry.

“Zhang Gong, before we continue training, please withdraw your magical beast.”

I hastily explained to Xiao Jin that Teacher Zhen didn’t have bad intentions before withdrawing him back into my body. Teacher Zhen said, “Lao Lun and I will be attacking you. You’ll have to carefully defend against and counter our attacks. We won’t hold back because you can only improve under harsh conditions.” ‘So that’s what this training is about; no wonder he suddenly attacked me.’

I immediately cast two advanced defensive light spells. My body was enclosed by a dim gold light. Teacher Di shouted, “Be careful!” A light blade shot towards me. I hastily created a light blade to counter his. Hong! When the two light blades collided, the sky lit up. The impact forced me to move three steps back, but Teacher Di didn’t move at all. Teacher Di frowned and said, “Your light elements’ power wasn’t sufficiently focused!”

‘So that’s why I was forced backwards,’ A small dimensional slash from Teacher Zhen and a light blade from Teacher Di struck at me simultaneously, barely giving me enough time to think.

Since the dispersed light elements weren’t powerful enough, I focused the elements’ powers. I withdrew half of my Gold Dan’s power to form a small ball in my left hand. I then used short distance teleportation to avoid Teacher’s Di attack and tossed the light ball towards Teacher Zhen’s small dimensional slash.

Teacher Zhen was startled and immediately cancelled his spell as it wasn’t strong enough to counter the powerful, highly compacted light ball. Teacher Di laughed. “That’s right! That’s the way to counter spells!”

Hearing Teacher Di’s praise, I was elated. I dissipated the light ball in my left hand and cast a light blade at Teacher Zhen with my right hand. The light blade actually hit him. I was in shock! However, after I took a second look, I realized that what I had hit was just an afterimage. Teacher Zhen had already teleported behind me and shouted, “Chaotic Space!” I felt my surroundings warp. It felt as though my body was out of

my control, and I was in so much pain, as if I was being shred to pieces. ‘Is this an advanced spatial magic spell?’ I cried out in pain and returned the power of the light ball into my body. I immediately used a defensive magic spell to form a strong defensive array. The distorted feeling disappeared, but an extremely strong pressure coming from all directions made it difficult to breathe.

‘Am I going be defeated so quickly? I still have power remaining. I won’t lose! I’m also a Magister.’ I tried my best to resist the pressure and supplied endless amounts of magic power into the defensive array, and chanted, “Light elements! My great friends! I beseech of you to use your powers to become endless brilliant rays, transform into specks of stars and eliminate the enemies in front of you, Bright Star’s Shine!” This was one of my most powerful spells. Even though my surroundings are distorted, the light elements could still gather around me. As they quickly gathered, the defensive array became more stable.

Teacher Zhen said to Teacher Di, “It looks like Zhang Gong has many ways to counter our attacks; when he resisted my Chaotic Space, he still had enough magic power to cast a powerful magic spell. Let’s prepare ourselves as well so as to make sure Zhang Gong doesn’t turn the tables around. Haha!” After he said that, the two top ranking Magisters chanted defensive spells.

After I completed my spell, the light element stars all around me surrounded the defensive array. I shouted, “Charge!” Even though I couldn’t break the spell, the light stars still managed to fly out of the warped space. As the light element stars left, the surrounding pressure decreased drastically. I hastily placed my magic power into the defensive array while controlling the light stars that charged out.

Teacher Di smiled towards Teacher Zhen. “It’s coming! It’s an advanced light spell. It won’t be easy to counter.” A massive number of light stars charged towards them. The two experienced Magisters had already arranged their defensive barriers to their maximum strengths to withstand the incoming magic spell. However, the incoming light stars suddenly stopped in mid-air.

The two Magisters, stunned, unintentionally slightly lowered their barriers, weakening their defenses. At that moment, the stilled light stars moved again, rapidly forming two golden chains and charging towards the two defensive arrays. Teacher Di shouted, "Nice one! Smart move!" When the light stars landed on the barriers they made a muffled thump. I had used my spiritual power to concentrate the light element stars at single points on their defensive barriers instead of using a large area spell. The penetration strength was really strong so they wouldn't be able to stop the spell with their defensive barriers.

After the two teachers' barriers broke, they used their ultimate moves to stop the light stars attack. Teacher Di used the same Bright Star's Shine spell. Once my light stars landed on his defensive barrier, he realized that something wasn't right and immediately chanted the spell. Although he was in a difficult position, he completely blocked my attack.

Chapter 26: Avoiding The Sharp Edge

Teacher Zhen was not as fortunate. He also felt something was wrong when his barrier came in contact with the light stars, but since he was actively controlling the Chaotic Space spell, his reaction speed was a bit delayed. He had to first withdraw his offensive spell on me before he could cast a large dimensional slash. It was obvious that the light stars were difficult for him to bear, he paled from the exertion even though he blocked the attack.

My entire body lightened as the surrounding pressure disappeared. Even though it had been only a few minutes since the training began, my magic power was already mostly used. I hastily gathered light elements while I regained my breath to recover the strength of the magic spell as soon as possible.

Teacher Zhen bitterly smiled, "That was great! Brat, your control on that magic spell was terrific! It actually made us suffer a little." As he spoke, he didn't cease casting his spells, but he didn't use any strong magic spells. He just continuously cast small Dimensional Slash. Teacher Di cooperated and cast continuous amount of light blades at me. The magic spells formed a large net that came toward me.

Ah! I did my best to resist the spells. This kind of attack continued until I was drained of power. As I lay on the ground, I saw that Ma Ke was in the same situation. 'These four old mages are ruthless.' As I thought that, I fainted.

When I woke up, my whole body was in pain, but my magic power had mostly recovered. It had already recovered about eighty percent.

When I sat up, I found that Ma Ke was lying beside me, but he showed no signs of awakening. The teachers were chatting in a corner of the room.

Teacher Di saw that I had woken up and said, "Zhang Gong, you're awake, Come and have some food." I got up from the bed and stretched to loosen up my muscles. When I felt much better, I ran to the table and

silently began to gobble up the food. I patted my stomach in satisfaction and sighed contentedly.

Teacher Zhen laughed. “You really can eat! How are you feeling after today’s training?”

I bitterly chuckled. “I’m tired to the bone. What other feelings would I feel?”

Teacher Zhen replied, “Actually, you should have been able to hold out a little longer with your current power. However, you’re not good at controlling the usage of your magic power. You’re wasting too much magic power every time you counter our attacks. Since you know we aren’t your opponent, you should avoid our attacks and only attack when you see an opportunity. You’ll be able to save lots of magic power that way. Your control in the star magic spell you used in the morning was not bad as it made Lao Lun and I suffer to counter it. However, the magic power required for the spell is too much. It’s the reason you had difficulty countering spells at the end.”

‘Avoid their attacks and attack only when opportunity strikes?’ I thought about that statement and analysed it. My eyes brightened before I said, “In other words, do you mean to move as I fight and so avoid your attacks rather than fight head on with your spells?”

Teacher Zhen nodded. “There is hope in teaching him!”

I felt something different in me, but couldn’t tell how. I said, “Teachers, can we battle again?” They had aroused my interest in fighting them. They won’t really hurt me and this is a really rare chance to increase my experience in using magic power in this manner.

Teacher Zhen was startled. “Your magic power has fully recovered?”

I replied, “It’s not fully recovered yet, but it shouldn’t take long. I probably just need an hour.” As I said that, I went to a corner of the room and sat down. I relaxed my body before greedily absorbing the light elements from my surroundings. I realised that every time I had a tough battle, my magic power recovery speed increased slightly. I wasn’t sure how much time passed, but my entire body felt soothed. I already felt as

though I could freely employ my magic power. The Gold Dan in my upper dantian was more stable than before.

I opened my eyes and stretched. The teachers weren't in the room. The sounds of magic colliding came from outside the room. I walked out to investigate and found Ma Ke and the other two Fire Magisters fighting.

When Teacher Di saw me, he said, "What was that about an hour? It is already night! Quickly go to the battle ground!"

Alright! Let's just fight! I obediently stood in front of them. The two teachers started to cast their offensive spells. 'It is just intermediate magic spells like yesterday, but their magic control and power is really strong which gave me a hard time countering their spells.'

Teacher Di cast a Light Severing Sword at me. I quickly avoided the spell, but the small Dimensional Slash from Teacher Zhen was anticipating my dodge. I thought about the statement 'Avoid fighting head on and strike when there is opportunity' and didn't use a magic spell to counter. I just used a protection spell on myself before using Dou Qi to push back toward the ground. My body started to levitate, which allowed me to avoid the attack.

'That's right! I still have Dou Qi! How can I forget about that?' I fused the Dou Qi and light elements on my arm. Even though this fused magic spell is really strong, the gathering speed is a little slow.

I used Dou Qi and short distance teleport consecutively. I seemed like a fish that avoided the two teachers' attacks by shifting here and there into the gaps between their spells. As Teacher Zhen cast his spell, he said, "Your usage of the short distance teleport is good. Be careful, we'll be using advanced magic next!"

Teacher Zhen and Teacher Di looked at each other before they started to chant an advanced magic spell. I chuckled, 'Do you think I'll wait for you to cast the spell?'

I waved my arm and a golden white light ray shot toward Teacher Zhen. Hehe! 'Teacher Di is my teacher so I'll be a little more polite against him.'

Teacher Zhen thought that I was unable to cast magic spells at that moment. When he saw the light ray, he didn't look at it carefully and just cast a small Dimensional Slash at it. I was elated! Haha! 'You'll be in deep trouble this time.'

As expected, the fusion of magic spell and Dou Qi increased the original magic power several times. It couldn't be countered with just a small Dimensional Slash. When the small Dimensional Slash was almost in contact with my fusion spell, Teacher Zhen felt something was wrong. He is the world's number one Magister after all. He immediately cast three layers of barriers in front of him and used short distance teleport to move away from the spell.

"Hong!" Teacher Zhen appeared a hundred meters away. He was covered in dirt and a faint stream of blood flowed from the corner of his lip.

Chapter 27: The Competition Begins

I didn't have the time to check on Teacher Zhen as Teacher Di had already completed chanting his offensive spell. Since I was only battling him, it was easier to counter his spells. Even if I can't take his spells head on, I could still defend against it.

Teacher Di used the rank 7 spell, Lightning Array Burst. I rarely used that spell as it was difficult to control. Teacher Di cast nine bolts of lightning to surround me; forming a simple array. This would result in me being unable to dodge his spell by using the short distance teleportation spell so every lightning held strong offensive powers.

I won't be able to avoid facing the multi-directional spell. I just had to resist it as I didn't have the time to cast a strong spell to counter it. I merely cast a few low grade protective spells on myself and fused Dou Qi in them as much as possible before it got in contact with the spells.

Hong! I was tossed high up by Teacher Di's magic spell. My protective barriers was completely broken as a result of resisting his attack. I was lucky that I had fused some Dou Qi into the barriers as it had decreased the severity of the attack to its lowest. It was still inevitable that I coughed out a mouthful of blood. I hurriedly cast a light element recovery spell to heal my body as a preparation to face Teacher's Di next move.

Teacher Zhen shouted, "I have enough of fighting already! If we continue, it'll probably cost my life!" Teacher Zhen was seriously hurt this time due to underestimating me.

Teacher Di and I withdrew the offensive spells that we had prepared to cast. I awkwardly ran forward to support Teacher Zhen. "Are you alright? You're too strong for me to hold back and had to fight with all of my might."

Teacher Zhen shook his head and said, "You're not the one to be blamed. It should be me. Let's stop training for the day as I need to tend to my wounds as soon as possible since the competition will be starting tomorrow. The training of Ma Ke by the Si Di and XIn De should also be

stopping soon.” Injuries weren’t hard to treat for Teacher Zhen with his current skills. After Teacher Zhen walked away, Teacher Di whispered to me, “Was that the fusion of light elements and Dou Qi that you had told me before?”

I nodded. “That’s right! Although the power of the fusion spell is strong, the speed to fuse them takes some times.”

Teacher Di replied, “That spell is not bad. You’ve to improve that spell as it’ll be really useful in the future.” I nodded in agreement.

Teacher Di said, “Alright! That should be enough training for the day. Let’s head back to have some food and get some rest before the competition tomorrow.”

Ma Ke and I accompanied with the four Magisters went to the prince’s mansion the next day. The Prince himself personally came to invite us in. He said in gratitude, “Thank you all for your support! I’ll have to depend on you today.”

Teacher Di smiled and replied, “Your Highness, you don’t have to be this polite to us as we aren’t doing this solely for you. We hope that you’ll be a good Emperor if we succeed in winning the competition.”

The Prince nodded affirmatively. “You don’t have to worry as I promise that I won’t let you down.”

The venue for the competition was in the Royal training ground. It was very spacious and had an ancient protection spell so that the training ground wouldn’t be destroyed easily.

The Prince lead one hundred guards to escort us to the Royal training ground. The competition was carried out in secret so only those involved in setting up the competition knew about it.

The Prince said, “I have invited the kingdom’s High Priest to be the judge. If the competition didn’t involve so many magic experts, I won’t have been able to ask for his help.”

I curiously asked Teacher Di, “ who is that High Priest ?” Teacher Di explained to me that he held a neutral position in the kingdom so he

won't be biased in the judging the matches. Anyone who are religious were his disciples. The kingdom had numerous believers. If he wanted the kingdom to be his, it would be extremely easy for him. Luckily, the power he held weren't impossible to resist against. The High Priest himself was a very kindhearted person. No one knew how old he really was and nor did anyone saw him got angry before. Everyone would be able to relax with him judging the battles. I stared at the High Priest only to see that he had calmly closed his eyes and ignored the commotions happening around him. He wore a strange attire. He had worn a black robe and a wooden staff in his hand. There was a glittering red jewel at the top of his staff. It seemed as though he had felt me staring at him as he slowly opened his eyes and a light ray entered my eyes. My entire body shook in response, but it was a power that wasn't filled with animosity. I wasn't in any discomfort in the entire process. When I was at a loss of what to do, the High Priest closed his eyes again and regained his previous posture.

'I didn't know that there are so many experts in the Kingdom of Aixia.' The opposing team arrived at that moment. They also had roughly one hundred people. It was obvious that they were mostly from the Royal Mage Union.

There were five people leading the group. The person walking right in front of the group wore a brocaded garment. He looked to be approximately fifty in age. He had a cold expression as if nothing was related to him. If I haven't guessed wrongly, he should be the opposing power Duke Te Yi as four people moving by his side had magical staffs in their hands. They should definitely be the leader of the three main families and the leader of the Royal Mage Union, Dun Yu Xi.

Since Du Yu Xi was an Earth Magister so he should be one on the left; wearing a yellow magician robe. 'I wonder why he did the same as the High Priest to close his eyes. Was that suppose to be cool? However, the magic staff in his hands looked like an advanced one. It should be an Earth based magic staff.'

The Ri, Yue and Xin family leaders were easy to be recognised as the clothings they wore had sun, moon and stars embroidered on them

respectively. That's interesting! The one wearing the sun embroidered robe should be Feng Liang Ri's grandfather, Si Feng Ri. He looked very gloomy.

We went with the prince as his representatives by going to greet the five of them with five of us as well.

Duke Te Yi said, "Your Highness, I'm sorry we were late."

The Prince said smilingly, "You don't have to be this courteous. It's my group that came early. Since all forces has arrived, shall we start the competition?"

Duke Te Yi said solemnly, "Alright! Let's start the battle that will decide the fate of the Kingdom."

A hoarse voice said, "Are all of you prepared?"

The Prince and Duke Te Yi bowed simultaneously and said. "Yes we are! Honourable High Priest, please give us the permission to start the competition."

The High Priest sighed a little and glanced at everyone before replying, "This competition happened inevitably, but I hope that you all won't seriously harm your opponents. You're the supporters and talents of the Kingdom. The Kingdom still needs your support. I foretold from gazing the stars a few days ago that there'll be a serious calamity that will bound to happen on the human race in the near future. You've to conserve as much powers as possible so as to be able to deal with the unknown dangers. Do you understand? Thus, I'll judge the team to be disqualified if someone from that team killed their opponent."

Chapter 28: Winning the First Battle

The Prince and Duke Te Yi represented their teams and said, "We understood!"

The High Priest nodded. "Very well! The competition will start now. You can freely decide the order of who to send out." It was important to decide on who to send out. The worst match up would be Dun Yu Xi against Teacher Di. Our advantage against Dun Yu Xi was negligible. Teacher Di was probably the only one that have the chance of winning against him. I would have no hope in participating the competition if I were to be matched up with Dun Yu Xi.

Duke Te Yi said, "Your Highness, let's draw straws to decide the order. Which five members from your side will be participating in the competition?"

The Prince looked at me to signal me to step forward. When I stepped out, the opposing forces mostly showed startled expressions as they didn't thought that the Prince would send out such a young magician. There was signs of hatred in the eyes of the Ri family's leader.

Duke Te Yi asked, "Your Highness, are you really going to sent out such a young magician? It can't be that you're forfeiting a match?"

The Prince smiled. "How could I forfeit a match? Zhang Gong is a very powerful magician so I won't underestimate him if I were you. Your team of five should also step out, no?"

Duke Te Yi exposed an expression of disdain. It was obvious that he was looking down on me. The four Magisters standing behind him and a person draped in a black magician robe stepped forward. The last mysterious person that stepped forward had his mantle really low so it was impossible to see his appearance.

Duke Te Yi and the Prince drew the first competitor. It was Teacher Chuan Song Zhen against the Xin family's leader, Hai Tian Xin. He was the grandfather of the three Hai Ri siblings.

The Prince expression stiffened a little. Even though he knew that this

match would be his to win, but he would no longer have anyone from his side that could win against Dun Yu Xi. However, he had already drew the lot so it was too late for regrets. Hai Ri Xin was the weakest in the opposing team member so it would be easy for Teacher Zhen to win against him. This would also mean that the other matches after this would be harder. This draw had greatly influence the future matches of the competition.

The High Priest announced loudly, “The first match will be the Royal Advance Magic Academy’s Principal Chuan Song Zhen against the Xin family’s leader, Hai Tian Xin. Everyone, except for those two, please leave the arena!”

Teacher Zhen and Hai Tian Xin were the only ones left in the five hundred meter square battle arena.

Hai Tian Xin smiled and said, “Chuan Song! Let’s have a fun match!”

Teacher Zhen asked, “Hai Tian, aren’t you a guy that dislikes to battle for power? Why did you enter this power battle?”

Hai Tian Xin replied, “Aren’t you the same? If it weren’t for you old fools, we would have won the battle already and could avoid the civil war. I have my responsibilities to my family. Let’s stop chatting and fight to see if I can move you from your first rank position!”

Teacher Zhen replied, “If that’s the case, let’s do it!”

The fighting power of two Magisters were really terrifying as the whole training ground was permeated with magic power. Hai Tian Xin quickly chanted his spell. Teacher Zhen didn’t stay idle either. He had cast a few spatial defensive spells.

A green light shot out from Hai Tian Xin’s hand. I knew that it was the Xin family’s special spell, Absolute Disruption spell. When I had previously fought with Hai Shui, I almost lost that match due to this spell.

Teacher Di whispered to me, “Look carefully at how Teacher Zhen counters the Absolute Disruption spell. You’ll have to fight the spell with

another spell. However, only spatial magic can counter the Absolute Disruption spell.”

Teacher Zhen undoubtedly saw through the standard of his opponent’s ability and smiled. He unceasingly cast small Dimensional Slash at the green light ray from both of his hands.

When the green ray came in contact with the small Dimensional Slash, the green ray unexpectedly couldn’t restrict the dimensional slash’s power. The spell was slowly being diminished by the continuous slashes of the small Dimensional Slash instead. Now that I knew that the small Dimensional Slash had such an effect, I wouldn’t need to fear this Absolute Disruption spell again.

After Hai Tian Xin saw that he had no effect on the small Dimensional Slash, his expression changed and quickly chanted in a foreign language. Weng! Teacher Zhen’s movements slowed down a little. I whispered, “That’s one of the Xin family’s secret spells, Water Dragon’s Chant.”

Although Teacher Zhen movement slowed down, he was still able to resist the unceasingly attacking Absolute Disruption spell. As he continued to cast small Dimensional Slash, he also chant a spell. I knew that at that moment, Teacher Zhen was really using his powers.

He chant, “Infinite space and the ever transforming stars! Please seal the unceasing storm and tear apart everything that stands in your path, Spatial Rupture Seal!”

Teacher Di exclaimed, “Ah! Chuan Song wants to finish off the match already! This is one of his advanced spatial spell and also one of his most powerful spells.”

As Teacher Zhen chanted, I felt that the atmosphere stilled. Hai Tian Xin’s Absolute Disruption spell was unable to move towards Teacher Zhen. The green ray of light gradually vanished. The stilled atmosphere seemed to become distorted. Hai Tian Xin knew that he would be defeated by that spell. He chanted, “Oh water! The source of lives! Please lend me your endless life force and let my life force be fused with yours— Water Ripple!” This was the last spell of the secret spells the Xin family held.

A circle of blue light surged out with hai Tian Xin as its center to resist against the distorted space.

“Attack, Water python!” At this crucial point, Hai Tian Xin finally summoned his magical beast as it was impossible for him to counter Teacher Zhen’s attack. He had to rely on the assistance of his magical beast.

An enormous blue python appeared in front of Hai Tian Xin and hissed. It immediately snapped open its enormous mouth and shot a water arrow at Teacher Zhen, which had unexpectedly pierced through the distorted space.

Teacher Long exclaimed, “A ninth grade water magical beast! This Hai Tian really have lots of magic treasures. However, Teacher Zhen still had lots of ultimate moves.”

When Teacher Zhen saw the blue python, he was a little startled and hurriedly cast a short distance teleportation spell to avoid its attack. He smiled and said, “Since you use your magical beast, why don’t I let my magical beast out so as to let them come together. Come forth, Lightning Eagle!” With a long cry of an eagle, a huge blue eagle similarly appeared in the arena. It flew towards the huge python. Lightning strikes and water arrows unceasingly interweaved. As they were both ninth grade magical beast, it was too hard for them to kill each other when they are in mid air.

The Water Ripple and Space sealing power were completely used up at that moment. Teacher Zhen stood at his position as per usual, but Hai Tian Xin paled and sat on the ground before hurriedly trying to regain his breath as he panted heavily. A stream of blood flowed from the corner of his lip.

Chapter 29: Pursuing a Retreating Enemy

Ignoring the heated battle between the two beasts, Teacher Di's lips curved up a little as he asked Hai Tian, "Hai Tian, do you still want to continue battling?"

Hai Tian Xin let out a long sigh. "What is the point in continuing? Would I be able beat you if we continued the fight? Many years have passed, but you're still stronger than me. Honourable High Priest, I concede." This Xin family's leader had such grace! When he saw that he didn't have any hope of winning, he simply took the initiative to forfeit the match.

They withdrew their frantically battling magical beasts at that moment. Not much time had passed since the start of the competition.

"The winner is Chuan Song Zhen from the prince's faction!" The High Priest announced. Prince Ke Zha showed a jubilant expression and personally went to welcome Teacher Zhen back. Our faction cheered wildly.

"Teacher Zhen, thanks for your efforts!" The prince said with a smile.

Teacher Zhen smiled, "This match meant nothing, it was a given that I would be able to win it. I'll just watch the remaining battles. Everyone, please don't be too complacent because of this result! If my predictions are correct, the remaining matches will be extremely tough."

I peeked at the opposing team. Their loss didn't seem to have demoralized them at all, they looked calm and collected, as though victory was still in their grasp.

"Prince Ke Zha and Duke Te Yi, please come forward to draw the lots for the next match." The High Priest said.

'I wonder who will be sent out this time.' Everyone anxiously awaited the outcome of the drawing.

After a short pause, the High Priest announced, "The contestants for the second match will be Wa Tian Shi and Lao Lun Di."

Wa Tian Shi was actually the name of the masked black-clothed man. Once his name was announced, the few teachers instantly froze for a moment. “Teacher Zhen, what is the matter? Why are you so shocked? Is it because that Wa Tian Shi is very powerful?” I asked curiously.

Teacher Zhen nodded. “He’s definitely powerful. He is a Fire Magister and ranks eighth amongst the Magisters. However, he’s from Dalu. Why would he be here?”

“High Priest, I protest against this match! Wa Tian Shi isn’t from Aixia, so how could he participate in this competition?” Prince Ke Zha shouted.

The High Priest closed his eyes and replied, “Duke Te Yi, what is your explanation for this?”

Duke Te Yi unhurriedly explained, “High Priest, the reason is very simple. Magister Wa Tian Shi’s name has been part of the records of the Kingdom of Axia for a very long time, and he is the current Vice-president of the Royal Mage Union as well.”

“What!? Why didn’t I know about such an important appointment!” Prince Ke Zha exclaimed.

Duke Te Yi withdrew an appointment letter with the Kingdom’s seal and replied, “This is a letter of appointment, written by the Emperor. High Priest, please review it and judge its credibility!”

After looking at the letter of appointment, the High Priest said, “Since Magister Wa Tian Shi has been formally entered in the records of the Kingdom, I condone his participation and will not accept any further objections.”

The prince resentfully went back to our team and sighed. “What to do? Wa Tian Shi has messed up our plans.”

Teacher Zhen explained, “Please don’t get anxious, Your Highness. If the draw had lead to a battle between Dun Yu Xi and Lao Lun instead, it would have been a much tougher match, so this isn’t completely in the opponent’s favour. We just have to depend on Lao Lun to win his match and struggle with all of our might to win the last one.”

The prince nodded. "In that case, I'll have to trouble you, Teacher Di."

Teacher Di smiled and replied, "Relax! Wa Tian Shi isn't a threat to me." After he said that, he briskly walked toward the arena.

Wa Tian Shi had removed his black mantle and revealed a light magician's robe. He seemed to be about seventy years of age. He walked towards the arena with a bright red magic staff in hand.

Wa Tian Shi said, "Are you Lao Lun Di? This should be the first time we face off. I hope you won't disappoint me, I really want to see the difference between the eighth and third positions in the rankings of Magisters."

Teacher Di calmly replied, "Let's have a good match then."

Even though Wa Tian Shi's speech made him seem very relaxed, he was actually extremely nervous. As soon as the match started, he waved the magic staff in his right hand and yelled, "Fire Bear! Come forth!" His magical beast, a huge red bear that was over three meters tall, appeared in front of him.

Teacher Di was momentarily shocked, but then he waved his hand to shoot a light blade at the bear. The fire bear roared loudly and just used its huge palm to counter Teacher Di's attack. It wasn't a ninth grade magical beast for nothing!

Teacher Zhen said in shock, "This is bad! Lao Lun will be in trouble this time since he doesn't have a magical beast!" The fire bear's strength lies in its ability to defend its owner. Its defensive power seems to be nearing the level of a Magister. As Lao Lun doesn't have a magical beast, this battle will be an extremely difficult battle. " 'That's right! I just realised that I have never seen Teacher Di's magical beast before. I asked him about that once, but he just smiled and replied that relying on a magical beast too much will have a detrimental influence on one in improving their magic.'

Wa Tian Shi said, "Why don't you summon your magical beast so that we can fight this battle with all of our might?"

Teacher Di just shrugged. "I don't have a magical beast. Let's just continue fighting!"

Wa Tian Shi stood still for a moment, dazed, before saying, "You don't have a magical beast? Then how could I battle with my magical beast? Fire Bear, return!" Duke Te Yi started to shout complaints from a distance when Wa Tian Shi recalled his fire bear, "Teacher Wa Tian, how could you give up your advantage against him?"

Wa Tian Shi frowned and said, "This is a Magister's battle. What meaning would an unfair battle hold? Magisters should have their dignity!" Duke Te Yi had been rebuked. The surrounding three main families' leader looked at Duke Te Yi with displeased expressions, it was obvious that they didn't agree with what the duke had said either.

Wa Tian Shi actions had won him the goodwill of Teacher Di and the others. Teacher Di smiled and said, "Good! I will fight this match fair and square to show you my respect. Great Light elements! Please lend me your great powers! Let the unlimited light shine on the whole land. Illuminate - Brilliant Empire!" A white ray of light shone out from Teacher Di's body. I often used this spell, so I was very familiar with it. Wa Tian Shi, meanwhile, had given up on testing the waters and started to chant a strong spell, "Violent Flames! Please turn into an azure flame and use your conviction to incinerate the enemy standing before you-- Azure Flames!" A red flame surged out from Wa Tian Shi's red magic staff, but it gradually turned from red to white, and then from white to azure. It looked very strange. When he waved his staff, a green flame shot out, toward Teacher Di.

When the Brilliant Empire spell came in contact with the hot azure flames, the impact created a resounding Pu~ sound. The two Magisters seemed to be standing on equal ground at the beginning, but as time passed, the green flame was gradually being pushed backwards. Wa Tian Shi was panting and sweating heavily, but continued to chant before waving his staff once again and roaring, "Azure Flames, transform into a dragon!"

Chapter 30: An Outlook Far From Good

As he roared out, the azure flame retreated a little before transforming into a huge azure flame dragon. It had increased in temperature and countered the Brilliant Empire spell by clawing at it and managed to push the Brilliant Empire spell backwards.

Teacher Di saw the change in situation but didn't panic. He just smiled a little and continued the Brilliant Empire spell while rapidly gathering light elements from all directions to his right hand. A white light ball formed in Teacher's Di hand. 'I know that was an light element power ball, but can it really counter that azure dragon? It seems that the Brilliant Empire also can't hold on much longer.'

Teacher Di's face flushed red. It was a sign of gathering large amount of light elements. Teacher Zhen said, "Lao Lun is going to use one of his ultimate spells, even I'm not sure if I could withstand that spell. Zhang Gong! You have to watch closely!"

The white light ball in Teacher Di's hand suddenly radiated light, as expected. It slowly formed into an egg sized golden light ball. Ah! Teacher Di designed it to be similar to the Gold Dan's shape. This was probably why he kept on telling me to gather my magic powers as much as possible. The golden light ball floated out from Teacher Di's hand and went towards the azure dragon, which already broke through the Brilliant Empire spell.

The huge azure dragon shot out an azure flame, whose temperature could melt gold and rocks. Under Teacher Di's control, the golden light floated upward to evade the azure flame and collided with the azure dragon. At that point, it was impossible to stop the collision.

When the golden light ball collided with the azure dragon, a large impact resounded throughout the whole arena. A huge crater formed from the impact with sand and dust covering the whole area. The protective barrier of the arena shook a little.

After a long time had passed, the sand cloud settled down. I was elated

to see Teacher Di standing at his position, even though his complexion was a little pale. Wa Tian Shi, on the other hand, collapsed to the ground. His entire magic robe was stained with his blood. Teacher Di walked over to him and chanted, “Oh heavenly light! Please use your endlessly merciful heart to become a savior god light— Recovery Light!” It was an advanced light recovery spell. As long as Wa Tian Shi had a breath, that spell would be able to secure his life.

Wa Tian Shi slowly awakened from his unconscious state and coughed a little. He bitterly smiled. “It’s as expected of a third ranked Magister. I concede defeat.”

Teacher Di supported him and sincerely said, “If you had used your magical beast, the outcome might have been different.”

Wa Tian Shi shook his head. “I doubt that. Even if I used the magical beast, I wouldn’t be able to withstand that attack. You don’t have to console me. If I win, I win. If I lose, I lose.” He pushed Teacher Di’s hand aside and went back to his team.

After losing this match, Duke Te Yi’s expression darkened. It was obvious that he wasn’t satisfied with Wa Tian Shi’s performance.

The High Priest announced at that moment, “Lao Lun Di from the prince faction wins the second match!”

Our side cheered wildly again. When Teacher Di returned to the team, I jubilantly clung onto his arm and said, “Teacher, you were awesome out there! You have increased our chances of winning drastically.”

Teacher Di didn’t show any sign of happiness, but instead he frowned. “Don’t be so happy just yet! The situation is still against us.”

Teacher Zhen walked over and nodded. “What Lao Lun said is right! Although we won two matches, we are still in a disadvantageous position. The opponent is still left with the Ri and Yue families’s leaders and Dun Yu Yi experts. Our side has only Xin De, Si Die and Zhang Gong. Their abilities are all slightly weaker than the opposing side, so we must do our best in order to win the last match.”

The two teachers and I nodded our heads simultaneously.

The battle arena had already been repaired by a few earth magicians at that moment, in preparation to commence the third match.

The outcome of the third draw was Teacher Si Di Lie against the Yue family's leader, Huan Ying Yue. The outcome of the battle was just correctly predicted by Teacher Di and Teacher Zhen. Since Si Di Lie was slightly weaker than his opponent, even if he had already used all of his might to fight against his opponent, he still lost the tough battle against Huan Ying Yue's Yue family's special technique, Shadow Moon's Trace, in just an hour time.

Ma Ke supported Teacher Lie, who had overused his magic powers, back to the camp site. Teacher Lie sat on the floor and said, "Sorry, I have lost."

The prince hastily replied, "Losing and winning is a commonplace in the military operation so please don't criticise yourself. If I were in your place, I doubt that I would be able to hold on for even a moment."

The prince and Duke Te Yi had drawn the drawing lots for the fourth match. It was me against the Ri family's leader, Si Feng Ri.

After the result of the draw was out, I enshrouded in gloominess. I was looked down on by everyone. Even if I'm a Magister, there was still a definite gap in ability from Si Feng Ri, who had been a Magister for quite some time already. Even if it was Teacher Di against him, he wouldn't have a definite chance of winning. If I lost this match, Teacher Long would be matched up against Dun Yu Xi and would definitely lose that match.

Teacher Zhen patted my shoulder. "Zhang Gong, you just have to do your best! Even if you lose, no one will blame you."

The only person that held complete confidence in me was my mentor, Lao Lun Di. Teacher Di walked over and straightened the light robe that he gave to me previously. He whispered, "Zhang Gong, you must believe in yourself! You still stand a chance. It's already impossible to hide Xiao Jin's identity already. With Xiao Jin's assistance, you'll be a strong force to be reckoned with."

I nodded and seriously replied, “Teacher Di, don’t worry! I definitely won’t let you down.”

As I walked to the battle arena, my heart was surging in anxiousness. I would be lying to myself if I said that I wasn’t scared. My opponent was a fire Magister, who was ranked four in the Magisters, after all. I gripped tightly onto my magic staff and walked to the centre of the arena and prepared to face the worst opponent I have ever faced in my life at the moment.

When the opposing side saw that the prince had really sent me out to compete, they booed disdainfully. Duke Te Yi arrogantly raised his head; he didn’t even look at me, since he thought that I would definitely lose against the Ri family’s leader.

Si Feng Ri came onto the battle arena. He looked relaxed compared to my nervousness. He wore a bright red magician robe. Paired with his red robe, red hair and red magic staff, he looked just like just like a scorching hot fire.

Si Feng Ri questioned, “Are you Zhang Gong Wei, who had seriously injured my grandson?”

I nodded. “Yes, I am.”

Chapter 31: Dauntless Attack

Si Feng Ri suddenly raged and said flatly, "From Feng Liang's injury, I estimated that you had already reached the border of becoming a Magister. Being able to reach this stage so young probably wasn't easy. However, your ability is still too far from being a Magister. I shall let you experience what fighting a real Magister is like and you'll pay the price for hurting my grandson."

I tightly held my magic staff and unyieldingly stared at him. "Alright! Enlighten me with your skills! I am only a junior, so I won't be courteous." After saying that, I waved my magic staff and a magic and battle spirit imbued blade I had previously prepared appeared.

I had already thought of how to fight him. Let's see if this fusion spell could gain any advantage against Si Feng Ri. It wasn't the same as the practice two days ago when I held back my attack when sparring with Teacher Zhen and Teacher Di. Even if Si Feng Ri wouldn't kill me, he would put me into a near death state. I must fight with all my might!

A white battle spirit shot towards Si Feng Ri's head.

A fiery red colored ray was emitted from Si Feng Ri's body while he simultaneously shot another ray from his staff with a wave. When the white and red rays of light came into contact, a subtle impact sounded in the air. Contrary to the expectations of everyone, I wasn't pushed back by Si Feng Ri's attack, but Si Feng Ri was pushed three steps back. My team cheered wildly, but Duke Te Yi leaned on the banister and kept on staring at me.

His expression flashed signs of shock first, then anger. He was so angry his face burned red.

Judging from this attack, it would seem that I was at an advantage, but this was due to the enemy underestimating me. I planned to make Si Feng Ri pay for looking down on me. However, he moved just three steps back; proving that he was extremely powerful.

I didn't have enough time to use the fusion spell again, so I cast four

light blades at Si Feng Ri (I won't be knocked back from the spell that way). I managed to block Si Feng Ri's violent attack using the light blades.

Si Feng Ri said, "Good, child, you have some moves. Omnipotent flames, become a violent flame to incinerate the enemy before me, Buddha's Fury!"

With Si Feng Ri as the center, fire elements gathered around him to form a vortex, making it difficult for me to breathe.

'That spell won't be easy to counter.' I hurriedly chanted my spell. My power wasn't comparable to his, so I must not fight his spell head on. "Light elements! My great friends! I plead for you to use your powers to become endless light rays of stars and eliminate the enemies in front of you—Bright Star's Shine!" I was familiar with this spell and had such great control over it that even Teacher Zhen suffered a little from this spell.

Si Feng Ri had completed chanting his spell. The huge number of reddish gold flames formed an enormous humanoid shape and shot towards me. His flames were reddish gold in colour. Although it couldn't be compared to the power of the green flames previously, it was a large area spell.

Light elements unceasingly gathered around me and formed limitless golden light rays around me. I condensed them to form nine golden light stars and shot one star after another at the Buddha's Fury spell.

Teacher Di, who was spectating the match, exclaimed, "That's a good move! Zhang Gong is really smart."

Teacher Zhen praised him. "That youngster really is a talented child. He has done well in countering the strong spell indirectly by focusing at one spot of the spell."

As the nine golden stars met with the violent flames in midair, the first star was rapidly swallowed. When it had nearly engulfed the first golden star, the second gold star had arrived and supported the first star. It managed to stop the violent flames from advancing. The nine golden stars

fused to become one giant star in front of the violent flames. When the two strong forces collided, it exploded. The whole battle arena was filled with light ray showers and fire sparks.

Si Feng Ri and I were forced to move backwards. In that previous attack, we tied, neither one of us gaining any advantage against the other.

Si Feng Ri was unable to accept the fact that he was forced to a tie with a junior and shouted in anger, “Come forth, phoenix!” ‘What sort of spell is this with such a short chant? What is a phoenix?’ A few question marks appeared in my mind.

Something weird happened and the whole arena heated up drastically. Even the spectators outside the arena felt the heat. A piercing screech sounded in the air and a huge phoenix appeared above Si Feng Ri.

Teacher Zhen, Teacher Di and Teacher Long exclaimed, “The legendary magical beast – Fire Phoenix!”

The High Priest also opened his long closed eyes and mumbled, “It’s really a fire phoenix! How did Si Feng Ri subdue it? It is not an ordinary beast.”

I was stunned by the sudden appearance of that large beast. ‘What is that? It could actually change the atmosphere! It’s too terrifying!’

The Fire Phoenix had a black halo on its head and was impatiently flapping its wings. Si Feng Ri’s originally red hair turned a dull yellow and his red face paled. It was obviously difficult for him to control that phoenix. He coldly laughed and said, “I shall end you now. Even if it means disqualification in the competition, I don’t mind it!” My strong powers had aroused killing intent within Si Feng Ri. He knew that in a few years, my ability would only increase and wanted to eliminate any future threat.

Teacher Di saw that I was in a daze and shouted, “Zhang Gong! Summon Xiao Jin!” Teacher Di didn’t know whether the Five Clawed Golden Dragon would be able to fight against that legendary beast, but it was the best counter solution at that moment.

I heard Teacher Di's reminder. 'That's right! He has a phoenix, and I have a dragon. I still have Xiao Jin!' I shouted, "Come forth! My lifelong partner, Xiao Jin!"

A strong golden light shone and Xiao Jin's enormous body appeared at the center of the arena.

When Xiao Jin appeared, it shocked everyone as no one had seen a dragon before, as they were considered a myth. Who could have seen it?

When Xiao Jin felt my fear, he let out a roar and shielded my body by standing in front of me. Si Feng Ri exclaimed, "You also have a powerful magical beast, but it is incomparable to mine so just kick the bucket already. Attack, Fire Phoenix!"

The Fire Phoenix made a cold sounding screech and charged at me. I shouted, "Xiao Jin, go forth!"

Xiao Jin didn't listen to my order but just voiced a few chants briefly. I didn't have the time to ask him what was he doing and shot a light blade at Si Feng Ri.

Chapter 32: Battle Cry of the Dragon and Phoenix

The Fire Phoenix charged in front of Xiao Jin, but Xiao Jin didn't fight back and just dodged its attacks.

I was also in a tough battle as Si Feng Ri had covered the entire area with multiple fire spells. I was pitifully holding on.

Even though Xiao Jin's body was enormous, he was really agile. His agility was greater than the much larger Fire Phoenix, so he would only counter multi-directional flame attacks.

I got anxious. 'Why isn't Xiao Jin fighting back?' With great difficulty I mentally asked Xiao Jin, who was in the air. He replied that he was unable to attack the Fire Phoenix as he felt that he was related to the Fire Phoenix. Damn! I used all my might to cast Bright Star's Shine consecutively to stop Si Feng Ri from advancing.

Si Feng Ri was also in a bad condition as summoning the phoenix had overexerted his magic powers. When he saw that the Fire Phoenix was unable to defeat Xiao Jin after such a long time had passed and I was still tenaciously fighting back, he stopped his attacks. He heavily inhaled to recover his breath.

I also used that opportunity to gather my magic power.

Xiao Jin's condition was worsening as the Fire Phoenix was too strong. A few of his golden scales were broken and a green smoke leaked out of his burns.

Si Feng Ri sinisterly smiled. "Good boy, you can withstand for so long! Heng! Oh Great Master, please give me your impeccable power to your servant!"

As he chanted, I realised with astonishment that the originally bright red rays from Si Feng Ri's body had turned grey. His yellow hair also turned a weird grey colour.

The High Priest stood up and shouted, "Such a sinister power! Si Feng Ri

is already controlled by evil forces!"

Si Feng Ri smiled viciously. "Those who try to stop me shall be killed!" A grey vortex surged from his body and charged at me.

When I saw it coming towards me, I began chanting, "Oh, great light elements! Please change your endless heavenly power to form a divine halo to block the evil powers before me, Divine Halo!"

A gold light tightly enwrapped me and blocked the grey light ray. I could hear cold screams as though numerous vengeful ghosts were coming after my life. The Divine Halo was slowly being suppressed by the evil power, and soon, it wouldn't be able to block the attack.

Si Feng Ri coldly said, "It's useless! There's no defensive spells that can stop this advance. Brat! You're gonna die!" What he said was true as it would mean the end of my life once the Divine Halo spell was broken. As I stood at the border of life and death, I thought about Teacher Di, Mu Zi, and my loving parents, . When facing death, I understood that I had really fallen in love with Mu Zi.

The Divine Halo left only an inch around my body. Teacher Di, Teacher Zhen and Teacher Long anxiously looked at me. They wanted to charge forward to help me and end the competition, but the opposing Magisters held them back.

When Xiao Jin felt that I was in mortal danger, he raged. He no longer cared about the familial feelings with the Fire Phoenix and wildly attacked it. Seeing that the Phoenix was going to be defeated, I was suddenly enlightened and thought about its struggles and that binding black energy. 'Is it being sealed against its will?'

I bit my tongue and spat out a mouthful of blood at the Divine Halo to widen it and hoarsely shouted, "Xiao Jin! Break the magic seal!"

Xiao Jin unhesitantly shot a golden light at the Fire Phoenix. The Fire Phoenix's fire magic couldn't do anything to that light ray which landed directly on the Fire Phoenix's head. The Fire Phoenix screeched in pain in mid air. Its entire body then shook and doubled in size while it screeched out happily.

My Divine Halo also broke at that moment, but I strangely didn't feel as if I was dying. I opened my previously closed eyes and looked at Si Feng Ri.

His expression was terribly ghastly and blood flowed from all of his seven apertures. He hoarsely said, "Good! Good! Good! You actually managed to break the Fire Phoenix's seal. I won't forgive you!" It seemed when the seal on the Fire Phoenix broke, it rebounded onto Si Feng Ri, who was controlling the seal. It ended his chance of killing me and seriously injured him.

Si Feng Ri glanced at everyone before he coldly laughed. "When my master regains his power, it will be the end of you stupid fools!"

Everyone was stunned for a moment. Duke Te Yi had already stopped holding back my team's forces. A black six edged star magic spell suddenly formed beneath Si Feng Ri's feet. "Just you wait! I'll be back!....."

Teacher Zhen shouted, "Stop him! He's getting away!" It was too late as Si Feng Ri and that black magic array vanished from the arena.

Prince Ke Zha shouted at Duke Te Yi. "Te Yi! What on earth happened? Why did the Ri family's leader become like this?"

Duke Te Yi's previously arrogant attitude had disappeared. He muttered, "How did this happen? Why is this happening?" Dun Yu Xi supported him. "Your Highness, we also don't know why this would happen. For this match, we concede defeat."

From what he said, we should have been cheering for the victory, but now, no one could bring themselves to be in a cheerful mood.

The Fire Phoenix benevolently rang out, "Human race! Do you know that the leader of the evil forces are planning to invade the whole world? You must stay united and team up to fight against him!" Xiao Jin seemed to cry out in agreement.

The Fire Phoenix actually spoke. Teacher Di walked into the arena and used light recovery magic to treat me as I was completely drained of energy.

The High Priest asked, “Great magical beast, what are you implying?”

The Fire Phoenix that was in mid air shrank back to its previous size and said, “I was sealed by an ancient evil power. I couldn’t do anything other than listen to their commands. I was lucky to have the seal broken by the Dragon King and win back my freedom. I hope that you will help free the previously defeated servant of evil too. Please also remember that the dark forces will arise in the West. Finally, thank you, Dragon King. I’ll definitely return this favour to you someday!” After saying that, the Fire Phoenix vanished and the air cooled down drastically.

Chapter 33: The Future is a Foregone Conclusion

I had already regained some of my strength. I knew who the leader of the dark forces that the Fire Phoenix was referring to; it was the Demon King. I withdrew Xiao Jin with difficulty as I was still very feeble, but I didn't want him to be in the limelight. I was actually over cautious as everyone was mumbling, "Coming from the west?"

Prince Ke Zha said, "Doesn't the Beast race and Magic race reside in the West? Could it be that the Magic race is planning to invade the Human race?"

The High Priest said, "This competition has officially come to an end. His Royal Highness has won the rights to govern the Kingdom. There are no objections, correct?"

The Yue and Xin families' heads, including Duke Te Yi, shook their heads. Duke Te Yi knew that they had lost this power battle. Moreover, they lost so terribly that it was impossible they didn't have the slightest bit of strength to change their fortunes. His complexion just paled and he collapsed in Dun Yu Xi's arms.

The High Priest saw that no one was objecting and continued to say, "Your Highness, I hope that you'll remember that legendary beast's words. You have to strengthen the Kingdom and increase its military power in preparation to fight against the dark forces in the future."

Prince Ke Zha bowed deeply towards the High Priest and said, "To the High Priest and every magician present, please don't worry. I'll definitely strengthen the Kingdom and increase its military power. I'll lead every citizen from the Kingdom of Aixia to help stop the invasion and increase the strength of the Kingdom's power."

The High Priest smiled and nodded. "Good! I hope that you'll always remember what you have said here."

My body's strength and vitality slowly recovered under the help of Teacher Di. I stood up, wanting to leave with the others, but the High Priest stopped me.

“Zhang Gong, you stay here for a while.”

Ah! I looked with astonishment at the High Priest before turning to look at Teacher Di. Teacher Di nodded his head and left with everyone else.

I curiously looked at the High Priest as he walked over. The High Priest only reached to my shoulders with his small stature of 170 centimeters. He looked kindly at me. “Child, your magical beast should be a dragon. Could you tell me how you got it?”

I was unable to bring myself to lie to this kind old man as I stared at him, though it was most likely unnecessary.. I told him in great detail on how I got the magical beast egg and how Xiao Jin was born. I even included the fact that I gave half of my lifespan to Xiao Jin, which enabled him to reach adulthood in such a short time.

The High Priest nodded continuously as he listened to what I said. “You’re a really kind hearted child. It’s no wonder why the dragon treats you as a friend. However, that solution was detrimental to both you and the dragon. Of course, I am aware of this sharing of life spell. Lao Lun was muddled. How could he have so easily allowed you to use that spell?”

I scratched my head and said, “Teacher Di had no other choices at that moment. If I didn’t use that life sharing spell, Xiao Jin would have died already.”

The High Priest sighed and said, “Since you used the life sharing spell, the long lifespan that your dragon should have had has disappeared as he is now using your life force. A normal human should live until they’re around 120 years of age generally, but now, you can only live to 60 years old, and the same thing applies to your dragon.”

I made an apathetic expression. “It doesn’t matter. If it is only sixty years, then so be it! I don’t have any regrets!” A warm emotion flowed out from my heart. I knew that it was Xiao Jin who had shown his gratitude towards me upon hearing my words.

The High Priest nodded and said, “Child! I saw in a prophecy that it’ll be your generation’s era soon. You must remember that at all times, you must retain your kind hearted nature. It’ll be your most important

weapon in attaining victory. I hope there will still be many life forms that continue to exist after the calamity occurs.”

The High Priest’s expression that showed him bemoaning the state of the universe and pitying the fate of mankind moved me greatly. I held his hand and said, “Don’t worry! I’ll definitely.....” As I said that, a strong power surged out from the High Priest’s hand and moved into my body. It seemed to have fused with the unfamiliar power. (I think that it was the Holy Sword’s power). My body emitted a strong radiance of light that was similar to the High Priest’s eyes.

My whole body felt like it was in a furnace. It was scorching hot, but I couldn’t use any powers to resist it.

The High Priest mumbled, “Th-This is an inheritance power.” He gradually withdrew his power. The radiant light that shone from my body turned into a gold light and entered my body. A soothing feeling came forth. My body felt like it was filled to the brim. The large amounts of magic power that I depleted during the competition seemed to have fully recovered.

I asked in astonishment, “High Priest, what did you do to me?”

I didn’t expect him to be even more astonished than I was. No... it should be excited instead. He tightly grabbed onto my arm and exclaimed, “Zhang Gong, have you met a God before?”

I nodded and told him of the whole experience, excluding the parts about meeting the God Of Creation as it would be too shocking. I had only said that a golden light shone on me while I was in the cave.

Just like that, the High Priest was emotionally excited for a long time. He previously had passed me some God power. It was his God power that he had practiced for many years, which was capable of changing the mortal body. He wanted to help me a little to allow me to get half the work done and twice the effect from the future training, but he didn’t know that my body had been changed by the God already so his power only had a restoration effect.

The High Priest said, “Zhang Gong, you have received the approval of

God.” I felt extremely dizzy at that moment as the High Priest held onto me and prayed a thousand times. However, it was hard to blame him as he had sacrificed his whole life believing in God.

I left the High Priest exhausted. I felt that the Ri family’s leader battle weren’t nearly as tiring.

After leaving the training ground, I was tugged at by Ma Ke.

“Boss, what did the High Priest have to tell you that it took so much time?”

I grabbed onto Ma Ke’s shoulder and made a fainting expression. “I almost got annoyed to death by that old man. As we talked, he kept repeating the same statement. Don’t ask me what statement it is as the High Priest didn’t allow me to tell anyone else. It’s also nothing important. That’s right! Why are you waiting here for me?”

Ma Ke smiled and said, “Of course, it’s to go and celebrate! I have never seen my father this happy before. He looked like a child. The teachers have already accompanied him back to the prince’s mansion. Let’s quickly head back as well!”

“That’s right! He has earned the rights to govern the country! As he had battled for the powers, how could he not be floating on cloud nine?”

I replied, “Alright! Let’s go! Will there be lots of food?”

Ma Ke chuckled and said, “Of course! There will definitely be enough food to eat until you’re satisfied. Boss, you’re still the same. Once it’s about food, your eyes light up!”

Chapter 34: Joining the Banquet

I said, “My eyes light up? You’ve probably not seen how eyes light up due to food. Can I invite another person along?”

Ma Ke curiously asked, “There is someone that is more excited about eating than you? Who are you asking to come along? A person with a bigger appetite than yours? Is he going to wipe out all the food from my house? Haha!”

I nudged him and said, “That won’t happen! Ah! It’s Mu Zi. I’m currently courting her!”

Ma Ke suddenly had an enlightenment and said, “Are you referring to the same Mu Zi that you planned on getting your revenge on?”

I nodded and thought back to the feelings I had for Mu Zi when I was in a crisis. I had a strange feeling in my heart.

Ma Ke replied, “Go and invite her then! I’m really curious about how much she can eat! Haha! She is a woman, but can eat more than you. Incredible!”

I looked at the sky and realized it was noon already. I told Ma Ke, “You head back to the mansion first. I’ll go find her and bring her there.”

Ma Ke nodded. “Boss, how is your condition? Are you alright?”

I replied, “I’m fine so stop worrying! I’ll head off already.” I did a short distance teleport and teleported five hundred meters away.

I succeeded in solving the riddle of the Kingdom of Aixia’s fate and felt exceptionally light hearted. I arrived at the academy quickly, where it looked like the last class for the morning. I walked to the class entrance and shouted, “Permission to enter!”

Teacher Si replied from inside the classroom, “Come in!”

I pushed open the door and said, “Teacher, I’m back!”

Teacher Si Lan said, “Ah! Zhang Gong, don’t you still have a day of leave? Why are you back today?”

‘I definitely can’t say that I came back to invite Mu Zi for lunch.’ I replied, “I already settled the matter so I’m back already.”

“Alright! Take your seat!”

After I took my seat, Mu Zi stared at me with widened eyes.

I whispered, “I came back to invite you for lunch.”

Mu Zi’s large eyes instantly brightened and said, “Really? Are we going to Ascending Jade Tide?”

I made a wry face and said, “Do you only know that one place? We aren’t going there, but the quality shouldn’t be too far off from the Ascending Jade Tide Restaurant. It’s a banquet and I’ve intentionally come to get you.”

Mu Zi frowned and said, “I’m not going as there will definitely be lots of people going there and I hate noisy places.”

I pleaded and said, “Mu Zi, let’s go together! There’ll be a lot of delicious food to eat and you don’t need to socialize. You can just eat the food. Isn’t that great? Are you really going to reject this offer?”

Mu Zi looked at me curiously and said, “Really? If the food isn’t good, I won’t forgive you!”

I said elatedly, “It won’t be a problem because if you find the food unsatisfying, I’ll just bring you to the Ascending Jade Tide. Are you satisfied this way?”

Mu Zi nodded and said, “Alright. But I’ve made it clear that I’ll just be going to eat and I won’t be socializing.”

‘She really is just like a little piglet that only knows how to eat. Ever since I entered the classroom, my heart has only felt an indescribable warmth after seeing Mu Zi. Even though I was only apart from Mu Zi for two days, my impression of her is still very strong. In my eyes, there’s nothing that can replace her, even though she isn’t beautiful.’

After class, we went directly to the prince’s mansion. When we arrived at the prince’s mansion quickly, Mu Zi looked at the vast building. She

gasped, “It can’t be that this is the place you plan to bring me?”

I smiled and replied, “That’s right! It’s here.” I pulled her tender and delicate hand and walked towards the entrance. The guards standing at the entrance smiled at me cordially and said, “Young Master Zhang Gong, you’ve finally arrived. You should quickly head inside as everyone is waiting for you!”

“Alright! Thank you and where are they?”

“His Royal Highness and the few Principals are at the ballroom, which is located beside the study.”

“Oh! I know where it is already. Mu Zi, let’s quickly go before they wipe out all of the food.”

I headed towards the study as I pulled the curious Mu Zi along. I knew where the study was, so naturally, I would be able to find the ballroom.

Wah! When I opened the door, it was so lively. The room was sufficient to contain about 500 people and was filled with people who were obviously brimming with joy. The prince was so fast. He was able to gather his subordinates in such a short period of time. It was easy to see how cheerful he was.

“Boss, you’ve finally arrived. I was waiting for you.” Ma Ke called out.

Mu Zi exclaimed in astonishment, “Ma Ke, you’re also here?”

I replied with a smile, “Of course he’s here. This is his house after all.”

Mu Zi replied, “Ma Ke is the prince’s son? I didn’t know that!”

I said, “This is a secret so don’t expose it after going back to the academy.”

Mu Zi pouted and whispered into my ears, “Why are you participating in this banquet? It seems to be for high ranking officers.”

I whispered back, “You don’t need to worry about that. I just helped the prince a little so he’s treating me.”

The prince called out voiced out, “Has Zhang Gong finally come?”

I hurriedly replied, “Yes, Your Highness. I’ve just arrived.”

The prince came over and looked curiously at Mu Zi before talking to me. “Zhang Gong, why are you still calling me Your Highness? You should just call me uncle Ke Zha!”

I pointed at Mu Zi and said, “Alright! Uncle Ke Zha, this is my classmate whom I have invited over.”

The prince smiled and said, “If she is your friend, she’s also my junior. Quickly come inside, we’re waiting for you before starting the banquet.”

I said in surprise, “Waiting for me? How can I let you elders wait for me? You could’ve just started without me.”

The prince said, “You’re the main contributor in my victory! If it weren’t for you, how could today’s competition go so smoothly? Let’s go in.”

I pulled Mu Zi, who was now even more curious, into the ballroom and sat at the main table. I introduced Mu Zi to the teachers, “This person is our academy Principal Teacher Zhen, this is the Intermediate Magic Academy’s Principal Teacher Di, who is also my mentor. This is....”

Mu Zi proceeded to bow toward each of the teachers as I introduced her to them. I noticed only then that she knew the proper court etiquette. Teacher Di looked at me thoughtfully, but didn’t say anything.

Teacher Zhen replied, “Zhang Gong! You’re incredible. You just entered the academy, but you’ve already managed to get Mu Zi. I know Mu Zi as she is my academy’s top third expert. You’re really capable!”

Mu Zi’s face reddened and she replied, “Principal, you must just be joking. How am I an expert before you teachers?” Mu Zi’s gentle expression stunned me a little. ‘Is she the same shrewish ice-cold Mu Zi that I know?’

Chapter 35: Excellent Fruit Wine

Teacher Zhen laughed and said, “Mu Zi, you don’t have to be this courteous as it’ll be you youngsters’ era in the future. However, you shouldn’t let it affect your studies. You also have to supervise Zhang Gong as I heard from Lao Lun that he’s very lazy.” After he said that, he broke into laughter once again.

Teacher Long, who was at his side, said, “You old brat, you don’t have respect for your seniors.”

The prince smilingly said, “Stop teasing them!” After he said that, he shouted for everyone to quiet down.

The messy ballroom quickly became silent. The prince said in a clear voice, “The main reason for this banquet is to express my gratitude to a few Magisters.” The prince didn’t directly say that he had won the power battle, but most of people attending the banquet more or less knew what happened.

The prince continued to say, “Everyone, take your seats! Servants! Bring up the dishes!”

I whispered to Mu Zi, “We’re going to have our meal already. Control your movements a little!”

Mu Zi’s face reddened and she pinched me under the table.

The prince really knew how to treat his guests. In a short moment, the table was filled with delicious dishes. The prince stood up and raised his wine glass before saying, “I want to give a toast to everyone, as without any of you, the Kingdom of Aixia would have no future.” As the lead, he bottomed up. Everyone stood up and bottomed up their wine glass as well.

I said, “Prince Ke Zha, I have a good bottle of wine. Since today is a joyous day, how about tasting this wine of mine?”

The prince got interested and said, “Oh! That’s great! What is the good wine that you want us to try?”

Teacher Di frowned. “You brat! What good wine could you have? Do you

think it would be comparable to the prince's wine?" Teacher Di originally didn't want me to sit at this table, as Ma Ke was on the table next to the main table with his similar looking brother. It was under the persistence of the prince that allowed me to sit at this table. I could tell that Teacher Di wasn't happy I brought Mu Zi to attend the banquet.

I stuck out my tongue at him. "Then forget it! I better not offer something that might be disgraceful."

Teacher Zhen replied, "What about offering something disgraceful? Just ignore Lao Lun! If they don't want to drink, then give it to me."

I looked at Teacher Di, who showed a helpless expression. "You stupid Chuan Song! It was already hard for me to lecture my student and you messed it up! What if he continues to be undisciplined in the future?"

Teacher Zhen replied, "Such a good student still needs to be lectured? Why don't you give him to me? I want him! How about it, Zhang Gong? I know you also train in Spatial magic. Why don't you make me your mentor? I promise that I won't lecture you."

I was caught in the middle so I was at a loss of what to say. Teacher Di angrily said, "You have guts to actually try to steal my student. Don't you know how much effort I put into teaching him? If you really have the capability, why don't you teach one yourself!"

Teacher Zhen sighed and said, "It's hard to find someone as talented as Zhang Gong. I'm also getting quite old already. Who can I teach? I also don't want to fight with you. In the matter of teaching disciples, I can't be compared to you. Are you satisfied now?"

After seeing Teacher Zhen's dejected look, Teacher Di felt bad. He and Teacher Zhen had always been great friends. Teacher Di said, "Alright! I was wrong. Isn't my student your student? Why do you need to be so calculative?"

Teacher Zhen elatedly said, "That's what you said! You can't regret saying that now. Zhang Gong is now counted as my disciple."

Teacher Di, who fell into a trap, stuttered, "Yo-you actually lied to me.

You old fart!” This made everyone erupt into laughter.

Teacher Zhen said to me, “Zhang Gong, quickly take out your good wine and let me see how good it is.” Teacher Zhen was a well known alcoholic.

‘To be honest, when I said I would bring out the wine, I had regretted making that decision as I’m left with only two bottles. Teacher Di’s thoughts on not wanting me to bring out the wine had actually suited my thoughts, but now Teacher Zhen wanted it. I can’t go back on my words in front of so many people.’

I replied, “I’ll only let you drink some, and I can only give you half the bottle.”

Teacher Zhen curiously asked, “What wine is so precious that you can only give me half the bottle?”

I replied, “It’s because I’m only left with this bottle.” I took out a bottle of the fruit’s wine from my spatial space and gave it to Teacher Zhen.

The sparkling and translucent bottle held a green fluid in it. This instantly attracted the attention of everyone. The prince asked in curiosity, “Zhang Gong, what type of wine is this?”

I replied, “This was given to me by a nature elf when I was out travelling. The wine is not bad.”

Teacher Long said, “Old Zhen, you can’t solitarily enjoy that wine. Let us all have a try!”

Even Mu Zi, who knew nothing about wine, found it extraordinary. How could the old foxes not feel the same?

Teacher Zhen hid the bottle to the side. “Not giving! Teacher Di said that you’re not allowed to drink it.”

Teacher Di rebuked, “Have I said anything about not being allowed to drink the wine? Who heard that?”

The prince shook his head and said, “I didn’t hear that!” Everyone, including Mu Zi, broke into laughter.

Teacher Zhen had no other choice but to bring out the wine. The prince

ordered his servants to serve a glass of the fruit wine to everyone. Once the bottle was opened, a strong fruity scent permeated the room. The heads of the Kingdom of Aixia all said, "What a good wine!"

Mu Zi whispered to me, "Do you still have more of this wine? It has such a nice scent."

I replied, "I don't have anymore. How about you try comparing it to the Ascending Jade Tide? However, don't drink too much of it, as the after effects are very strong."

Mu Zi nodded.

After the servant poured a glass for everyone to try, the not so big bottle of the fruit's wine was emptied.

The prince said, "Let's all have a taste of the good wine that Zhang Gong got from the nature elves." He took a sip after saying that.

Teacher Zhen couldn't wait any longer and drank the wine. Everyone also tasted the wine. Teacher Di said, "Zhang Gong, you brat! Why didn't you secretly give me some of this wine?"

I muttered, "I didn't know you drink wine."

Teacher Di was momentarily speechless as he seldom drank wine. He made an excuse and said, "I don't drink much wine... But such a good wine, I must have some of it."

Teacher Zhen grabbed onto my shoulders and said, "You brat! Hurry! Give me some more of the wine! Do you still have some?"

I bitterly said, "Didn't I say that this was the last bottle?" Teacher Zhen dejectedly let me go. "After drinking this wine, it will be hard for me to drink other wines."

The prince also said, "This wine is really very good! I've never been able to drink such a good wine before. Zhang Gong, is there any way for you to get a few more bottles of the wine?"

I replied, "I heard that the Nature Elves only produce a few bottles a year. So, it won't be easy to acquire more."

Chapter 36: Rolling like a Bottle Gourd

Teacher Zhen smiled at Mu Zi and said, "Mu Zi, why don't you give your wine to your teacher? You're a girl, so drinking too much wine is bad for your health."

Mu Zi carried out an action that rendered Teacher Zhen unable to cry or laugh. She drank the remaining fruit wine in one go and said, "I'm not drinking wine. I'm only drinking fruit juice. Hehe!"

Teacher Zhen was so angry that he silently glared at her and huffed into his beard.

The prince said, "Please drink my wine. There are still so many dishes. Let's dig in!"

We were all waiting for him to say that. Mu Zi and I started to wipe out the dishes savagely. However, as there were many elders around, we must eat elegantly, but we didn't say a word and busied ourselves in eating. The leaders chatted and also ate food, so in a short period of time, the table was mostly cleared of food.

Teacher Zhen said, "Wah! Zhang Gong, you're not only good at magic, you're also good at eating!"

Teacher Di mockingly said, "You don't know about this, but my precious disciple has a White Rice Bucket title."

I awkwardly smiled and said, "I'm not good at magic, but eating. If it wasn't for the fact that I was lucky, I would have died at the hands of the Ri family's leader." Thinking back to that situation, I'm still traumatized.

After saying that, I felt like I had divulged something to Mu Zi and peeked at her. She just seemed to be hurriedly eating and didn't pay any attention to what I said. I asked the prince, "Uncle Ke Zha, how is the situation for the Ri family?"

The prince sighed and said, "I sent people to arrest them after the competition, but the entire Ri family seems to have disappeared into thin air. There wasn't anybody there, except for a few servants. It looks like Si

Feng Ri had already prepared for this to happen. I've ordered people to search for them, but the chances of finding them are very slim."

I nodded and said, "I wouldn't have thought that the honorable Ri family would support the evil forces." In order to prevent unnecessary panic, I didn't tell them about the Demon King. How would I know that everyone had misunderstood that the Ri family is supporting the invasion of the Magic race, and brought unnecessary trouble to themselves.

Teacher Zhen said, "Let's not talk about that now. Your Highness, can you serve more dishes? I'm still not full yet. Haha."

The prince apologized for the unsatisfactory treatment of his guests and immediately told his servants to serve another course of dishes. Mu Zi and I dug in. The food that didn't lose out to the meal from Ascending Jade Tide unceasingly entered our mouths that were wide open like a bloody sacrificial bowl.

After the joyous meal ended, I secretly asked the prince for the <<Three Hundred Poems>> book. The prince told me that he found the book in some ruins. That book was one of a kind and was painstakingly preserved. If it wasn't me, I doubt that he would be able to give it away.

I accompanied Mu Zi and walked out of the prince mansion. I smiled and asked, "How was it? Were you satisfied today?"

Mu Zi coldly looked at me all of a sudden. "Hmph! What about being satisfied? It's all your fault! With so many people around, I'm not full yet."

'Ah! She wasn't full? She ate a lot just now, but many of the movements were secretive.' I replied, "What to do? It can't be that you want to find another place to eat now, is it?"

Mu Zi raised her head and looked at me with a playful look. "That's unnecessary! However, you must remember that you owe me a meal at the Ascending Jade Tide." After she said that, she turned around and ran towards the direction of the academy as she let out peals of laughter.

I then understood and shouted, "Wah! You tricked me!" After I shouted,

I chased after her.

As we were on the main road of the city, we didn't use any magic and just chased each other; Mu Zi could really run... Even though I had spent some time training, it was still quite difficult to catch her.

Once I saw that the entrance to the academy before me, I surveyed my surroundings and determined there weren't any people around. I used a short distance teleport to appear in front of Mu Zi. Mu Zi didn't have enough time to stop and fell into my arms. As her momentum was great, we immediately fell and rolled along the ground like a bottle gourd.

Mu Zi's head directly hit the left side of my face, which made me tear up in pain. Mu Zi held her head and exclaimed, "So painful!"

After a while, I snapped back to reality from being in pain. Mu Zi was currently on top of me and continuously rubbed her head. Her body was so soft. I subconsciously placed my hands on her waist. Even though it was through her shirt, I could still feel the smoothness of her skin.

As I zoned out, Mu Zi noticed that something wasn't right and struggled to get out of my grasp. "What are you doing? You pervert!"

I completely snapped back to reality at that moment and helped her up, but the feeling of hugging her had not disappeared.

Mu Zi's face reddened and she glared at me before pouting playfully, "So it turns out that you're this bad!"

I screamed out injustice. "How am I bad? You were the one that bumped into me."

Mu Zi unreasonably said, "I don't care! It's your fault! If not, why did you suddenly appear in front of me? I'm in so much pain right now from crashing into you. You see, I have such a big lump on my head. How am I going to see other people now?"

I gently caressed Mu Zi's head. There really was a small lump. It looked like the collision was not gentle. I teased her saying, "Wah! Mu Zi, you have grown a horn! Haha."

Mu Zi pulled my ear, “You’re good! You do something wrong, but still laugh at my misfortune. I won’t forgive you!”

I hurriedly said, “I wouldn’t dare! I’ll help you treat it. I promise the lump will disappear.”

Mu Zi curiously let go of my ear. “Really? If you’re lying to me, you’re dead!”

It hurt my heart knowing that Mu Zi got hurt during the fall, so I gathered light elements in my hand and cast a light recovery spell on Mu Zi.

Mu Zi, who saw the white light in my hand, quickly retreated away from the light. “What are you doing?”

I was stunned for a moment. “I’m helping you to treat your lump. Why? I’m using the light recovery spell. The effect is not bad.”

Mu Zi immediately shook her head. “No! I don’t need your treatment! I’ve been sensitive to light elements ever since I was young.”

‘Ah! There’s such a thing of being sensitive to light elements? I hadn’t heard about that.’ I chuckled and said, “You’re really special. You’re even sensitive to light elements. You’re incredible! Since you can’t be treated by me, let’s go back to the academy to find a water mage to treat you. You definitely shouldn’t be sensitive to water elements, right? Haha.”

Mu Zi looked at me and said, “It’s inherited in my family. I also can’t do anything about that. Let’s hurry and head back to the academy.”

She unexpectedly took the initiative to hold my hand as we walked towards the academy.

Chapter 37: Wounding Hai Shui's Heart

When I thought back to the time when I hugged Mu Zi, my heart would beat frantically. It's so comfortable hugging her.

After returning to the classroom, there was still some time before class began. I looked at Mu Zi, who was occasionally touching the lump on her head and showing a painful expression. My heart felt indescribable pain.

'I need to find a water magician for her, but who to find? My time at the academy hasn't been too long so I don't know a lot of people. If I go find Hai Yue, it definitely wouldn't work since she hates me to the core. Hmm, Hai Shui? Our relationship is a little awkward right now.' I scratched my head. What to do? I turned my head and saw that Mu Zi's hair was dripping in perspiration. Her face was a little pale as she just lay on the table, continuously massaging the lump on her head.

Seeing her like that, my heart hurt. I didn't care anymore. I'll go and find Hai Shui. I stood up and turned to leave the classroom. Mu Zi asked, "Where are you going?"

I said lovingly, "Seeing you in so much pain, I'll go and find someone to treat it. I'll be back soon. You just have to wait for me here."

Mu Zi smiled and was a little happy. "Alright!"

I walked to Hai Shui's classroom. I was lucky that she was in class. I shouted from the entrance of the classroom. "Hai Shui!"

Hai Shui raised her head and met my eyes. Her eyes showed signs of happiness and she hurriedly came to me. "Ah! Zhang Gong, you're here? I thought you took a few days of leave. Why are you back already?"

I nodded. "That's right, but I can't delay my studies any longer. I'm here to ask you for some help."

Hai Shui giggled. "Wow! So there are also times where you'll ask me for help."

I awkwardly smiled. "Of course, you're so capable. If I don't ask you, who else would I ask?"

Hai Shui looked overjoyed after hearing what I said. She excitedly said, "Alright! What do you want?"

I replied, "I want you to help me treat a person."

Hai Shui frowned after hearing what I said. "Who should I treat? Your light magic healing effect is much better than mine. Why did you come to find me?"

I replied, "It's Mu Zi. She hurt her head and is sensitive to light elements, so I thought...."

When Hai Shui heard it was for Mu Zi, her expression darkened. She just wordlessly stared at me.

I felt so awkward at that time and at a loss of what to say. We just stared at each other. After a while, I mumbled, "Hmm! Can we just forget about what I said? I'll just find someone else."

Hai Shui sighed heavily and said, "Alright. I'll help you. Let's go and treat her now since the next class hasn't started yet." She took the lead and walked towards my classroom.

Hai Shui's decision astonished me as she actually agreed to help me.

While walking in the corridor, she didn't say anything. 'It looks like Ma Ke was right. Hai Shui really does love me. However, I have always treated her only like a sister. There weren't any special feelings like the ones I had for Mu Zi.' I realized that finding her for help had hurt her.

I followed behind her until we reached the classroom. Hai Shui stopped and said dully, "You go and call Mu Zi out."

I replied foolishly, "Alright! You just wait for me here."

As I ran into the classroom, I pulled Mu Zi out of the classroom. The students in class looked at us. Mu Zi's face reddened and she tried to break free of my hold, but to no avail.

I brought Mu Zi in front of Hai Shui. When the two of them saw each other, they were stunned. Mu Zi looked back and forth at me and Hai Shui until Hai Shui spoke. She forced a smile and said, "Mu Zi, how are you? I

heard that you got hurt. Zhang Gong had come to ask me to treat your injury.”

Mu Zi looked at me before nodding her head. “Hai Shui, I’ll have to trouble you then.”

Hai Shui raised her left hand. “Gentle water! Please use your gentle form to cure the wound in front of you.” After she chanted, Hai Shui’s hand started to glow a light blue light. After a while, it formed a blue light ball. She waved her hand towards Mu Zi and the blue light ball shot out. It accurately landed on Mu Zi’s lump. The blue light suddenly expanded. After a short while, it disappeared.

Mu Zi smiled and said, “Hai Shui, your water magic is so good! I’m no longer in pain. Thank you so much for that.”

Hai Shui shook her head. “There’s no need to thank me. Class is starting soon so I’ll head back to my class. Mu Zi, see you later.” After she said that, she turned her head and looked at me seriously before whispering, “I’ll wait for you at the third training ground after school.”

I was stunned, but when I wanted to reply to her, Hai Shui ran away just like an injured bunny, disappearing from my sight.

Mu Zi stared at the leaving Hai Shui’s back and sighed. “Zhang Gong! You’re so stupid! How could you ask her to treat my wound? You really don’t understand a girl’s heart.”

I bitterly said, “When I saw you in pain, my heart hurt so badly. I didn’t have many choices at the moment, so I went to find her. She wants me to meet her at the third training ground tonight after school. What do you think? Should I go or not?”

Mu Zi’s heart was a little contradicting at that moment. Her large eyes exposed her complicated feelings. After a long time, she said, “You should go.”

As I saw through her internal battle, I held her hand and said, “Mu Zi, there’s only you in my heart. I won’t fall for anyone else. I think I won’t go then.”

Mu Zi face reddened a little, but she didn't shake off my hand. She lowered her head and spoke really softly, "These words are already enough. You should still go to settle the matter."

At this moment, a familiar voice voiced out, "You kids' nerves are currently getting too thick as you actually dared to be so intimate in the hallway. Hurry, go and take your seat. It's time for class."

Mu Zi and I raised our heads at the same time. It was Teacher Si. Our faces instantly flushed red. Mu Zi whispered, "This is all your fault!" She turned and ran into the classroom.

I awkwardly smiled and said, "Teacher, I....."

Teacher Si interrupted me and looked as though she was rebuking me. "That's enough! You don't need to explain yourself. I know it's impossible to control your feelings. Teacher has also experienced that before. But you shouldn't be doing this at school. If you really want to be intimate with Mu Zi, you should have found a secluded area instead. You're such a worrisome child. You should also stop letting your grades drop any further. Mu Zi and you are this class's most exceptional students. I have high expectations for you two."

I looked at the teacher, whose magic power was incomparable to mine. I was actually moved by her. She didn't scold me, but had encouraged me. What else could I say? I nodded at her with my slightly red face and ran into the classroom.

Chapter 38: Displaying Heartfelt Love

When I took my seat, Mu Zi seemed to be thinking deeply about something. I sneakily reached out and held her small delicate cold hand. I was addicted to the feeling of her tenderness and bonelessness as I held her hand. This was heaven**.

Mu Zi raised her head and looked at me before sighing. She took back her hand. I was curious. ‘What’s happening to her? She seems to be unhappy. Didn’t I clarify with her already? Why is she like this? Can it still be because of Hai Shui?’

I whispered, “Mu Zi, what’s wrong?”

She gently shook her head. “Nothing. It’s just that you didn’t write me a love letter. In fact, it’s been a few days since you wrote me one.”

I blankly replied, “Oh! I’ll write one now.” As I said that, I took out a piece of paper and wrote the love letter.

“Mu Zi, we have been apart for a few days. I thought about you constantly. I don’t know why, but I felt empty when I didn’t see you those days. You’ve been asking me what I was doing during these few days. I’ll tell you now, as I know we shouldn’t have secrets between us. I took the two days leave to participate in the secret battle between Prince Ke Zha and Duke Te Yi. You should know the outcome already. Prince Ke Zha won the final victory in the competition.

It doesn’t matter if you believe this or not, but I didn’t participate in the battle for riches and honour. It was for the future fate of the Kingdom of Aixia and the numerous commoners. I feel that the worst situation for this matter would be a civil war. A war is only beneficial to those that want power, but the ones that will suffer are the commoners. I detest wars.

The fighting was settled using a best out of five matches competition. I participated in the fourth round.

You might be curious about why I was able to represent the prince in battle, so I’ll tell you another secret. I’m the eleventh Magister in the

world. Do you think I am compatible for you now?

My opponent was the Ri family's leader, Si Feng Ri. He's Feng Liang's grandfather. It was the most tenacious battle that I had experienced. His power can no longer be gauged by using the standard level of a magician. While I was forced to face death by him, the one that appeared in my heart was you. At that time I thought that, if I survived this ordeal and saw you again, I'd definitely treat you well and never let you go. I want to tell you how I honestly feel for you in my heart. I love you. I really love you. There is only you in my heart." (Writing until this point, I got emotional. My love for Mu Zi roared out like the sea. A drop of my tears landed on the paper.)

I stopped and controlled my emotions before continuing to write.

"I don't know why, but it's like there's a barrier between us. It's some sort of wall. I'm unable to break through that solid wall. It makes it impossible to know how you really feel for me. Can you just tell me? I really want to hear your thoughts. I won't force you to tell me, as everyone should have their secrets. You have your own space. It's because I love you, so I don't want to force you to express your feelings for me.

When you agreed to be my temporary girlfriend, I was jubilant. However, after that I realized that it wasn't because you love me, but were instead just interested in me. I didn't feel anything about that at that moment, but now my heart feels uneasy thinking about it.

If you are worrying about the matter regarding Hai Shui, you don't need to, as I have always treated her like she is my own sister. There's no one that can enter my heart, except for you. I don't know when you will open up your heart to me. I also don't know if you like me at all, but my heart is yours. This is an indisputable fact.

Mu Zi, could you please accept me?"

Inscribed with forever loving you, Zhang Gong.

My emotions undulated, just like in the letter. I held the letter and stared at it; not knowing if Mu Zi would accept it.

When I looked at Mu Zi, she was looking at me. I didn't know that the tear on the letter had greatly moved the girl beside me.

Mu Zi took the letter from my hand and read it.

I didn't dare to see her. I was afraid that she would reject me. It wasn't the same as the previous love letters. This time, I had put my heart into writing it. If I couldn't replace my heart, I didn't know if I could accept her rejection. I lowered my head and waited, as though I was a prisoner that was facing life or death judgement. I was really nervous while I waited.

After an extremely long time, an ice-cold, tender hand held my sweaty hand due to being nervous. I raised my head and saw that Mu Zi was looking at me. This was the first time that I had seen so much emotion coming from her eyes.

I anxiously whispered, "Do you accept me?"

Mu Zi lip curved up, showing happiness and lightly nodded her head. "Silly guy!"

I felt that my world had completely changed instantly. My surroundings were filled with colours. I tightly held onto her hand and mumbled, "Is this for real? Is it?"

Mu Zi face reddened and whispered. "We're still in the classroom, so restrain yourself a little."

I nodded strongly and placed a kiss onto Mu Zi's hand that I was holding. Mu Zi's face reddened and looked like a red apple. She exclaimed, "What are you doing? I just told you to restrain yourself, but you...."

I replied, "I'm sorry, but I...I was just too excited."

Mu Zi's mood dampened a little, "I don't know if I made the right choice. Are we really going to be able to stay together forever?"

I firmly nodded and tightly held onto the little sweaty delicate hand of Mu Zi. "Yes, we can! I don't know what the future holds and I'll probably

experience difficulties and troubles, but I'll always hold you tightly and protect you forever.”

Mu Zi smiled with abnormal brilliance. She held back my hand and said. “You've got to remember what you said today!”

I dazily said, “Mu Zi, your smile is so beautiful.”

Mu Zi replied, “How is it beautiful? You're hateful. I don't really know which part of me that made you love me.”

I blurted out, “I love every part of you!”

Mu Zi glanced at me, but her expression was filled with happiness. “I have a lot of things that I still can't tell you. You'll find out about it in the future. I really hope that we can conquer all of our problems.” She sighed and said, “Actually, Hai Shui is more suited to you than me. She's more beautiful and her family background is also exceptional. I can clearly see that she really likes you. Why don't you try and accept her instead?”

Chapter 39: Hard to Refuse

I said in shock, "It looks like my instinct was right. I always felt as though you were hiding something. How about sharing it with me so that I can share your burden? You don't have to say anything else about Hai Shui. I, Zhang Gong, swear that I won't marry anyone except Mu Zi. Why do you keep on pushing me to someone else?" I got a little angry after asking that.

Mu Zi shook her head dejectedly, "You will know in the future, but now isn't the time for you to know. Don't force me to talk about it, alright?"

I gently said, "How could I force you? I believe that I'll be able to solve any difficulties in the future, even if they might be extremely difficult. You're mine forever in this lifetime as I will always hold onto you, so don't you even think about escaping from me!"

Mu Zi looked at my eyes as I stared into hers. It seemed as though time stilled at that moment. Romantic feelings permeated our hearts.

When the bell rang signaling the end of class, Mu Zi and I snapped back to reality. I had finally developed a relationship with Mu Zi. I was currently exceptionally satisfied.

I took out the amethyst card from my spatial space and held it out for Mu Zi to take. "You can take this card. Whenever you feel like eating delicious food, you can use it to treat yourself. You shouldn't neglect yourself."

Mu Zi didn't take the card, but shook her head instead. "I think you should keep that card to yourself, as I'm bad at controlling my spending."

I smiled and said, "It doesn't matter. Wasn't money meant to be spent? Just take it! I don't need much money anyways. If you eat conservatively, you'll be able to eat delicious meals for a long time!"

After she heard me said that, she took the card. "You can't blame me, if I really use up all of your savings in the future. Let's not go to the Ascending Jade Tide anymore as even though that place is good, it's too expensive. Let's go to a cheaper restaurant in the future. I find cheap food

is also not bad. I have always wanted to try some out.”

I said, “Alright! Let’s go out to eat tomorrow. You shouldn’t leave school tonight as I don’t feel that it is safe for you to be out alone. I’ll come and find you after meeting Hai Shui, alright?”

Mu Zi shyly nodded her head and said, “I’ll go and eat at the canteen first.”

I replied, “That’s great! You can just wait there for me. After meeting Hai Shui, I’ll come and find you.”

After arriving at the third training ground, it was still early in the evening, even though the sky had darkened already. After a while, the students had their dinner and some of them came to the training ground to train their magic. However, it was completely silent in the training ground at the moment. It was a little chilly as the breeze blew past me, . Hai Shui still had not come. I stood at the center of the training ground; thinking about how to express the fact that I didn’t have any feelings for Hai Shui so that it wouldn’t hurt her feelings badly.

“Zhang Gong, you’re here already. I’m sorry that I came late.” Hai Shui’s dull voice sounded from behind me.

When I turned around, I saw that Hai Shui’s face was a little pale and signs of loneliness could be seen on her pretty face. I said smilingly, “It doesn’t matter as I had just arrived.”

She pointed at a corner of the field and asked, “Can we chat over there?” I nodded and followed Hai Shui to walk over there.

“Zhang Gong, am I pretty?”

I was stunned as I hadn’t thought that Hai Shui would ask me that. I vacantly nodded my head. “Of course, you’re beautiful. There aren’t a lot of females that can compare to you in the academy.”

Hai Shui dull expressions became excited. The tone of her speech was also higher. “Why don’t you like me then?”

My heart skipped a beat. “Why do you think like that? I definitely like

you. Hai Shui is an adorable little girl. How could anyone dislike you?"

Hai Shui emotionally said, "I'm not little! In your eyes, I'm only an adorable little girl? You should know what I meant when I said I like you. Please tell me just which part of me is incomparable to Mu Zi. Tell me!"

Seeing Hai Shui in such an emotional state, my heart felt a sharp pain. I really couldn't bear to hurt such an innocent and adorable girl, but I couldn't not tell her the reason. I clenched my teeth. It was better to just get the pain over with, rather than prolonging her agony. "I'm really sorry, Hai Shui. I understand your feelings, but I have already given my heart to someone else, so I'm unable to accept you. Sorry."

After listening to what I said, Hai Shui was no longer as emotional. She gradually calmed down, but her face became much paler. Sparkling and translucent teardrops rolled down her cheek. She nodded before saying, "Alright, I understand. Zhan Gong, do you still remember the first time we met each other at the arena? You took advantage of the time when I was not paying attention and pushed me off the stage. I really did hate you a little bit at that time, but your image just won't disappear from my mind. Even after so many years, except for you, nobody has been able to enter my heart. I don't blame you for choosing Mu Zi, but rather myself for not having the determination to confess my love to you."

I gently wiped her tears off her face. "Hai Shui, can you stop being like this? My heart hurts, seeing you like this."

Hai Shui grabbed onto my hand and pressed her cold delicate face against it. "When I first saw Mu Zi and you together, I felt that something wasn't right, but I consoled myself. However after today when you asked me to treat Mu Zi's wound, I had already understood that I no longer stood a chance. I saw through your heart. There is only Mu Zi in your eyes. When you look at her, your expression was so gentle. You were that distressed when Mu Zi got injured. You forever won't be able to love me. Even after knowing that, my heart had already followed you. Zhang Gong, I really love you...."

Hai Shui sobbed soundlessly in my embrace after she tightly hugged my

waist.

If I said, I wasn't moved. I would be lying to myself. I never thought that Hai Shui would have such a deep feeling for me. As I vacantly hugged her, I was unable to console her, as I didn't know what to say.

A voice suddenly shouted at us. "What are you two doing?" Hai Shui and I abruptly let go of each other. It was Hai Ri, I hadn't seen him for two years already. He furiously ran over with a fireball in his raised hand. I cast a light shield to block his attack.

He said angrily, "You're good, brat! You actually dared to hug my sister. I want to see what you're capable of." Although Hai Ri was mad at me, I strangely felt warmth. His expression made me remember the time when I helped Ma Ke treat his wounds.

I smiled and replied, "Brother Hai Ri, your temper hasn't changed at all."

Hai Ri felt that my voice was familiar. He stopped preparing his offensive spell before curiously asking, "You...Who are you?"

I replied, "I'm Zhang Gong."

Chapter 40: Hai Ri's Anger

Hai Ri suddenly had a realization and said, "So, it was you brat! I heard from Hai Shui that you came back. I had planned to look for you tomorrow. You don't know just how hell bent my sister has fallen for you. She keeps talking to me about you. You're so capable! You just got back, but you already have your hands on her."

I laughed bitterly in my heart as I knew he had misunderstood. I hastily explained, 'It's not...'"

Hai Ri interrupted saying, "Why isn't that the case? I have already seen it. You still want to make excuses? Haha, don't worry! I would mind if it was other people courting her, but I don't mind if it's you. You're suitable for my sister." He showed an elder brother's look.

When I tried to explain to him again, Hai Shui stepped forward from behind me. She dully said, "Brother, please don't meddle in our matter. There really is nothing happening between us."

Hai Ri smiled and said, "You're still saying nothing is going on? I have already seen you two hugging each other. Haha. Hmm, sister, why did you cry? Did he bully you?" Hai Ri's expression changed instantly after seeing tears on Hai Shui's face.

Hai Shui quickly replied, "Brother, he didn't bully me. I already told you not to interfere with our matters. There's really nothing going on between Zhang Gong and I. He already has a girlfriend."

"What? Zhang Gong, you're really good. You actually dare to bully my sister. I won't forgive you!" Hai Ri's temper erupted again.

Hai Shui stood in front of me and cried out, "Brother, please stop meddling in our matter! You also can't blame Zhang Gong in this matter."

Hai Ri said in rage, "If I don't blame him, don't tell me that I should be the one to be blamed! Hai Shui, get out of my way! Zhang Gong, you stinking brat, if you're a man, stop hiding behind my sister and fight with me. Since we were young, I've only fought you once. We haven't fought since then. I really want to see just what you have that gives you the guts

to bully my sister.”

I used short distance teleportation to move in front of Hai Shui from behind her. I could only let Hai Ri let off some steam. At worst, I just won’t retaliate.

Once Hai Ri saw me step out, he didn’t say anything, but chanted. “Boundless flames, please burn like my fighting spirit to turn into a violent flame to incinerate the enemy standing before you!” An enormous violent flame shot towards me.

When Hai Shui wanted to stop the attack, I mentally told her, “Your brother can’t hurt me. Let him let out some steam! If not, he won’t be able to calm down.” After hearing what I said, she moved to the side and worriedly watched our battle.

I cast a Holy light on myself; mellow and rich light elements protected me. Hai Ri’s magic power was so overbearing as I was forced to fly backwards after coming in contact with the violent flames.

I was like a magic sandbag after that, as I was continuously hit by all kinds of fire magic from Hai Ri. I stayed in the area of my defensive spell and unceasingly chanting defensive spells. The sky was dyed red by Hai Ri’s fire magic.

I cried out in my heart. Hai Ri is really strong. After fighting me for a long time, he was just as violent as he was initially; without any intention of stopping.

Hai Shui wanted to help me a couple of times, but I kept on stopping her. I told her that I could still hold on.

The people watching our battle from the surroundings gradually increased. They were really fellows that had nothing to do after eating one’s fill. They pointed and discussed among themselves.

“Wah! Who made Boss Hai Ri so mad? The one getting beaten doesn’t have any strength to fight back.” As I was bombarded by countless magic spells, I couldn’t see who it was.

“That fella is in deep trouble. He might become a roasted pig after the

battle.”

“He really can hold on. Who is that? His defense is quite good. Hai Shui is also here. He’s probably someone that was reckless enough to try and court her, which made Hai Ri furious.”

As I stayed in my defensive spell, I withstood his attack. Even though Hai Ri was strong, he was still a rank lower than me. His attack wouldn’t be able to break my defense. The problem was that there was no end to his attacks and I also couldn’t fight back. This was really troublesome.

Just as I was dreading, a violent gale suddenly blew past me. A few small Wind Tornados appeared in front of me. My body suddenly lightened. The pressure on my body caused by Hai Ri instantaneously disappeared.

Mu Zi landed in front of me accompanied with a cool breeze. “Mu Zi, why did you come?”

Mu Zi snorted and said, “You didn’t come to the canteen even after a long time had passed. I’m worried for you.”

I moved my head in front of her ear and said as I laughed, “Were you afraid that I would be attracted to Hai Shui?”

Mu Zi laughed and said, “Stop being so shameless! Hai Ri, why are you fighting Zhang Gong?”

Hai Ri saw Mu Zi appear and block his attack. He stopped attacking and said, “Mu Zi, why are you here? This matter only involves Zhang Gong and I, so stop meddling in our affair and get out of the way!” Hai Ri looked a little scared after seeing Mu Zi.

Mu Zi replied, “You’re shameless. Zhang Gong didn’t fight back and let you attack him, but you kept on attacking him.”

Hai Ri coldly said, “He’s guilty since he bullied my sister, so I want to beat him up.”

Mu Zi said, “How did he bully your sister? Did you see it happening?”

Hai Ri was instantly speechless and yelled at the surrounding students

who were whispering, “You all aren’t involved in this, so stop staying here to watch the show.” After he chased away the crowd, he turned to Hai Shui and asked, “Sister, did he bully you just now?”

Once Hai Shui saw Mu Zi came, her expressions darkened. When she heard Hai Ri questioning her, she replied, “Brother, I already told you not to interfere with our matters. Zhang Gong really didn’t bully me. Let’s just go!”

After Hai Ri heard what she said, he was stunned. “If he didn’t bully you, then why were you crying just now?”

Hai Shui’s tears flowed again. She said as she cried, “You don’t need to care!” She turned and ran away.

After Hai Ri saw Hai Shui running away, he said to Mu Zi, “Are you still going to say he didn’t bully her? You already saw how upset she was.”

I walked out from behind Mu Zi and patted Hai Ri’s shoulder. Hai Ri shoved my hand away from him. “Don’t touch me! If you don’t give me a reasonable explanation, I won’t ever let this matter go!”

I bitterly smiled and said, “Brother Hai Ri, please calm down a little and let me explain.”

Hai Ri coldly looked at me and said, “Carry on.”

I looked at Mu Zi and she nodded at me. I sighed before telling him everything from the start to the end of what happened.

After Hai Ri heard what I said, he stunningly said, “So, it was a love triangle.” He pulled me to the side and whispered to me, “Brother, it was my bad previously, but it was your fault! Why did you choose Mu Zi? She’s so fierce and violent. It would have been better if you had fallen for my sister as she is prettier and gentler. You should have chosen her instead.”

I helplessly replied, “You can’t make such comparisons in love relationships. I can only apologize to Hai Shui. Mu Zi and I mutually love each other. Brother Hai Ri, can you stop making things difficult for me?”

Chapter 41: Embracing Mu Zi

Hai Ri shook his head. "I won't be able to interfere in this kind of matter so just do as you like, but my sister is just so pitiful." After saying that, he intentionally glanced at Mu Zi, who was not far away from them.

I asked Hai Ri, "Brother Hai Ri, has Mu Zi made you suffer before? It looked as though you're fearful of her?"

Hai Ri puffed out his chest and said, "Who's scared of her?" Suddenly, he deflated like a balloon that was losing air. "However, I did suffer at her hands before. We fought in one of the academy's competitions. Even though I was able to win against her, she beat me to the point that I couldn't get out of bed for a couple of days. Mu Zi is really powerful, especially when she fights as if her life depends on it. I'm currently having trouble settling the matter about Hai Shui. I also can't force you to like her. First it was Hai Yue and now it's Hai Shui. My two sisters... Just what do you want me to do as your brother?" Mu Zi could actually make Hai Ri unable to stand her. I had never thought about this point before.

I asked in surprise, "Hai Yue? What about her?"

Hai Ri lethargically replied, "It's the wretched Ri family. It is unknown why they suddenly disappeared. Feng Liang also disappeared. Hai Yue was terribly worried and kept on looking for him, but to no avail. Even if he wanted to go, he should've told us first."

So it was like that. I replied, "You should go back and tell Hai Yue to stop looking for him. I'll tell you a secret, the Ri family has betrayed the Kingdom and the entire family is on the run now. Feng Liang isn't any good either. They're worshipers of sinister forces. You should make Hai Yue forget about him as soon as possible." Ma Ke finally had a chance! I'll make him go and console Hai Yue tomorrow.

Hai Ri astonishingly asked, "There was such a matter? Why didn't I know about it?"

I replied, "You mustn't tell anyone else about this. If you still don't believe in what I have said, you can go home and ask your grandfather

about it. He knows the truth about this. Actually, Ma Ke is not bad, you should help him out.”

Hai Ri frowned and said, “Why are so many things happening? My head feels compacted. Alright, I’m leaving. I don’t want to think about anything anymore.” After he said that, he turned and walked away.”

I hastily told him, “Brother Hai Ri, when you get home, you should tell Hai Shue that it’s impossible to force feelings. I hope that time will be able to heal her heart’s pain.”

Hai Ri replied, “That’s enough! You should stop saying such cynical remarks. How would I be able to repair her broken heart? Isn’t her pain caused by you?” As he complained, he walked out of the training ground.

I could only smile bitterly as I saw him walking away.

Mu Zi walked over and clung onto my arm. “It’s been hard on you.”

I turned around and gently embraced her. I buried my head in her long hair and deeply inhaled, bewitched by her sweet-smelling scent.. I didn’t want to think of anything and just wanted to quietly hold her.

Mu Zi returned my embrace and rested her head on my chest.

After a long time, I raised my head and gently said, “I wish that time would stop at this moment. The feeling of hugging you is just so amazing. It’s really enriching.”

Mu Zi pushed me away and angrily said, “You’re horrible! All you know is to say such frivolous words.”

It was my greatest enjoyment to see her protest coquettishly. My previous troubles seemed to have disappeared. I opened my arms widely to throw myself at her.

Mu Zi cried out in shock and dodged away. Her movement using wind magic made her really nimble. It was hard for me to catch her easily, even when I used short distance teleports.

I finally found an opportunity to block her path and embraced her while giving her layer upon layers of kisses upon her seemingly fragile, delicate

face.

Mu Zi hit me using her hand and said, “You’re hateful and a pervert!” She struggled to get out of my hold.

I tightly embraced her so she couldn’t break out of my hold. “Is my embrace not warm enough? Can you stop running away from me?” After saying that, I gazed lovingly at Mu Zi with all of my attention.

Mu Zi stopped struggling and remained in my embrace. I gently caressed her silky hair. I whispered into her ear, “Mu Zi, I love you.”

Mu Zi replied by saying, “Mmhmm!” Even though she didn’t respond to what I had said, I was already really satisfied with just this. I lowered my head to kiss her lips. Mu Zi jumped in fright. What I kissed in the end was only her delicate hand.

Mu Zi complained, “You were so well behaved previously, but now you’re being naughty again. Are you unsatisfied with hugging me? If you continue to be like this, I’ll ignore you.”

I was afraid she really got mad at me, so I didn’t dare to be imprudent. I only stood there, embracing her in the dim light of the night. We just quietly felt the beat of each other’s pounding heart.

After going back to the dormitory, I was still bewildered as I had ended up in a relationship with Mu Zi, but had hurt another girl’s heart in the process. I realized then that feelings could be so sweet, and yet so very bitter in the next moment. Hai Shui, I’m really sorry, but just forget about me.

I thought through many things that night. I thought about the competition, about Mu Zi, the Demon King, Hai Shui, and the Ri family’s matters all of which continuously appeared in my mind, making it hard for me to sleep. I dozed off that night, but with great difficulty.

Who is pushing me? I gradually woke up. I heard Ma Ke saying, “Boss! Boss! Quickly get up! You’re late already, so quickly wake up!”

I hazily opened my eyes as Ma Ke kept on shaking me.

I pushed his hands away and said, “Stop being so noisy. I’m getting really annoyed. Just let me sleep! I’m late, so what? It’s not like this is the first time.”

Ma Ke replied, “This is what you said. I’ll tell this to Teacher Di tonight. After you left yesterday, that old man kept on telling me to watch you attentively so that your magic won’t deteriorate, and especially for you to study seriously in class.”

After hearing about Teacher Di, I awoke and helplessly climbed out of bed. “Really! Just what’s the problem of skipping a few classes? It isn’t like the lessons had any meaning to us.”

Ma Ke chuckled and said. “Enough, Boss! Stop complaining and let’s go! Teacher Di said that even though your magic power is strong, your basics haven’t been solidified so learning more theories won’t be bad.”

When Ma Ke and I were on the way to the academy, he told me, “I heard you fought with Brother Hai Ri about Hai Shui’s matter yesterday.”

I replied, “You got the news so quickly.”

Ma Ke replied in astonishment, “So you mean it really happened? I thought they were just rumours. How did this happen? It can’t be that you’ve fallen for Mu Zi?”

I bitterly smiled and said, “I’m a hundred and ten percent sure that I have fallen for Mu Zi and can’t stop myself from loving her already.”

Ma Ke’s mouth gaped open for a long time before saying, “I didn’t know you had reached such an extent. You’re amazing, boss! But is Mu Zi really better than Hai Shui? Did she accept you?”

I nodded. “Who is good or bad? I don’t know. But all I know is that I seriously love Mu Zi, and she has also accepted me. I explained everything to Hai Shui yesterday night. She was really upset. At that moment, Hai Ri came and saw that she was upset. With his bad temper, how could he forgive me? So we ended up fighting against each other.”

Chapter 42: A Compassionate Breakfast

Ma Ke chuckled and said, “Now, you’ve also experienced Brother Hai Ri’s magic baptism. You don’t know how much I suffered back then. Haha!”

I punched him once before saying, “You brat! You dare to make fun of me? If you still have the energy to tease me, why don’t you go and chase after Hai Yue before you lose the opportunity to do so?”

Ma Ke was stunned for a moment before he foolishly asked, “Hai Yue? Why should I chase her?”

When I saw that Ma Ke was speaking foolishly, I said smilingly, “Aren’t you usually intelligent? Why is it that whenever it involves Hai Yue, you become so dumb? You need to carefully think it through.”

Ma Ke frowned as he looked at me. After thinking for a while, his eyes gradually brightened up. He exclaimed, “Boss, are you saying....”

I nodded. “That’s right! What you thought is correct. Feng Liang has already run away with his grandfather. This is a great opportunity. You must seize this opportunity. Don’t let it slip away.”

Ma Ke cheered a little before he turned and ran.

I hastily yelled at him, “Ma Ke, where are you going? You should attend your classes first.”

Ma Ke shouted as he ran, “I’m not going to class. I’ll be going to Hai Yue’s classroom to wait for her class to end.”

He really prioritized love over friends. I hope he will succeed. When I reached the entrance of the classroom, it was a lesson on magic tactics. The teacher was one of the academy’s famous instructors.

I shouted from outside, “Permission to enter!”

“Come in!”

“I’m sorry that I’m late, teacher.”

“Quickly take your seat and remember to be on time next time.”

I let out a long breath before I quickly took my seat. Mu Zi smiled at me and whispered, “Why are you late again?”

I replied, “I spent all night thinking about about you last night and overslept this morning.”

Mu Zi’s face flushed and she replied, “You’re too talkative. I knew you would be late today. Just take this!” After she said that, she passed me a lunch box.

“What is this?” I curiously asked.

Mu Zi replied, “See it for yourself.”

I opened the container and saw it was filled with delicious food. That’s great! Mu Zi took a mug of fruit juice from under her table before saying, “Eat carefully! Don’t let the teacher catch you eating. Ever since I met you, I’ve become such a delinquent.”

I grabbed her hand and kissed it. “The feeling of having a wife is so great. Thank you so much, my wife.”

Mu Zi hit me before withdrawing her hand. “Who’s your wife? You’re hateful. Just quickly eat your food!”

As I ate, I said, “This love filled breakfast that my wife made me is so delicious. It’s too delicious. Hmm, why are you staring at me? Are you hungry? Here, have some!” I grabbed a piece of chicken and gave it to her.

Mu Zi angrily said, “You just have to eat! Why do you have so much to say? I won’t make it for you anymore.” Even though she said that, she took the chicken from my hand and secretly ate it.

I suppressed my laughter and said, “Little piggy!”

Mu Zi snorted. “You’re the piggy, not me, you monkey!” After she said that, she giggled uncontrollably.

I felt wronged and said, “Am I that ugly?”

The teacher on the lecture platform said, “Zhang Gong and Mu Zi! Stand up!” Wah! This was bad. We were noticed by the teacher.

I quickly placed the breakfast on my seat, before standing up. Mu Zi stood up as well.

The forty year old teacher glared at us. “What’s going on with the two of you? You’re not listening in class and keep on whispering in class.”

Mu Zi and I looked at each other but didn’t reply to the teacher. The teacher continued saying, “That’s enough! Take your seat. Please pay more attention in class, especially you, Zhang Gong! Don’t think you can just slack off with only a little accomplishment in your magic. There are already a few teachers who have commented on your behaviour in class. If you carry on being like this, you might face expulsion from the academy.”

Ah! It couldn’t be that bad. Hehe! It shouldn’t matter as I have a good relationship with Teacher Zhen. He wouldn’t expel me.

“The Principal said that if you continue to break the class rules, we should instantly write up a note for disciplinary action. You were late today and now you aren’t paying attention in class.”

How could Teacher Zhen do this to me? It hurt my heart badly.

“There’s also Mu Zi. You’re an exceptional student. Why have you not been studying properly after Zhang Gong transferred to the academy? I’ll be going to discuss this with the teacher in charge of this class to make you two sit separately.”

Ah! He was going to separate Mu Zi from me. It mustn’t happen! I straightened my body and glared at the teacher. “Teacher, it was my fault for talking in class, but Mu Zi doesn’t have anything to do with this. She keeps on ignoring me. I’ll take notice of this in the future. It shouldn’t be serious enough to change our seats over, right?”

This teacher probably hadn’t seen such a bold student. He was stunned for a while before saying, “Zhang Gong, is this the tone you should be using while addressing a teacher? Get out of the class and stand in the corridor as your punishment!”

He wanted me to stand outside as punishment? How could I? I still

hadn't eaten my breakfast! I coldly replied, "I don't want to!" I just sat in my seat and ate my breakfast.

Mu Zi, who was beside me, kept pulling on me, gesturing me to stop quarreling with the teacher.

The teacher's expression on the lecture platform ashened. "Zhang Gong, this is your last chance. Are you going to get out or not?"

My stubbornness rose, and I angrily rebuked, "I'm not going to. As a teacher, why aren't you teaching the class properly instead of letting such a small matter affect your teaching process?"

The teacher said 'good' thrice before walking out of the class. 'It couldn't be that he was indicating I was such a good student to praise me thrice?'

The class was in an uproar instantly, but no one dared to question me.

Mu Zi sat down and said, "Zhang Gong, why did you quarrel with the teacher? This is going to be bad for you."

I felt I was wronged and looked at her. "I wanted to eat the breakfast you had given me. How could I eat it in the corridor?"

Mu Zi helplessly said, "You! You're in deep trouble. That teacher must have gone to find the Principal. He might even expel you."

I smiled and said, "That wouldn't happen as I have a good relationship with Teacher Zhen. How could he expel me?"

After a short while, the teacher returned with signs of ridicule in his expression as he entered the classroom with Teacher Zhen. Teacher Zhen frowned and said, "Zhang Gong, get out of the class!"

After hearing Teacher Zhen's words, I obediently went out of class. He turned to the teacher to tell him to carry on teaching the class. After that, he took me to the corridor.

Teacher Zhen said, "Why is this happening? Are you purposely making trouble for me? You're not listening in class and even made the teacher of the class complain to me about you. After all that is said and done, what's

going on with you? Do you really want me to go and complain to Teacher Di?"

Chapter 43: A Brutal Plan

I scratched my head and awkwardly said, "I'm sorry, Teacher Zhen. I'll pay more attention in class next time."

Teacher Zhen replied, "Pay more attention next time? How am I going to solve it this time, then? I can't tell the teacher to let it go. Won't that be too obvious that I'm covering for you?"

I awkwardly said, "What should we do? It's all my fault for bringing you so much trouble. I'll study properly in class in the future, so as to not give you any more troubles, so can we smoothen this issue this time?"

Teacher Zhen frowned and said, "Let me think about this. How about I place you in confinement for a while. They won't be able to say anything after that."

I was stunned for a moment and said, "Place me in confinement?" If I was placed in confinement, wouldn't it mean that I would be unable to stay with Mu Zi. I became anxious and said, "Teacher Zhen, you have to help me! I don't want to be placed in confinement!"

A cunning light flashed in Teacher Zhen's eyes. "It will be difficult for you this way, but it's hard to appease the teachers if I don't do anything to you. In that case, how about you represent the school to participate in the Triennial National Advanced Magic Academies' competition. I will just announce that you are in confinement. This plan should be acceptable?"

Ah! Participate in a competition? I started to have the suspicion of being set up by Teacher Zhen.

Teacher Zhen continued to say, "Every academy will be sending five members to participate in the competition. You will be the leader of the team, and I'll let Mu Zi participate as well. You should be satisfied with this?"

Being able to be together with Mu Zi, this was acceptable. . "What is the purpose of the competition?"

Teacher Zhen said. "This competition should actually be a breeze as all of you are so strong. Who will be your match? You can just treat it as a holiday."

Would it be that easy? Forget it! Who asked me to offend Teacher Zhen. Even after knowing that Teacher Zhen had set me up, I couldn't reject his arrangement.

I said, "Alright! I'll participate in this competition. Can I pick the members?" If I could choose who to pick, it would be good. Otherwise, with Hai Shui's abilities, she would definitely be chosen. If I'm caught in the middle, it would be a question of whether I could come back alive!

Teacher Zhen thought for a while before replying, "I could let you do that, but you must promise me that your team will definitely bring the championship back. We're the famous Royal Advanced Magic Academy. If we were to lose to others, my face would be completely lost."

Teacher Zhen had forced me into the trap, step by step. I said, "Alright! I'll definitely bring the championship back to you."

Teacher Zhen laughed heartily, causing goosebumps to rise above my skin. Teacher Zhen replied, "Who are you going to choose to participate in the competition? Let me hear it."

I thought for a while before replying, "It will be Ma Ke, Mu Zi, Hai Yue and I. You can decide the last member of the team." 'I will forget about choosing Hai Ri. With his temper, nobody will dare to pick him.'

Teacher Zhen was visibly satisfied with my decision. "Why didn't you choose Hai Shui? She should be stronger than Hai Yue."

I chuckled and said, "You don't know this, but Ma Ke has been chasing after Hai Yue all these years. Let's create this chance for him. I have already promised that I will definitely be able to bring back the championship anyway. Hai Yue's capability isn't bad either."

Teacher Zhen replied, "Alright! Let's add Si Wa Ming to the team. Hai Yue will be the only one from the Xin family who will participate in the competition."

I curiously asked, “Si Wa Ming? Isn’t that the expert in earth magic, the fifth year student who is the top ranker of the academy?”

Teacher Zhen nodded. “That is correct. It’s him. His magic talent doesn’t lose out to you, but his luck is slightly worse from you. He is the second person other than you in the new generation with the potential to become a Magister. Let me tell you a secret. He’s actually Dun Yu Xi’s successor. I wanted him to join the team so as to develop a good relationship with you and ease the conflict between Duke Te Yi and our side.

‘So it was like that. I also really want to get to know this person. Teacher Zhen is so full of praise for him, so the real thing shouldn’t be that far off.’

Teacher Zhen said, “Then it’s decided. There’ll be a total of eight academies participating in the competition. It’ll take place in the Sen Long’s magic academy in the Martial Return City. You should depart tomorrow. It will be a ten day journey. The competition will be held twenty days from now. You have to get there earlier to familiarize yourself with the place and situation. Even though the other academies’ powers are weaker than ours, there will still be some techniques worth learning.”

I wanted to scream that I had been scammed by Teacher Zhen. ‘So Teacher Zhen has already planned out everything! I swear that I will study properly in the future and not get into conflict with the other teachers. I will never give Teacher Zhen another chance to exploit me.’

I lowered my head as I followed Teacher Zhen back to class. Teacher Zhen looked really serious as he stood on the lecturer’s platform. “What happened today is a very serious offence. As a student, not only did Zhang Gong not study properly, he even rebuked his teacher. Furthermore, within this short period of time, he was frequently late for class. I announce that I will place Zhang Gong in confinement for two months in accordance with all of his mistakes. He is to sincerely reflect on his behaviour. Mu Zi will also be placed in confinement for a month. Other students should take this as a warning. If there’s such thing that happens

again, it won't be settled so easily. Alright! Carry on listening to your lessons. Mu Zi and Zhang Gong, follow me."

The class teacher looked at me smugly. "Principal, can Mu Zi be exempt from her punishment? She had always been attentive in class." Hearing him plead for my beloved, I had a slightly better impression of him.

Teacher Zhen's expression was unphased. "I won't allow that to happen. To do such a thing in the academy, they must be severely punished! Mu Zi and Zhang Gong, pack up your belongings and meet me in the Principal's office." With that, he turned and walked away.

As I was packing up my belongings, I whispered to Mu Zi, "It's alright. Don't worry."

She glanced at me before whispering back. "It's all your fault that my reputation has been completely ruined!"

After we packed our stuff, just before walking out of class, I looked at the class teacher with some regrets. It seemed that he wasn't a bad teacher.

I told him, "Teacher, I was wrong today. I hope that you can forgive me. My words were completely sincere.

He was stunned for a moment before saying, "Forget it, just tell me why the Principal gave you such a harsh punishment." Being confined for two months was a really serious punishment. The students that attended the Royal Advanced Magic Academy were the talents of the Kingdom, so the management of the students had always been very slack.

Volume 5

Chapter 1: Negotiating Suitable Conditions

After Mu Zi and I left the classroom, I told her about Teacher Zhen's solution. She laughed brightly, and I blankly asked, "Why are you laughing? Is participating in the competition with me really making you that happy?"

Mu Zi smiled and said, "You're usually very quick witted. Why are you so slow this time? Teacher Zhen has obviously tricked you. Since we are the top students in the Royal Advanced Academy, we hold special privileges in the entire Kingdom of Aixia. It is possible that we won't be severely punished even if we killed somebody. Moreover, it was only rebuking the teacher. Teacher Zhen must have been afraid about your laziness and that you wouldn't want to participate in the National Advanced Magic Academies' competition, so he came up with this plan to make you agree to participate."

Mu Zi's words helped me confirm my feelings. 'That's right! I'm a Magister. How could I be punished? Except for Teacher Di, who else would be able to control me in the Kingdom? I've really been tricked.'

I bitterly laughed. "Teacher Zhen is really crafty, but since it's too late to regret it, let's just treat it as an outing."

Mu Zi nodded. "But I think this competition might not be that simple. If it was, why would Teacher Zhen be so set on having you participate? He could just randomly choose a few strong students, instead of us, to participate in the competition."

I held Mu Zi's hand. "It doesn't matter as long as we deal with it together... though I doubt there'll be anything that could get the better of me! Haha!" My confidence had increased greatly after the strenuous victory over Si Feng Ri.

Mu Zi, who was both displeased and annoyed, took back her hand and

said, "It's still broad daylight. How can you behave like this? Annoying!"

I leaned over and smiled. "In that case, tonight...?"

Mu Zi knocked on my head before she turned and ran away. "You're hateful! Let's just quickly go to where Teacher Zhen is."

Teacher Zhen was reclined in his seat and seemed as though he was looking at something when we entered his office.

After he saw us entering the room, Teacher Zhen put down the magic book he was reading. "You two have come. Mu Zi, Zhang Gong must have told you about the competition."

Mu Zi nodded.

Teacher Zhen smiled. "That's great! I'll have to trouble you two this time."

I bitterly smiled. "You're quite capable to have created a trap especially for me. I was totally tricked this time."

Teacher Zhen broke into laughter. "It's a pity that it's already too late for regrets, even if you've realized it. The task for this competition is very easy, so don't complain. I am unable to send teachers with you as the Academy still has to function normally. You can just go there by yourselves. I have already made arrangements to notify the rest of the students participating in the competition. You'll head out tomorrow morning. Zhang Gong, I really don't have a choice. Please don't blame me."

What was the point of refuting him if it had already been finalized? It looked like the time was actually quite limited, so we'll have to head out tomorrow. "Let's just head out tomorrow then. Is there anything else we will need to take note of?"

Teacher Zhen gave me a piece of paper. "This is a recommendation letter. All of your names are on it. I have written that you're all magic scholars so that it won't be too ostentatious. You just have to directly head to Forest Dragon Magic Academy. There will be people there to receive you."

I took the introductory letter. Written on it was how my academy would be sending a year five student, Earth magic scholar, Si Wa Ming; a year four student, Water magic scholar, Hai Yue Xin; a year three student, Fire magic scholar, Ma Ke Sai De (His previous alias was used so as to not expose him); similarly, a year three student, Light magic scholar Zhang Gong Wei; and finally, a year three student, Wind magic scholar, Mu Zi Mo to participate in the Triennial National Advanced Magic Academies' competition.

'Royal Advanced Academy' was inscribed at the top of the letter along with Teacher Zhen's signature and the Royal Advanced Academy's official seal stamped on it.

I said, "This team is really compatible! Except for a dark magic magician, the other five elements have been covered." After hearing my words, Mu Zi's expression twitched a little, but it recovered before I noticed it.

Teacher Zhen replied, "That's right! You'll become representatives of the strongest users of each of the elements. You must work hard."

I asked, "Do you still have something to give us? It can't be just this paper, right?"

Teacher Zhen nodded. "That's correct! You only need this paper. What else do you want?"

I rubbed my forefinger against my thumb. "How about giving us some money for our expenditures? We are helping the school compete in this competition. You should make an amethyst card for everyone. Hehe."

Teacher Zhen mockingly scolded. "You shouldn't be so greedy. Do you think that the amethyst card is that easy to make? However, it's alright. I will give it to you. Hehe. Actually, other than Mu Zi, all of you have the amethyst card already, so don't think that I don't know about it. Getting the amethyst card for Mu Zi is understandable as it's paired with her capability. I have decided to give all of you 1000 diamond coins. This should be more than sufficient for your expenditures."

I wanted to exclaim that I felt like I had been duped. 'That's right! Si

Wa Ming is the Royal Mage Union leader's disciple. How can he not have an amethyst card? There obviously isn't a need to comment about Ma Ke. Hai Yue is an elite of the young generation in one of the three main families. I feel as though I have made a loss. If I had known that, I would have picked something else. An old ginger is indeed hotter than a young ginger!"

Mu Zi asked, "Are there any benefits in obtaining the championship?"

Teacher Zhen smiled and replied, "Of course there are. The academy will record your great achievements and someone with a negative record will have all of his demerit points erased from the records."

I angrily said, "Wah! You're really too..."

Mu Zi also complained, "The academy is so stingy and still wants us to expend our energy for it."

Teacher Zhen replied, "Then what more do you want? How about this? If you bring back the championship, you will be able to change your status at the Magic Union for free."

It looks like it is a little useful as my current status is only that of a Great Mage.

Mu Zi, on the other hand, was still unsatisfied. "You really don't have a substantial reward?"

Teacher Zhen was taken aback and replied, "You don't need to worry about your next meal or having clothes on your back, what other substantial award do you want? Didn't I already agree to give all of you 1000 diamond coins?"

I suddenly thought of an idea. "How about this? We don't want to make things difficult for the school. How about giving us the right to get free food at a restaurant with your assistance? It will just be used during our school years. All of our expenditures will be paid for by the school. After all, the academy's food really isn't that nice."

Teacher Zhen replied, "What? The food in the academy is not nice? This is a problem. I'll definitely have it changed. I'll accept your condition." He

thought, 'Just how much money can you spend on food in a month, even if you can eat a lot?'

Mu Zi looked at me in agreement. "Alright! I will represent the team about having our meals at the Ascending Jade Tide in the future."

Chapter 2: Abnormal Tournament

I continuously expressed my support for Mu Zi's words. Teacher Zhen's expression changed, as he had never thought that we would pick that place. As the Royal Advanced Magic Academy's Principal, he definitely knew what the price of the food at that place was like. He bitterly smiled, "It's too expensive at that place, can we change the place?"

Mu Zi and I stubbornly shook our head. Mu Zi said, "Nope! If you want to change the place, then you have to change the participants as we won't be participating in the competition."

Teacher Zhen's thoughts were that even if Mu Zi didn't want to go, it would be totally fine as the main competitor he wanted was me. He lowered his head and considered for a bit. If Mu Zi didn't go, I won't go. Forget it! He clenched his teeth and said, "Alright! It is decided then." He would just find Prince Ke Zha and ask him to reimburse him in the future. Thinking about that point, Teacher Zhen smiled happily.

I said satisfied, "That's great! Since that is settled, we will head back to pack up."

Teacher Zhen nodded. "You'll gather at the entrance of the academy at 9 o'clock tomorrow morning and head out together. You should have a map. Do you know how to get there?"

I nodded. "You don't have to worry about that."

Teacher Zhen fixed his expression and said, "You're the most talented students of the academy. Please stay safe on your journey. The competition has a dreadful rule. Although it will still be forbidden to kill their opponent, they can seriously injure them or even mutilate them."

I turned pale with fright. "What?! Why is there such a horrific rule?"

Teacher Zhen sighed. "Who knows? The rule has already been in place for a very long time. The reason was that too many restrictions would make competitors unable to brandish all of their strength; which in turn affects their advancement. However, I have complete trust in you, or are you perhaps not confident in your abilities?"

Damn! It looks like Mu Zi was right, there is actually such a conspiracy.

Mu Zi replied, "We'll head back first then." After she said that, she dragged my stunned body out of the office.

As he saw us leave, Teacher Zhen muttered, "I hope that you will return safely. This is also the best chance for you to train."

After the school ended for the day, we went to find Ma Ke. After meeting him, I asked him, "Do you know about the competition already?"

Ma Ke's expression dampened before he nodded his head.

I asked curiously, "Why are you looking so distressed? What's the matter? You're a magic scholar. It can't be that you're scared to lose?"

Ma Ke sighed and said, "Boss, you just don't know how abnormal the Triennial National Advanced Magic Academies' competition is. I'm getting worried just thinking about it."

I patted his shoulder. "I know about that. Isn't it because the competition doesn't forbid anyone to actually seriously injure their opponent? It shouldn't matter as I'm leading the team. What are you so afraid of?"

Ma Ke shook his head. "It's not only that. The competition allows all of the other seven Advanced Magic Academies, except ours, to send out their teachers to participate in the competition. Boss, did you know that all of the academies are using the defeat of our Royal Advanced Magic Academy to gain glory?"

I asked, astonished, "What! Teachers are allowed to participate in the competition. Isn't that just too unfair?"

Mu Zi calmly said, "Why is that unfair? If they don't allow the teachers to compete and use only their students, they won't be even able to lift our shoes. I had already told you that Teacher Zhen won't give you an easy mission. So that's how it really is."

Ma Ke continued to say, "Mu Zi's analysis is right. The other academies all have magic scholars for Principals. Magic scholar teachers are very

rare. In the past, there have been a few academies that sent five teachers to compete in the competition.”

I asked, “What was the final outcome? Who was the champion?”

Ma Ke replied, “It was our academy that had brought back the championship. However, there were only two people that were able to walk back on their own. One of them is the Academy’s top ranker, Si Wa Ming.”

I muttered, “Only two people that can walk back on their own, so it will mean that the others...”

Ma Ke nodded. “That’s right! One was seriously injured while the other two competitors were crippled.”

It really was abnormal. I replied, “Sorry, brother! I’ve gotten you involved, as I was the one who asked Teacher Zhen to nominate you. I’ve really caused you trouble this time. I wouldn’t have let you come with me, if I had known that it would be this dangerous. You should follow me to Teacher Zhen’s place, so that I can help you remove your name from the list. Teacher Zhen will definitely approve, if uncle Ke Zha is with us.”

Ma Ke shook his head. “It’s useless Boss! It’s my father that has arranged for me to go.”

Mu Zi frowned, “Why? You’re his dearest son.”

Ma Ke replied, “My father has very high expectations for me, and equally stringent demands towards me at the same time. This is an extremely good chance for me to train, so I must participate.”

I sighed, “I actually thought of creating a chance for you to get closer to Hai Yue. I haven’t thought that it will be such an abnormal competition.”

Ma Ke was greatly alarmed. “What! Hai Yue is also going? It can’t be!”

I awkwardly smiled. “That’s correct, Hai Yue is also coming as well.”

Mu Zi consoled Ma Ke, “This is really an opportunity. You can only express your sincere feelings for her when in dangerous times. You can relax as we had arranged her to fight the last match. If we can get three

victories before her turn, she will be safe.”

Ma Ke nodded and looked at me. “Boss! I really don’t know if I should scold you or thank you instead.”

I sighed. “It’s all my fault. I didn’t clarify before easily agreeing to it. Isn’t Mu Zi also going to experience such danger? No matter how difficult it will be, we must protect the Mu Zi and Hai Yue’s safety.”

Ma Ke replied, “Let’s do that! I’ll go and pack up as we will leave tomorrow morning.”

After bidding Ma Ke farewell, Mu Zi and I looked at each other.

I held her hand and said, “Mu Zi, I’m really sorry. I’ve forced you to participate in such a terrifying competition.”

Mu Zi leaned towards me and hugged my waist lightly. “Since I was young, I have never known what it is to be afraid. Isn’t it more thrilling this way? Don’t worry, everything will be fine!”

I hugged her tightly and felt that my emotions had stabilized a lot. I swore to myself that I would use my very life to protect her and not let her suffer even the tiniest bit of harm.

After sending Mu Zi back to the dormitory, I didn’t return to mine. I left the academy, even though the sky had completely darkened. I would be out for one to two months. I wanted to let Teacher Di know about this.

After reaching the Intermediate Magic Academy, I related the entire situation to Teacher Di.

Chapter 3: Preparing for the Journey

Teacher Di said, "You... Who can you blame for this? Who told you to not listen properly in class? Even though this competition is definitely shrouded in danger, I have complete faith in you. The other seven advanced academy definitely won't have any Magisters. You just have to keep the others safe. Do you understand?"

I nodded. "The reason why Teacher Zhen wanted me to go at all cost was probably for safety."

Teacher Di nodded. "It is fine as long as you understand. I don't know why, but I keep getting bad feelings from Mu Zi. I just want to remind you again to pay attention to her."

My mood dampened. Teacher Di seemed to dislike Mu Zi. "Mu Zi is a very kind hearted girl. I have never gotten bad feelings from her."

Teacher Di smiled. "Everyone is blind when they're in a relationship. Let's hope that what you've said is true. It's really late so you should head back now, and besides, you are going on a long journey tomorrow. Have you got enough money? Do you need teacher to give you some more?"

I've always known that Teacher Di treats me best. I shook my head. "Teacher Zhen has given us all 1000 diamond coins so I have enough to spend. I may need to go away for a few months this time. Please take care of your health."

Teacher Di said with a gentle expression, "I know that you're a good child. When you're outside, please pay attention to your surroundings. You mustn't be careless and remain modest and keep cool at all times."

I respectfully agreed.

Teacher Di walked me to the entrance of the Intermediate Magic Academy. He gave me a few more warnings and sent me out of the Intermediate Magic Academy.

After leaving the Intermediate Magic Academy, I went to buy some daily commodities and some food that was a little less perishable from the

main street and placed them in my spatial space. ‘Mu Zi is a little piglet. How can she go without food? I also can’t bear to see Mu Zi starve. After interacting with her all this time, I feel that what she is most interested in is food.’ After settling this, I headed back to the academy.

The night at the academy was really quiet, as all you could hear was some nocturnal birds calling out occasionally. I quietly walked back to my dormitory. Just as I was about to open the dormitory door, I heard a familiar voice call me from behind.

“Zhang Gong, you’re back!”

I became alert and shuddered; causing my goosebumps to rise up. I turned around and gave a sigh of relief. It was Hai Shui. I patted my chest. “Wah! It’s you, Hai Shui. You must know that a person can be scared to death!”

Hai Shui lowered her head and said, “Sorry!”

I asked her, “Have you been waiting for me all this time?”

Hai Shui nodded. “That’s right! Why are you back so late?”

Hai Shui clearly had lost a lot of weight. I sighed in my heart. “I went to Teacher Di for a while so I came back late.”

Hai Shui dully said, “You went to Teacher Di? Is it to bid him farewell?”

I was startled. “How did you know?”

Hai Shui replied, “Sister told me that she was arranged by the Principal to participate in the eight Advanced Academy’s competition. Why didn’t you let me participate? Do you find me annoying?” Her eyes became watery as she asked that.

I hastily explained, “Why would I feel that way? How could I avoid you. You should know that this competition isn’t that simple. Moreover, I can’t make the decision to decide who participate in the competition as it is Teacher Zhen’s arrangement. I really didn’t have a choice.”

Hai Shui muttered, “How about you help me beg the Principal to let me go with you guys.”

I said with difficulty, “I’m afraid that it is impossible as this matter has already been finalized and can’t be changed. Hai Shui, just be my sister, alright?” I looked at her to express my deepest feelings.

Hai Shui looked at me while tears were rolling down her delicate face. “It can’t be that we really aren’t fated to be together, right? Why? Why does it have to be this way?”

I didn’t dare to help wipe her tears away, and instead consoled her saying, “Hai Shui, don’t be like this. There are still a lot of good guys available for you to choose from.”

Hai Shui constantly shook her head and said, choked with sobs, “I...I won’t see you off to..tomorrow. I hope that you..you will stay safe during this trip.” After she said that, she turned and ran away without looking back.

As I looked upon Hai Shui’s back fading in the distance, I sighed heavily.

Dawn of the next day. I packed up and stopped by the girl’s dormitory to get Mu Zi.

Mu Zi said, “I have my own amethyst card so I will give yours back.”

I took the amethyst card back from her. “When did Teacher Zhen give it to you? Why did I not know about that?”

Mu Zi smiled, “Before you come this morning, he had told a teacher to pass it to me and tell me that the card already has 1000 diamond coins.” Teacher Zhen’s efficiency wasn’t too bad.

We had already unknowingly arrived at the entrance of the academy. Ma Ke was already there and was chatting to a student that had a robust body.

I walked over and said, “Ma Ke, you’re quite early.”

Ma Ke smiled and replied, “I had to come early. Boss, what do you think about my clothes?”

I then noticed that there was something different in his clothing. He

wore a bright red magic robe and there was gold embroidered on the robe. It seemed that he had cleaned up a lot, which suited his originally valiant and formidable-looking appearance.

I smiled, “Not bad! You’ve really put in some efforts. This is?”

Ma Ke saw me looking at the student beside him and hastily introduced him to me, “This is Si Wa Ming, the academy’s top expert.”

Ah! It’s him! I looked at him carefully. He seemed to be 170cm tall and looked very sturdy. It was as though he was a warrior.

He extended his hand to me and said, “How can I be the academy’s top expert in front of Zhang Gong? Hehe.”

So he was that easy going. I shook his hand and said, “Brother Si Wa, you’re too courteous. Reputation comes naturally from real distinction so your position as the academy’s top expert should still be yours.”

Mu Zi said from beside me, “That’s enough! You don’t need to be so formal with each other. Why hasn’t Hai Yue come yet?”

Ma Ke replied, “That’s right! Why isn’t she here yet? It is nearly time to depart. It can’t be that she is not coming right?”

I shook my head, “She has to come, since this is a decision that the academy made. Surely, she will come.”

Just as I said that, Hai Yue’s familiar figure appeared in our sight. She was similar to Hai Shui as she had also lost a lot of weight. She looked really pitiful.

Ma Ke showed a little heartbroken expression and went up to her. “Hai Yue, you’ve finally come.”

Hai Yue coldly glared at him and wasn’t at all interested in his new attire. She didn’t bother replying to him and walked past him after glaring viciously at me. “Everyone has gathered already. Let’s go!”

Mu Zi walked up and said. “Hai Yue, it seems that you have lost a lot of weight.”

Hai Yue looked at her and said, “Really?” And simply turned and walked

out of the academy without waiting for anyone else. I patted Mu Zi's shoulder to gesture her to follow her.

Si Wa Ming obviously didn't understand our interpersonal relations so he just felt that something was up with Hai Yue.

Our group of five step foot on the road towards Martial Return City.

Chapter 4: Heart Breaking Confession

The coldness that Hai Yue had displayed caused the team's atmosphere to become somewhat awkward, and as a result, Ma Ke didn't dare to go near her again. The first day of the journey quickly came to an end.

We had travelled about 100 km (and utilised magic in isolated areas). There were no village or shops in the near distance. Since the sky was already pitch black, I told Si Wa Ming, "Brother Si Wa Ming, it is already night and everyone is tired from the long journey today. How about we find a place that can shelter us from the wind and spend the night out in the open?"

Si Wa Ming raised his head and looked at the sky. "It looks like that's the way it has to be. Does anyone have any other opinions?"

Mu Zi and Ma Ke definitely had no other suggestions. We looked at Hai Shui and she silently shook her head in response.

Seeing that she didn't oppose the idea, we walked to an area behind a small slope that was surrounded by trees and near a river. It was a good camp site.

Ma Ke and I cut down a few trees to make a few wooden beds. Even though it was a little difficult, it was still better than sleeping on the ground.

Mu Zi asked, "What shall we eat tonight?"

I sniggered, 'I knew she would ask this question.' I purposely frowned. "Oh no! There really is nothing to eat. It looks like everyone will have to bear with it."

Si Wa Ming replied, "Do we still even bear our hunger any longer? I will hunt some wild animals later so everyone can have a taste." This brat had spoiled my plan to tease Mu Zi.

After Mu Zi heard his words, she glanced at me and said, "That's great! I always wondered what wild animals would taste like. Si Wa, quickly go get some!"

Si Wa laughed and walked away after turning around.

I snorted and whispered, “Si Wa! Si Wa! You address him so intimately.”

Mu Zi pinched my back, making me scream out in pain.

“Who told you to not get any food for me? You think I’ve been addressing him intimately? I will show you what intimacy is when he returns!”

She really is a little hot pepper; I couldn’t tease her at all. I bitterly smiled. “It’s my bad, alright, mistress?” I took a bottle out of my spatial space and gave it to her. “Here, have a drink. It’s fruit juice. Even though it is uncomparable with the Ascending Jade Tide, it is not too bad.”

Mu Zi changed from angry to happy as she took the bottle of fruit juice. I took a few more bottles out and gave one of them to Ma Ke. When I tried to give a bottle to Hai Yue, she ignored me, took out her own bottle, and used water magic instead.

I asked Hai Yue, “Is it worth the trouble? Can the water elements taste better than fruit juice? Are you still mad at me for what I had done previously? Didn’t you shoot an ice cone at me? It can’t be that you are going to be angry with me your entire life? If a girl is always angry, she will age really quickly.”

Hai Yue glanced at me, but remained silent.

Ma Ke supported me by saying, “What boss says is right! We were in the wrong before, but now we are going into a group competition. We must work together to achieve our goals. You should try to control your anger as much as possible.”

Hai Yue coldly replied, “If it wasn’t for you, Feng Liang wouldn’t have left me. Have you experienced the pain of losing your beloved? Other than making cynical remarks, what else can you say?”

Ma Ke and I looked at each other. We didn’t expect Hai Yue to hate us to this extent. Ma Ke became teary eyed as he walked to the side and lowered his head to drink his fruit juice.

She really didn't give us any face. I felt that it was unfair for Ma Ke. I coldly rebuked, "Feng Liang Ri leaving you has nothing to do with Ma Ke. If you want to blame someone, you should just blame me. Do you want to know the reason why he left? I will tell you now. His Ri family had been influenced by dark forces, forcing every member of that family to become evil. Because the Ri family's leader's plan failed, he was exposed as an evil servant, having no choice but to force his entire family into fleeing the kingdom.

As the plans of the Ri family's leader failed, it exposed his evil characteristics so he had no choice, but to lead his family to be on the run."

Hai Yue shouted, "You! You're lying! The three main families have always been nobles in the Kingdom. How could the Ri family be influenced by evil forces? You are just lying to me so Ma Ke, who is destined to be forever alone, has an opportunity to get me.

But let me tell you that I've already given my heart to Feng Liang. Humph! This person here will never get the chance to make me fall for him!"

I rebuked angrily, "You! Why are your words always so hurtful?"

Ma Ke walked out from behind my back and placed a hand on my shoulders, holding me back, indicating that I should stop arguing with Hai Yue.

He looked abnormally calm and walked to be in front of Hai Yue. He sighed and said, "I understand. I have finally understood that I have never been in your heart."

Ma Ke stared at Hai Yue and tears flowed down his face.

I wanted to help him to settle this injustice, but was held back by Mu Zi. She whispered, "It isn't easy for Ma Ke to be this brave. You should just let him settle this matter on his own as it only involves the two of them. We should let them settle this problem themselves."

Hai Yue turned her head and didn't look at Ma Ke.

Ma Ke inhaled deeply and said emotionally, “I was twelve that year when I first entered the Royal Intermediate Academy. After entering the academy for a short while, I met you. Even though I was still young at the time, I had always had the feeling of you being my counterpart in life. I had deeply fallen for you, who was a year older than me. Every time I go and find you or even just say a line to you, I feel oddly satisfied. Even though I was always getting beaten up by brother Hai Ri, I had never regretted it. The twelve year old me still didn’t know anything about love, but your image had already been engraved in my heart. I know that it would be impossible to erase this image of you from my heart. The education imposed on me by my family had always been really strict since I was young, so I never got the chance to enjoy a normal childhood, and I never knew how it felt to be truly happy. However, when I first saw you, I knew that I was happy. My heart beats for you and I like that. I have always been teased by others as being a young loner in the realm of relationships. I didn’t even care if I got badly battered, as I was willing to endure it, as long as I got to see you.”

Saying until here, Ma Ke choked on his sobs.

I was deeply concerned about Ma Ke while tightly grasping Mu Zi’s hand. This was the first time that I heard Ma Ke talk about how he felt for Hai Yue. Even though I know he likes Hai Yue, I never would have known both the depth of his love and the indescribable pain he always felt.

Hai Yue didn’t interrupt as Ma Ke spoke, but just listened in silence. After Ma Ke controlled his emotions, he continued to say, “Brother Hai Ri has told me that the power I wield isn’t good enough for you and told me to give up. But can I really give up? No! After that, I have practiced the magic that I was not fond of everyday like an insane person and kept thinking of ways to increase my magic power. It was all so that I can be suitable to be with you and the strength you hold as the eldest daughter of Xin family.”

Chapter 5: A Pair of Puppets

Ma Ke continued to say, “I’ve known you for about six to seven years already. To be honest, I am a person who isn’t good at expressing himself. I can’t cheer you up with words, so I just love you silently. However, now I know what true love is. I am confident in saying that you are the one whom I love the most in my life. In the academy, just by sneaking peeks at your familiar figure, I felt very fulfilled. If I ever have the fortune of hearing you speak without blaming me, it will be the happiest day of my life. I have always thought that you’d understand me one day and then willingly fall into my arms to become my bride. However, Feng Liang appeared, and my dreams slowly shattered. I knew that my chances with you were diminishing more and more. You minded me even lesser. My heart felt as though it has been painfully pierced by you time and time again.”

Mu Zi and I were deeply moved as Ma Ke mournfully described the depths of the feelings he had for Hai Yue. Mu Zi’s tears had dampened my shoulder.

“Now, I have completely awoken from my dream. From what you’ve said, I understand that I will never have a chance. Haha. (His smiles were even harder to bear than his tears). I have awoken, completely awoken! Hai Yue, you can stop worrying. I, this piece of sticky rice cake, won’t cling to you anymore. You will not need to be troubled by me ever again. I only want to tell you this. What Boss Zhang Gong said isn’t a lie, but the truth. The Ri family leader, Si Feng Ri’s, evil nature was exposed when he was being beaten by Zhang Gong. Please don’t think I’m lying, but Boss Zhang Gong has already reached the Magister level. I was also there when they fought. Do you still remember the fight between Boss and Feng Liang? That last move by Feng Liang, that sign still hasn’t woken you up? Even though I already don’t have a chance, I still hope that you will find a good partner. Finally, I hope that you will stay happy and blissful, forever.” After saying that, Ma Ke turned and ran away.

Just as I was about to chase after him, Ma Ke’s voice carried over, “Boss, I want to calm down by myself. I’ll return by tomorrow morning.”

I sighed heavily. Hai Yue looked as though she had become a block of wood and remain seated motionlessly.

Si Wa's voice rang out, "I can also prove that what Ma Ke said was true. My teacher was at that match. He even praised Zhang Gong's strong magic power. Hai Yue, if you still don't believe that it is true, you can also ask your grandfather." He was carrying two unknown wild animals back.

Hai Yue suddenly screamed out, "Stop talking! You all just stop talking!" Turning around, she ran away. One ran off and so did the other... Mu Zi said, "She is just having a tough time accepting the truth right now. I'll go and watch over her. You can prepare the meals first."

In this kind of situation, who still had the mood to eat? Si Wa tossed the wild animals aside and sat down. He said, "When I just came back, I heard what Ma Ke said. I never knew that he has such strong feelings."

I replied, "Not just you, even I did not really know the depth of his love. The wound this time is too deep. You tell me, how are we going to compete? Two are already experiencing psychological problems. Oh right! I haven't had the time to ask you this. How was the situation like when you previously participated in the competition?"

Si Wa said with lingering fear, "To be honest, I really didn't want to participate. Even though my abilities have increased since then, those who can't withstand their opponents will end up helping the lunatics."

"Lunatics?"

"That's right! There are lunatics. You wouldn't know, but for the sake of defeating our academy, the other seven academies have sent out their best line-up. And not just that, once they start fighting, they will be extremely reckless. Though their powers aren't great, you won't be able to withstand what they will do for the sake of victory. Do you know why the three from our academy were seriously injured during the previous competition?"

I asked, "Why?"

Si Wa looked frightened and said, "Those three students were injured by

the opponent's life magic."

I was startled. "What? Life magic? They were really that desperate?"

Si Wa nodded. "I remember how the previous water mage, Magic Scholar Nan Si's serious injury was precisely caused by a Great Mage's life magic. Even though senior Nan Si won the match, his leg...."

It looked like I needed to review the competition. It was more terrifying than I had anticipated. It's fine if it were me, but the most terrifying outcome would be if Mu Zi or anyone else were to be hurt.

Si Wa continued to say, "So once the competition starts, we must fight with all our might from the start and not give our opponents the chance to retaliate. Otherwise, they will all use life magic and stake their lives just to try and defeat us. We will be the ones that suffer heavily if it comes to that."

I nodded. It could only be that way now.

"Alright! Let's stop talking about this. Zhang Gong, how shall we prepare the game?"

I sighed, "After what has happened, who will be in the mood to eat? Let's just release them. I have some rations. We should rest after eating some."

After a long time, Mu Zi and Hai Yue came back. Hai Yue looked really depressed. The moment she came back, she went to her assigned position and slept. Though before she slept, she looked at Ma Ke's empty bed.

I wanted to ask Mu Zi about Hai Yue, but she looked exhausted. After she took the food I passed to her, she ate it quickly and went straight to bed. They all fell asleep while I stayed up to be the night vigil. Throughout the entire night, Ma Ke still hadn't come back. Dawn came. Just as I was getting worried about Ma Ke, he returned. His appearance gave me a shock. In the space of one night, his originally bright red hair had dulled to an ash red."

I ran forward and grabbed his arm. He looked at me with lifeless eyes. "Boss, we should head off."

I asked, "What happened to you?"

Ma Ke faintly smiled and said, "I'm fine. You don't need to worry about me."

I frowned. "With you like this, how can I not worry?" I took out some food and water from my spatial space and forced him to eat it. After that, I woke up the team to start heading out.

Mu Zi was startled when she saw Ma Ke's appearance. I held her back and waved my hands frantically at her.

When everyone had woken up, Hai Yue saw Ma Ke's appearance and her entire body shuddered. Wordlessly, she just quietly ate the dry food.

The journey on the second day was worse than the first, as even Ma Ke didn't talk now. After walking for half a day, we reached a small town. Mu Zi, Si Wa and I discussed for a while and decided to find an inn to rest. The conflict within the team was extremely terrible. How were we going to participate in the competition?

Ma Ke and Hai Yue had become blockheads. They didn't say anything as they followed us. They did whatever they were told to, just like puppets. I had tried to persuade Ma Ke, but I soon realized that his heart seemed to have died. I could only hope that time will cure everything. It looked like bringing Hai Yue on the team for this competition is a wrong decision.

Chapter 6: Enlightening Ma Ke

I can finally make up for last night's lack of sleep tonight.. After eating some food with the rest, I asked Mu Zi to guide Hai Yue more before I pulled Ma Ke into the room.

Ma Ke still looked wooden. After we entered the room, I first gave him a violent punch. He was struck dumb by the sudden strike. I said angrily, "For a girl, is it worth it? Don't let me see you like this again! A man must have an indomitable spirit. Why should a manly man be afraid that he won't have a wife?"

Ma Ke bitterly smiled. "What if this was the case with Mu Zi and you?"

I instantly deflated like a popped balloon and sat on the bed. "You really know how to compare, I am the one that is trying to guide you here."

Ma Ke sighed heavily. "Boss, I know you meant well. I will recover. Thank you for trying."

I patted his shoulder. "Why are you thanking me? If I didn't make Hai Yue come with us, you wouldn't have taken such a heavy blow. Loosen up a little! Since you have already decided to give Hai Yue up, what else is there that you can't let go?"

Ma Ke shook his head, saying. "If I could truly completely let her go, it would be a relief. The heart I had for her is already dead, but if you tell me not to care or think about her, I still can't do that."

I stared at him. "Let me ask you a question. What is the purpose of this journey?"

Ma Ke was stunned. "Isn't it to go and compete?"

I continued to ask, "Compete in what?"

Ma Ke replied, "The Eight Advanced Academies' Tournament."

I nodded. "It looks like you have not forgotten about that. You should know how cruel and dangerous this competition is. If everyone was in the same state as Hai Yue and you, there won't be a single one of us that will return in the same condition as we had started out with. Do you

understand? Since you love Hai Yue so deeply, you should not want her to get into any harm. Since it is like that, you must pull yourself together. If only Hai Yue is down, we can still rely on the four of us to fill her spot. However, if both of you are down, then what do you want us to do? Do you think we can guarantee that you two won't be harmed? Do you understand?" After saying that, my expression was very severe.

Ma Ke's eyes looked a little livelier. "Boss, I understand. Don't worry! I will pull myself together for everyone and for Hai Yue."

My serious expression softened and I smiled, "That's great! All of us must work together to cross this hurdle smoothly. I will give you a sentence from the book that Uncle Ke Zha gave to me: In life, you will gain and lose things but you also can't force things to happen. You have to think about it. Everything will be the best if you follow your fate."

Ma Ke muttered silently, "In life, you will gain and lose things but also can't force things to happen. That's right! Maybe Hai Yue and I just aren't fated to be together."

I patted his shoulder. "Brother, do you see clearly now? Liking a person doesn't mean that you definitely need to get her. Her happiness should be the goal that you should striving for instead."

Ma Ke sat on his bed and said, "Let me think. Let me think."

'I hope that after my guidance, he will be able to pull himself together. This word 'relationship', it can really deeply hurt people. I hope that my relationship with Mu Zi will be smooth, as I really don't want to experience the bitter taste of love.'

I no longer pestered Ma Ke as letting him think it through himself should be the best solution.

Even though so much had happened, my tiredness still overpowered my constantly pondering mind. Very quickly, I dozed off.

Who would have thought that once I slept, it would be until the next morning.

**Ah! After waking up, I felt that the fatigue that I had accumulated

during the first two days had already been washed away. My magic power was abundant to the extent of surging as it circulated in my body.

After leaving the room, I asked one of the attendants, “Where are my friends?”

The attendant replied respectfully, “Your friends are having their meals at the first floor’s diner.”

Such injustice! They didn’t even wait for me. Hearing that they were all eating, my stomach growled.

I more or less cleaned myself up and dashed down the stairs. I hoped that they’d left some breakfast for me.

After entering the diner, I went to the corner table where they were having their meal. It looked like I wasn’t too late. I shouted, “You’re too much! It’s breakfast time and you didn’t even wake me up!” I dashed over, took a steamed bun, and bit into it savagely.

Mu Zi smiled. “Look at yourself! You look just like a reincarnated hungry ghost. Eat slowly, don’t choke on it!”

Ma Ke replied, “It’s Mu Zi who didn’t let me wake you. She said that these two days you’ve been tired and so to let you sleep some more.”

I swallowed the food in my mouth and laughed, “So that was the case. I have wrongly accused you. I’m sorry for that. Ma Ke, your complexion looks much better.”

Ma Ke glanced at Hai Yue, who had her head lowered as she ate. “I have let go of everything already. There is no use to thinking any further, so what is the point of thinking about it? Boss, what you said is right. In life, you will gain and lose things but also can’t force things to happen.” After hearing what Ma Ke had said, I clearly felt that Hai Yue had shuddered a little.

Mu Zi asked in astonishment, “Zhang Gong, when did you become so knowledgeable? That sentence have such deep meanings.”

I said complacently, “But of course. Without any learning, how could I

pursue you?” I definitely wouldn’t tell her that it was from a book.

Hai Yue stood and said, “You guys continue with your meal. I will head back to pack up first. Mu Zi, when it is time to leave, please come and get me.”

Mu Zi nodded. “Alright! You go and have a rest. I will call for you when we are prepared to leave.”

Ma Ke stared as Hai Yue faded from his sight and told Mu Zi, “It seems that her mood today is better already.”

Mu Zi nodded. “That’s right! Yesterday, I advised her for a long time. She seems to have thought it through, but she is also currently in a lot of pain. You shouldn’t disturb her and let her heal.”

Ma Ke nodded and didn’t say anything else.

After eating, everyone packed up and continued to on the path towards Martial Return City.

On the way, Ma Ke gradually recovered his initial easy-going mood. He didn’t disturb Hai Yue at all. Not a single word was exchanged between them. Hai Yue was still very uncooperative, but she was not as cold as when we first headed off from the academy.

As we were reaching the border, we slowed down our pace. Hai Yue suddenly walked to my side and said, “Zhang Gong, I want to discuss something privately with you.”

Chapter 7: Hai Yue's Apology

Hai Yue wanted to speak privately with me? What is she going to say to me? I looked curiously at Mu Zi. She nodded. Hai Yue and I slowed down until we were behind the rest. After Hai Yue saw that there was some distance between us and them, she said, "Zhang Gong, I want to apologize to you. Previously, I have wronged you."

I felt flattered. Hai Yue had just apologized to me, I didn't hear it wrongly, right? I said awkwardly, "You don't have to be so courteous. Actually, there were also many areas where I was in the wrong."

Hai Yue turned around and had her back facing me. "After traveling with all of you these past few days, I already feel much better. I know now, that you've always been a good person. I had been blinded by anxiousness and hatred previously."

I asked, "Did you call me out just to apologize to me?"

Hai Yue nodded. I couldn't help but feel a little disappointed. I thought that she was going to ask about Ma Ke. Could it be that it really was impossible for them to be together?

I asked her, "Is there really no chance of you and Ma Ke being together? Ma Ke is really not bad. Why won't you give him a chance?"

Hai Yue turned her head back and smiled at me. "Mu Zi has also asked me that question. Let's just leave it up to fate. Let's go! What I said to you just now definitely cannot be told to him." I was elated. 'It seems that Ma Ke had finally moved Hai Yue, the towering iceberg. I am really happy for that brat.'

I purposely asked, "Who is he?"

Hai Yue's face reddened. "You're hateful! Stop acting dumb!"

I smiled and said, "It has been such a long time since I have seen you smile truthfully."

Hai Yue replied, "You're always smiling so mischievously. I really don't know what my sister and Mu Zi like about you."

I smiled, "You won't know about this, but I have a lot of good points. If you don't believe me, you can ask Mu Zi."

Hai Yue changed back her expression. "Staying on this topic, let me ask you. What are your plans in settling your relationships with Mu Zi and my sister?"

I sighed. "Hai Shui is a good girl, but I can't be with her as I had already given my heart to Mu Zi. I had also clarified this with Hai Shui already."

Hai Yue replied, "Matters concerning emotions truly are unclear. Hai Shui is stronger than Mu Zi in all aspects, but you still stubbornly choose her."

"Can we not talk about this? All I can tell you is that my feelings for Mu Zi won't change in my lifetime." After saying that, I used short distance teleportation to chase up to the group. Hai Yue shook her head and ran to catch up.

I abided to the promise with Hai Yue and didn't say a word of what we spoke about to Ma Ke. Mu Zi looked as though nothing happened. I pulled her aside and asked her, "Why aren't you asking me about what Hai Yue and I had talked about?"

Mu Zi held my hand and whispered, "I believe in you!" Her words made me feel a warm current in my heart. I held her hand up to my lips and kissed it deeply. "You're so awesome, my wife!"

Mu Zi pushed my hand away and said, "You're annoying. Let's go! We are reaching the Martial Return City!"

The Martial Return City wasn't big and was smaller than expected. Once I entered the city, I stopped a passerby. "Can you please tell me where the Forest Dragon Magic Academy?"

The random person showed a stupefied expression. "You must be an outsider. Don't you know that this entire city is the surrounding perimeter of the Forest Dragon Magic Academy?"

'Ah! This entire city is the academy's outerior? It can see how high the prestige of the academy is.'

I smiled in return. “Can you please tell me where the center of the Forest Dragon Magic Academy is?”

The passerby pointed in a direction. “You must be here for the examination. There is still quite a way before you reach the enrollment area. You just have to walk straight down this path. You will be able to find the center of the city.”

I told everyone after the passerby left, “It seems that the power that the Forest Dragon Magic Academy holds is not small.”

Ma Ke replied, “Of course! The Forest Dragon Magic Academy is an Advanced Magic Academy that is only second to our Royal Advanced Magic Academy. They are also our strongest opponent.”

We reached the entrance of the Forest Dragon Magic Academy, and although the building wasn’t as luxurious as the Royal Advanced Magic Academy, it still gave off a heavy atmosphere.

I walked up to the guard at the entrance. “Hello, we are from the Royal Advanced Magic Academy. Can I ask.....”

I hadn’t finished what I wanted to say as I was interrupted by the guard. He shouted, “Ah! You are from the Royal Advanced Magic Academy. Please come with me.”

The guard brought us into the Forest Dragon Magic Academy. The academy’s verdant and lush trees and numerous flowers all around us was really pleasing.

He brought us to a big building and said, “Please wait a moment. I will go and announce your arrival.” After he said that, he ran into the building.

After a while, a few people walked out with the guard. I stared at the three other people who walked out. They were all around fifty years old. They showed what kind of magic they used by wearing the fire, water and wind magic robes respectively.

The one wearing the fire magic robe walked up to us. “Welcome to our Forest Dragon Magic Academy. I am the vice Principal. Please come

inside."

They were so polite, we definitely couldn't forget our manners. We bowed simultaneously. "Our greetings to the teachers."

The vice Principal nodded before bringing us into the academy. As we walked, he said, "This is our academy's main school building. You must be ridiculing us."

Si Wa Ming said, "This place is very good and isn't any worse than our academy's. Vice Principal, do you recognize me?"

The vice Principal looked at him and his expression suddenly changed. He was startled and replied, "Ah! Aren't you the one that represented the Royal Advanced Magic Academy at the previous competition, Si Wa?"

Si Wa smiled. "That's me!"

The vice Principal muttered, "Why have you not graduated yet?"

"I was a year two student when I came here previously. I am now in year 5 and will be graduating soon."

We had reached the vice Principal's office at that moment. He led us to sit at the sofa. "I represent the Forest Dragon Academy to welcome you all."

I smiled and said, "You're too courteous. I hope that your team will have mercy against us."

The vice Principal looked at me and said, "It should be you who should be merciful. That's right! According to the procedure, can you let me have a look at the introduction letter?"

I gave the vice Principal the introduction letter that Teacher Zhen had passed to me.

Chapter 8: Arriving in Forest Dragon

After the Vice Principal read through the letter, he sighed. “There are really so many talents in the Royal Magic Academy... All the students are magic scholars, even three years later.. You’re all truly incredible, but can you introduce yourselves? All your names are in this letter; I just don’t know who they refer to.”

“That’s fine. I’m an earth element magic scholar, Si Wa Ming,” he said with a smile.

I said, “Light element magic scholar, Zhang Gong Wei, a Royal Advanced Academy year 3 student.”

Mu Zi said, “Wind element magic scholar, Mu Zi Mo, a Royal Advanced Academy year 3 student.”

Ma Ke said, “Fire element magic scholar, Ma Ke Sai De, a Royal Advanced Academy year 3 student....”

Lastly, Hai Yue said, “Water element magic scholar, Hai Yue Xin, a Royal Advanced Academy year 4 student.”

The vice Principal looked startled as he moved his gaze to me. “I had read the introduction letter and thought that it had been written wrongly. You truly are a light element magic scholar! There aren’t many magicians who are willing to try and learn light magic. It must have been quite difficult for you to train to such a high level.”

I smiled. “You’re far too humble. When we first arrived here, we realized that the entire Martial Return City is the outer perimeter of the Forest Dragon Advanced Magic Academy. You should also have a large number of talented students here.”

The vice Principal replied, “It’s a pity that most of those talented students have gone to the Royal Magic Academy. If you could transfer to this academy, that would be great!”

Mu Zi replied, “I’m afraid that, currently, it would be impossible as we are already rooted in the Royal Magic Academy.”

The vice Principal sighed. “I know it is... It’s just that I desperately pray for exceptional talents. Even if our academy is ranked second in the Kingdom, we are still far from reaching the level of the Royal Advanced Magic Academy.”

Ma Ke spoke up just then. “May I ask if any of the other six academies’ competitors have arrived yet?”

The Vice Principal replied, “Currently, the competitors from the Shell Order Advanced Academy and Contemplation Advanced Magic Academy have arrived, so you’re the third academy to arrive. We also have finished preparations for the arena since the competition will begin in ten days.”

Si Wa replied, “We’ll leave it at that for now. Where will we be staying? After traveling for so many days, we are a little exhausted. Can you please help arrange a place for us to stay?”

The vice Principal chuckled. “Of course! We have already arranged for you to stay at the Forest Dragon hotel. The quality of that place is fairly decent. Since you have traveled from such a distant place, the Principal and I are holding a welcoming reception for you before sending you to the hotel.”

“You’re too courteous. It’s really unnecessary to hold a welcoming reception only for us,” I replied respectfully.

The vice Principal responded, “The five of you are the Kingdom’s jewels. You are able to reach such a high level in magic while being so young. It makes everyone envious. So the welcoming reception... Please don’t refuse us. You will also have the opportunity to taste our delicacies. For now, you can wait here, while I go and get the Principal.” After he said that, he left the office.

“They’re quite polite, and it seems that they don’t have much animosity against us,” I said.

“Right now they are polite. Just wait until the competition starts. It definitely won’t be like now, as everyone will fight with all their might. You should know that this will be noble magicians fighting against ordinary magicians. It’ll be like fighting in a war, so you mustn’t be

careless," said Si Wa as he bitterly smiled.

"A battle of noble magicians against ordinary magicians? It can't be? We aren't nobles," I said, surprise filling my voice.

Ma Ke smiled as he replied, "Boss, you have to think it through. Hai Yue, Si Wa, and I are all nobles, and you're the successor of Teacher Di. Teacher Di currently holds the Duke position so it makes you half a noble. Mu Zi got into the academy through her skills so she is an exceptional talent. She will then be designated as a noble when she graduates. So to say we are mage nobles isn't really wrong."

What Ma Ke said had made sense. Mu Zi said, "It's no wonder why they fight with all their might. They already think the competition will only be nobles against ordinary magicians."

The opening of a door sounded. The vice Principal and a very old magician (who looks similar to Teacher Di) came in. "Let me introduce him to you. This is our academy's Principal, Cha De, wind element magic scholar."

We hastily bowed and said, "Our greetings to the Principal."

The old Principal smiled. "You don't have to be so courteous at my place. You can treat it as though it is your own home. There's no need for etiquette as we don't have too many formalities here. Let's go! Since you have come from afar, you must be hungry. Let's go and have a meal."

I like eating. I also saw Mu Zi's eyes light up. These few days were harsh on her as we didn't eat any proper meals.

After the vice Principal's introduction, we understood that the Forest Dragon hotel had a diner, entertainment areas, and living areas. The high class hotel was for relaxation and it was where all of the competitors would be residing.

When we arrived at the banquet hall, it looked like the vice Principal had already set up everything. The large table, which held many cold dishes, was able to seat 20 people with ease.

The vice Principal said, "You may take your seats first. I will go and

invite the other two academies to our meal. It will be much more lively if everyone comes to eat .”

In just a short moment, the vice Principal returned with ten other people and sat opposite of us, while introducing us. “These few students are the competitors from the Royal Advanced Academy.”

We hurriedly stood up, and Si Wa represented our team and said, “Our greetings to all of you.”

The old magician opposite of us said, “I’m the Contemplation Advanced Academy’s vice Principal. I have brought five of my students to participate in this competition. Please give us some pointers.”

Another middle aged magician said, “I’m Shell Order Advanced Academy’s head instructor and have brought my team here.”

The opposing competitors were mostly fire and wind element magicians. It was obvious that their goal was to be on the offensive. The competitors from the two academies looked calm and collected, as though they didn’t care about us.

When the Forest Dragon’s vice Principal told the waiter to serve the dishes, the 10 of us sat down.

The head instructor from the Shell Order Advanced Academy said, “I heard from the vice Principal that the five competitors are all magic scholars. That’s incredible! I hope that you’ll be merciful during the competition.” Lun Ke Advanced Academy was ranked eighth among the advanced academies. They were the weakest and their capabilities weren’t even comparable to the Royal Intermediate Academy. Their competitors definitely wouldn’t be able to fight against us. He was saying that so as to prevent unnecessary injuries.

Chapter 9: Provoking a Defeated Opponent

Si Wa said, "You're too humble. We aren't as powerful as the Vice Principal describes us to be. We will still need your care and guidance."

One of the students from Contemplation Magic Academy said, "Stop pretending to be gracious! During this competition..." The Vice Principal from the Contemplation Magic Academy glared at him. "What right have you got interrupting him? Are you as strong as him? If you were a magic scholar like him, I would have made way for you." That student looked away but still retained an unsatisfied appearance. With that, the atmosphere of the banquet became a little awkward.

Right at that moment, the dishes were served. Forest Dragon's Vice Principal said, "Alright! Let's dig in. There will still be opportunities for us to interact after the meal."

The food was pretty decent. It seemed like the Forest Dragon's hotel had put some effort into providing a full spread of dishes for us. 'I looked at Mu Zi's large sparkling eyes and her nose that was sniffing continuously - she was just too adorable!' I leaned into her and whispered, "You can't hold back any longer, right? Hehe."

She eyed me silently.

Forest Dragon's Vice Principal said, "I have not treated my guests well enough. Everyone, please dig in!"

We had been waiting for those words to leave his mouth. Mu Zi and I started to wipe out the dishes without a trace of decorum. Si Wa whispered to me, "Zhang Gong, eat slower. Don't let others think we are uncivilised." I slowed my pace after hearing his words. Although he told me to tell Mu Zi the same thing, I couldn't bear to do that as I loved how Mu Zi's gusto in eating her food. It was extremely moving to me.

Mu Zi's eating prowess was gradually exposed she would gobble up at least half of every new dish that was placed in front of her. She didn't even bother to look at her surroundings, concerned only with eating seafood.

Everyone was stupefied. The Vice Principal ordered two more rounds of 10 extra dishes and barely managed to keep the situation under control.

A mocking voice entered my ear at that moment. “Wah! Look at that! The Royal Magic Academy female student eats like a pig, as if her life depended on it. It looks hilarious.”

If he had directed that at me, I would definitely have merely returned his words with only a smile, but he was insulting my beloved Mu Zi, making me instantly rise in rage. I slammed my hand down on the table and shouted at the direction of the voice. “Who are you calling a pig?!” It startled Mu Zi, who was still chowing down on her food. She raised her head, but had no inkling of what was going on.

A skinny fire magician stood up, pointed at Mu Zi and said, “I am referring to her. Why? Are you going to bite me?” His speech made the students in his entourage break into loud laughter.

It is that same brat from the Contemplation Magic Academy. I rapidly started gathering light elements as my entire body simultaneously released an icy realm and emitted a strong killing intent.

After hearing the student’s words, Forest Dragon’s Principal frowned and looked meaningfully at the Contemplation Academy’s vice Principal. The Contemplation Academy’s vice Principal barked, “Hua De, what are you saying? Sit down at once!”

After hearing Hua De insult Mu Zi, even Si Wa could no longer hold back. “Could it be that the students of the Contemplation Magic Academy are lacking in education?” His words made the opposing student glare angrily at him.

I raised my left hand and pointed it to Hua De. “You, get out here and face me!”

The Forest Dragon’s Vice Principal saw that the situation was deteriorating and quickly tried to salvage the situation. “Hua De, quickly apologize to Zhang Gong.”

Hua De ignored Forest Dragon’s Vice Principal and instead muttered,

“She really does look like a pig when she eats, but you don’t allow me to comment on that.”

I could no longer hold restrain myself and raised my hand to attack him, but Si Wa held me back. “Don’t fight here! It wouldn’t be good for us if we destroyed anything here.”

I coldly said, “Alright. Do you dare to face me outside? If you can withstand a single attack from me, I will let you go.”

Except for my team members, who all knew that I was a Magister, the rest of the magicians believed that I was bluffing. Hua De was a Great Mage. To be able to defeat him in a single strike; it would be a little ridiculous.

The Vice Principal of Contemplation was angered by what I said as he thought that I had humiliated his academy. “Alright. Hua De, go spar with that student. I really would like to see how he is going to defeat you with a single strike. Remember, it’s just a single strike.” His last statement was to remind Hua De that he just needed to defend against a solitary strike.

Hua De looked at me viciously and turned to walk out of the hotel. Just as I wanted to follow him out, Mu Zi tugged at my hands that were shaking in anger. “Zhang Gong, let’s just let it go. I admittedly did eat a little too much earlier and can’t really blame anyone for commenting negatively on that.” After she said that, she lowered her head and assumed a pitiable appearance.

On seeing this, my heart broke and stubbornly replied, “If he had insulted me, I wouldn’t have minded. However, he insulted you, who is the person I love the most. I want him to know that he will not be able to bully our Royal Advanced Magic Academy easily!” After saying that, I broke free from Mu Zi’s hold and walked out.

Si Wa followed me and said, “Zhang Gong, don’t expose too much of your strength as we will still need to compete later on.” I understood the meaning behind his words and nodded.

The plaza in front of the hotel was sufficient for our fight. Hua De and I

stood 20 metres apart and stared at each other. I already comprehended the reason behind him rushing out hastily earlier. It was so he would have ample time to cast a few wind defense spells.

I chuckled and said, “Get ready to receive my attack! Light elements! Please form a blade that can conquer every obstacles and eliminate the enemy standing in front of me.” My chant was actually only for show, but in reality, my spell utilised the fusion of battle spirit and elements that I had already prepared.

Hua De was smart enough to know that by solely defending, he wouldn’t be able to block that attack. He immediately shot a large Wind Tornado at me.

I wore a cold smile and completely dominated him with my tyrannic power. Then, I waved my right hand and a golden white large blade struck at him.

The other people had walked out of the restaurant just in time to see my light blade.

Previously, when Teacher Zhen had carelessly received my fusion spell, he had suffered despite his abilities. Needless to say, Hua De, who was only a Great Magician, had no chance at all. The light blade smoothly cut the large Wind Tornado in half and collided head-on with his defence magic. Even though he had insulted Mu Zi, it wasn’t bad enough to warrant in his death. Thus, when the light blade was about to slice his body, I altered the strike to a blade slap that made the blade hit him with its broadside. Just like that, all of his defensive spells completely shattered. He cried out and violently coughed out blood as he was sent flying.

I put my hands down and the corner of my lips curved up as I let out a thin, cold smile. Ma Ke ran over and shrieked, “Wah! Boss, you’re so cool!” All of the people from Contemplation Advanced Magic Academy and Shell Order Advanced Academy were stunned. The Vice Principal of Forest Dragon was so startled by the outcome that his jaw dropped and was at a loss for words.

Chapter 10: Dual Academy Withdrawal

After some time, the vice Principal of the Si Long Advanced Magic Academy snapped back from his shock, running over to embrace Hua De while glaring at me with rage. Hua De was his beloved pupil, and thus, Hua De's arrogant and domineering persona grew as a result of his constant pampering. But this time, he was unlucky to have met and angered me.

I coldly smiled. "You should really educate your student when you head back. You should have known that words are able to cause a great deal of trouble. I held back this time, but if he were to anger me again... I won't be as polite as I was this time."

The face of Contemplation's vice Principal glowed crimson red, and he raised his hand, shooting a fireball at me. "I will stake everything and fight you!" Just when I wanted to counter his attack, Si Wa had already moved in front of me to cast an earth shield, blocking it. "Vice Principal, please conduct yourself with dignity. Zhang Gong won the fight against your student fair and square." he said, as his lips curled into a cold smile.

The vice Principal of Contemplation knew he couldn't fight against us. He carried the severely injured Hua De withanger still painted on his face, and walked to the front of Forest Dragon's Principal. "Our Contemplation Academy no longer has the face to stay. Principal Long Yu, we forfeit this competition."

Principal Long Yu knew he wouldn't be able to make him stay. He could only turn to his vice Principal while his own heart filled with dread... "I will remember all of you. The humiliation and the hatred from injuring my disciple; I won't ever let this go that easily. Let's go!" said the vice Principal of Contemplation, while glowering intensely. And with that being said, he exited with his other disciples to pack up their belongings.

Si Wa walked in front of Principal Long Yu and said, "Principal, we are sorry about creating trouble for you."

What could Principal Long Yu even say? He was too frightened by my

strength. He smiled. “You’re not to be blamed. It was they who were too domineering, not you. We should, however, return and continue our meal..” I thought, ‘This old fox, he didn’t stop our match. It is likely he wanted to gain even a small insight into what amount of power we hold. I will just act dumb this time... I also have no regrets in beating away the Contemplation Advanced Academy so quickly, as we can frighten Forest Dragon, and I also gave Mu Zi her revenge.’ Instead, I am elated! What I didn’t thought about is how the Contemplation Magic Academy had actually gone back in anger. This was great, one less enemy!

Mu Zi pulled me, who was still furious, back to the diner. The Principal and vice Principal of Forest Dragon Academy were definitely more courteous than before. He kept on adding more dishes for us. I had listened to Si Wa prior to the fight, and I was still hungry... But I didn’t care anymore. I pulled Mu Zi along, and beneath the shocked eyes of the surrounding people, I ate my meal like a savage.

The end of this ‘sumptuous’ lunch finally came about, and so, we bid the Principal of Forest Dragon farewell and prepared to head to our rooms for some rest. However, the head instructor of the Shell Order Advanced Magic Academy spoke at that moment. “Can you please wait for a moment before leaving? I wish to announce something with all of us here.”

We stopped and waited to hear what he had to say.

Principal Long Yu of Forest Dragon Academy could already feel like it was going to be bad news. “We have just seen the strength of student Zhang Gong and feel that our Shell Order Academy is unable to compete against him. Therefore, I have decided, in order not to disgrace myself, to forfeit from this competition as well,” said the head instructor of Shell Order.

Principal Long Yu hastily replied, “How can you say that? Don’t we have an agreement?”

“Even if there is an agreement, I won’t allow my students to risk their lives,” replied the head instructor without hesitation. “You also witnessed

the fight. Can you guarantee that even you yourself would have been able to block that strike? My academy's power is weak, and Hua De fought today! My team doesn't even have a single magic scholar, how could we possibly compete? I'm sorry, but we're leaving..." After he said that, he took away his students and even walked right past us.

Although we also bid our farewells, the difference was that we headed to our hotel, which was arranged by Forest Dragon. It actually wasn't that bad since they gave us a large suite. A huge lounge welcomed us, while two bathrooms and five bedrooms were spread along the sides. The decorations weren't very magnificent, but all of the necessities were there. The main satisfaction, however, was in its cleanliness.

Ma Ke lay comfortably on the couch in the lounge. "Wah! Our results today weren't too bad. We just got here, and we already beat one academy and managed to scare away another. Our opponent only has five academies left."

"Even though the situation seems advantageous to us, don't you think we have exposed some of our capabilities a little too much? This will only increase their jealousy toward us." Si Wa said with a deep frown.

"That's right! What Si Wa said makes sense." Mu Zi nodded in agreement.

I muttered, "I've already contributed my portion to that. . I had said that I would defeat him with one strike, so....."

Si Wa smiled. "We can't blame this on you, Zhang Gong. If it was me, I also wouldn't have been able to hold back if my beloved has been insulted. We are lucky, though, that you held back at the last moment and didn't kill Hua De. If not, our grudge with Contemplation would have been even worse."

"Kill?" I replied with eyes wide open. "I didn't even think of that before... It is illegal."

The other four started staring at me with my own expression. It made me feel uneasy. "Why are all of you looking at me like this? Is there something on my face?"

Ma Ke replied, “Boss, are you alright? You’re a Magister! Even if you were to kill someone, it won’t matter as Magisters have a count’s privilege. Say, if you were to kill Hua De, or even that vice Principal, the Kingdom won’t punish you at all.”

I stared at Ma Ke for what seemed to be ages. “This must be why ordinary magicians hate us so much! Nobles! Is being a noble really that good...?”

Mu Zi smacked me. “Stop being so melancholic and moody! We are all exhausted. Let’s have an afternoon nap. I am going to sleep already.” Saying that, she gave her body a lazy stretch, then turned around and heading to her room.

I started following her with a smug grin all over my face. “I’ll help you fix your bed. Hehe.”

Mu Zi walked inside her room but stopped me outside her room. “Don’t look so smug! You think I don’t know about your perverted mind? You want to take advantage of me? No way!” After shouting at me, she pushed me farther away from the room and prevented me from entering.

I helplessly walked back to the lounge. When they saw my discomposure, they laughed, and even the usually quiet Hai Yue grinned.

Si Wa said, “Zhang Gong, you were met with a closed door, right? Where is the light blade that you cast before? Just destroy that door! Haha!”

I glared at him. “I don’t dare. If you dare to, then you can go try. I’m scared of her... I’m doomed for the rest of my life!”

Si Wa said, “I dare even less than you do, and I’m not taking that chance either. If I really entered her room after breaking down the door, I would definitely be hacked to death by you.”

Chapter 11: A Man's Sorrows

The atmosphere of the team was so comfortable. I felt a warmth deep in my heart as I saw everyone getting along with each other. "Big Brother Si Wa, stop teasing me! You're so powerful. How can I be your opponent?"

Si Wa was stunned. "Zhang Gong, this is the first time you call me big brother."

I sighed. "Big brother Si Wa, to be honest, when I first saw you, I've had my guard up. This is because of the relationship after the battle between your teacher, Teacher Du Yu Xi, and us. However, after interacting with you these last few days, I've realized that you aren't an evil person. Moreover, we are similar in many areas. We should definitely become friends. You're also older than me, so naturally I will call you big brother. Hehe."

Si Wa nodded and his eyes were filled with strong emotions. "Alright! I'll recognize you as my brother. Actually, Teacher Xi has had his difficulties while supporting Duke Te Yi. I can't tell you what they are, but you will find out in the future. However, I can assure you that Teacher Xi is a morally upright magician."

I laughed. "I believe what you say. We will be real brothers from now on." I walked over and tightly held onto Si Wa's hand.

When everyone discussed the child of light in later generations, most of them would think that the child of light was successful as he had many powerful and inseparable friends and brothers.

It wasn't until night before they woke up from their dreamland. Mu Zi suggested, "Let's go for a stroll. It wasn't easy to get here. We can't go back empty handed."

I immediately expressed my agreement as it's most important to support my wife. After everyone agreed, we got changed, had dinner, and walked out of the hotel together.

The Martial Return City wasn't very prosperous, but it was still a middle sized city. The various big and small shops were a feast to the

eyes. Mu Zi and Hai Yue were girls after all. They became partners and picked and bought whatever they liked. The three of us men had become their goods storage rack as we walked behind them. In a short while, my body had numerous bags that were hung on me, including some bags from Hai Yue. I could have just tossed them into my spatial space, but Mu Zi was afraid that she might have bought a double of something, so I had to carry them.

I looked at Ma Ke and Si Wa who were sniggering. I had a sudden thought and gave Ma Ke everything that Hai Yue had bought. Hehe. He would definitely not reject me. Even if he did, it wouldn't work. The other thing that made me feel relieved was that even after Hai Yue found out her bags were on Ma Ke, she didn't comment on it. She continued handing me the things she had bought, and I would pass it to Ma Ke.

But I noticed that Ma Ke never expressed any joy.. When the girls were busy choosing a shop, I asked Ma Ke, "Hai Yue allowed you to carry her things. Why aren't you happy?"

Ma Ke bitterly smiled. "Boss, I am not unhappy but just don't dare to be happy. Becoming depressed after so many years of happiness... All I can feel is the larger my hope, the more upset I become. I cannot afford to be depressed again already." 'What he said is true. It isn't easy for him to let go of Hai Yue in his mind and let go of his feelings. If he tries to start that relationship again, I doubt that he would ever be able to move on.' I patted his shoulders. "Brother, the same phrase again. You'll just have to wait for your fate to play out."

The three of us men were extremely exhausted, but Mu Zi and Hai Yue were still full of energy. It must be in a girl's nature. I really couldn't stand it any longer. I shouted at Mu Zi, "Mu Zi, can we have a break? Just look at me, there aren't any more places to put any more things."

Mu Zi turned her head back and saw a pitiful storage rack that hung numerous shopping bags, which was me. I was covered by the numerous items she had bought. Mu Zi said in astonishment, "I have bought so much? I'm nearly done anyway. Let's head back!"

Yay! We were finally released. Ma Ke and I both heaved a sigh of relief. Si Wa laughed at our misfortune on the side. “It is so relaxing not being in a relationship. Haha.” We didn’t have any energy to rebuke him and just wanted to quickly head back to the hotel.

After the long and arduous journey, we finally reached the hotel. I placed Mu Zi’s things in her room. After that, I sat on the couch and no longer had the will to get up. Ma Ke similarly placed Hai Yue’s things at the front of her door and quietly sat on the couch.

Mu Zi leaned towards me. “Zhang Gong, you must be tired.”

I took a breather and said, “That’s right! I can’t even move anymore. Don’t ever ask me to go shopping with you anymore. I really can’t stand it.”

After hearing what I said, Mu Z raised her eyebrows and protested coquettishly, “What did you say? Do you find me annoying?”

When I saw that her getting angry, I hastily held her hand and smiled. “What I said previously is wrong. I am a little tired so my thoughts are now jumbled. What I actually meant was I will definitely go shopping with you often. I can also increase my knowledge that way. Hehe.”

Mu Zi changed from anger to joy and said, “That’s more like it! I’ll help you massage your arms.”

I didn’t work for nothing today. Mu Zi’s tender and delicate hands massaged my arms back and forth. It made me so comfortable that I sighed in satisfaction. ‘This is awesome. I really want to take her out for more shopping.’

Ma Ke looked at our intimate pair and shook his head. He just went back to his room. When Hai Yue saw Ma Ke’s dejected look, her body unexpectedly shuddered.

I pulled Mu Zi and whispered to her, “Can we go to your room? I really want to see what you bought.”

Mu Zi looked at me and said, “You can come to my room, but you mustn’t have any bad intentions.”

‘Damn! I have been seen through by her again.’ I dejectedly replied, “Alright.”

I helped her tidy up everything she had bought while sitting on her floor, and Mu Zi was constantly telling me where to put each item.

I moved my hands in a daze. I didn’t know how long it had been, but I stretched out my hand and didn’t feel any more items. I slowly opened my eyes and looked around. I had finally finished tidying up her things. Mu Zi was lying on her bed and reading a magic spell book. I sat on her bed and gestured to hug her.

Mu Zi was startled and blocked my extended hands. “What are you doing? Are you done packing up already?”

Chapter 12: The Tournament Begins

I nodded with sparkles in my eyes. Mu Zi said vigilantly, “What are you doing? Since you have packed up already, you should go back and rest up. I know that you’re tired.” After she said that, she got out of her bed and pushed me out of the room. I instantly felt a sense of loss. I worked so hard for nothing today. I looked at the closed door and shook my head as I sighed. I just swayed back and forth as I headed back to my room.

Mu Zi’s door suddenly opened. She ran out of the room in a bouncing and vivacious way. She placed her arm around my neck and kissed my face. I was stunned beyond belief. Mu Zi, taking advantage of this, dashed to her room while I stood there in a daze, unable to react.

I touched the spot her moist lips had pressed on just a moment before. I felt a sweet feeling filling my heart. Even though I was unsatisfied, it was still better than nothing.

It seemed that the strength I showed had frightened the Vice Principal and Principal of Forest Dragon. They didn’t invite us to join them anymore. The Vice Principal of Forest Dragon came to our rooms this morning.

When I opened the door, I saw him. I politely said, “You’re here. Please come in.”

The Vice Principal of Forest Dragon sat on the couch. “Tomorrow is the competition. How are your preparations?”

I chuckled and said, “We didn’t know how to prepare. We left it as it is and planned to just compete. So how are we going to compete?”

The Vice Principal smiled. “With your capabilities, this competition will be a breeze for you. You will fight with all of the competitors that the other academies choose. Everyday, you will fight two matches. If you win against the last competitor, the championship will be yours. If any of the other academies win against you, that academy will become the champion.”

I was startled and frowned. “In other words, it will be a tag battle.”

The Vice Principal awkwardly smiled. “It wasn’t arranged like this at first, but the strength that you had shown us was too powerful. Thus, after discussions between the academies, we decided to use this way to compete.”

Ma Ke walked out at that moment. “This method of competition is too unfair. You said you had discussed this with a few of the other academies? Did you discuss this with us? If you want to compete in such a manner, we won’t participate.”

‘That’s true. If we compete in that manner, even if we are strong, we will definitely pay a price for the last victory.’ I thought for a while. “How about this? We will follow your arrangement, but only if we are allowed to compete once a day. You need to at least give us some time to rest.”

The Vice Principal thought for a moment and replied, “Alright. We will go according to what you have requested. I will head back first to change the arrangement.”

After we bid this devious old man away, we had a group meeting to decide how to deal with the situation.

Si Wa said, “I knew the incident from that day would influence the competition. It has actually become a tag battle.”

Ma Ke replied, “That’s right! It was unreasonable for them to make the decision to compete in this manner.”

I replied, “Stop arguing already! It is already finalized. It’s more important to think of a way to deal with the situation. I believe the reason they arranged this tag battle is to decrease our strength before defeating us with a strong opponent at the end. Thus, they will arrange for the competitors to be from their weakest to their strongest. In every match of the competition, it will be a best of five battles. In other words, if the starting competitors are weak, we will be able to win this competition easily. In order to have resting time, I suggest that we fight in two groups. This way, we can rest a day.”

Mu Zi replied, “How can our team of five separate into two groups?”

I chuckled, “Isn’t that easy? Si Wa, Mu Zi and me will be a group and Ma Ke, Hai Yue and me will be the other group.”

Hai Yue replied, “Won’t you be competing every day that way?”

I shrugged my shoulder and said, “It shouldn’t matter. I doubt that they could withstand more than a few of my attacks, so it shouldn’t be too tiring.”

Ma Ke replied, “The suggestion that Boss came up is the best solution right now. Since it is like this, Boss, Mu Zi, and Si Wa will compete first. You must win all of the matches.”

I smiled. “Relax! Don’t you believe in me? It won’t be a problem. If we meet with an extremely strong person during the second part of the competition, I have a secret weapon.”

Ma Ke was startled but made a realization. “Xiao Jin?”

I nodded. “That’s right! It’s him. When Xiao Jin and I combine our might, it would even cause some trouble for Teacher Zhen. Hehe.”

Mu Zi pulled me and asked, “Who is Xiao Jin?”

I replied, “If you give me a kiss, I will tell you.”

Mu Zi hit my head and said, “Don’t even think about that! If you don’t want to say so, then forget it! Who would really want to know about that?”

I rubbed on the spot she had hit. “If you don’t want to kiss, then forget it. Why do you need to be so fierce?” This made everyone break into laughter.

We wore our magic robes the next day. I wore the light magic robe that Teacher Di had given to me, which is white with golden edges. Mu Zi wore a green magic robe to represent that she uses wind element magic. Hai Yue wore a blue magic robe to represent that she uses water element magic. Ma Ke wore a red magic robe to represent that he uses fire element magic. And lastly, Si Wa wore a yellow magic robe to represent that he uses earth element magic.

After putting on their magic robes, everyone looked unusually energetic. When the five colours merged together, it attracted a lot of attention. When we reached the battle arena of the Forest Dragon Magic Academy, there was a vast crowd in front of us. The interiors filled with teachers and students from the academies while commoners crowded the outer area, full of excitement in lieu of the coming matches.

Our arrival stirred up a commotion within the arena after we entered.. The Vice Principal came over and said, “You have arrived. The other competitors of the five academies have already arrived.” After he said that, he led us to where the competitors are.

There were a lot of people sitting at a side. They must be the competitors from the five advanced academies.

The Vice Principal said, “Since all of the competitors are here, let’s start the competition.”

After we all nodded in agreement, we walked to the center of the 3000 square meter competition ground. He announced, “Everyone please keep quiet as the competition is starting. In this round of the competition, the Royal Advanced Magic Academy will be facing the Bi Si Pu Advanced Magic Academy in a tag battle. Can both the teams please decide quickly on their arrangement of competitors and give them to me.”

The arrangement in the competition was chosen by both teams. It was impossible to know who the opposing team would send out, so it was definitely still stochastic.

I walked over and gave him the match line-up\|. The first battle will be me; the second battle will be Mu Zi’s turn; the third battle will be Si Wa’s turn; the fourth battle will be Ma Ke’s turn; and lastly, it will be Hai Yue. We would definitely not allow our opponents to persevere to the end.

Chapter 13: Effortless Victory

After a long while, the Vice Principal reentered the arena. "Alright! For the first battle in the competition, it will be Zhang Gong Wei from the Royal Advanced Academy against Lu Si Nan. The two competitors are requested to enter the arena."

I walked leisurely into the arena with both my hands at my back. My opponent seemed to have a medium build and looked a little younger than me. Judging by his magician robe, he looked like a wind element magician. He was obviously nervous that his opponent was me.

The Vice Principal said, "Alright! The competition begins!" After saying that, he dashed out of the arena to join the rest of the teachers from the Forest Dragon Magic Academy in strengthening the protective barrier.

My opponent bowed to me and said, "Please give me some pointers."

I smiled and said, "You don't need to be polite. Let's battle."

Lu Si Nan silently chanted and waved both his hands and numerous wind blades flew towards me. He actually used such a weak attack against me. I didn't bother increasing my defense spell and casually waved my left hand, sending forth a small dimensional slash. It instantly attracted all of his spells toward it; and even his body was being attracted into it.

I smiled at him, but didn't attack him. "It's best that you retreat, as I don't want to hurt you."

Lu Si didn't respond. It was obvious that he was clenching his teeth before he started to chant his greatest spell. "Free Wind! Use your...."

Hehe! I had achieved my goal, as I wanted him to do that. If not, with his wind like agility, he would still be able to fight me for quite some time. However, he had already chanted his spell and could no longer be stopped. I gathered my fusion spell of battle spirit and elements in my right hand and waited for him to cast his spell.

"Cloud Oppressing Tornado!" It seemed that he had used an advanced

wind spell. It looked like that was his limit though. He was as strong as Hua De and was at most a Great Mage. The difference was that I had good feelings about Lu Si as at least he was a polite student.

I waved my right hand and shot out a white fusion spell, and the audience gasped in surprise. The chaotic wind element was cut in half and the white ray shot directly towards Lu Si.

I was able to freely control the fusion spell due to my large amount of practice. Just as the light blade was going to reach him, I made the fusion spell move to strike at the air and lightly swiped the spell at him, which sent him out of the arena.

It had only been a few minutes since the start of the competition. The Vice Principal frowned as he announced, “Zhang Gong from the Royal Advanced Magic Academy wins the first match.” I knew that in his heart he was wondering, ‘Why was Zhang Gong so powerful? Just what did he use to defeat Lu Si?’

I walked down from the battle stage and told Mu Zi, “It’s up to you now. You have to end the match as soon as possible.” Mu Zi nodded and lightly floated to the center of the battle stage. Her opponent was a fire element magician. It seemed that he was slightly stronger than Lu Si.

After the match began, I was flabbergasted as this was the first time I’ve seen her fight. ‘Is Mu Zi fighting in a competition? She looks as though her life depends on it. It didn’t matter what her opponent was doing. She just continuously shot out advanced multi-directional offensive spells. She is wasting too much magic power this way. Wind element magicians will use their agility and techniques to win the match? I thought she would be able to conserve her magic power better than me. I would never have imagined that she would cast multi-directional offensive spells. I’m impressed.’

I turned to ask Ma Ke, “Does she always fight like this?”

Ma Ke nodded. “Mu Zi’s attacks are always very violent. I don’t know how she can cast her spells quicker than most of us. Though she didn’t cast her spells so casually during the time she was not a true magic

scholar, it was still very incredible when I was defeated by her endless offensive attacks previously.”

As expected, Mu Zi’s multi-directional spell made it difficult for her opponent to withstand her spells. He could no longer withstand her attacks. Mu Zi wasn’t as polite as me. She cast a Wind Tornado to send her opponent off the battle stage. He would be unable to get out of bed for two days after this and that would only be under a magician’s treatment.

Mu Zi’s face was crimson red when she left the battle stage. Zhang Gong said, “Little missy, didn’t I tell you to conserve your magic power? Why did you use a multi-directional spell?”

Mu Zi pouted her lips and replied, “You’re annoying. I am just too lazy to move. Isn’t it better to just stand there and cast continuous attacks? The opponent will just move off the stage by himself after a while.” ‘What else can I say? Isn’t she really lazy?’ I just shook my head and didn’t dare to continue reprimanding this terrifying woman. I held her hand and continued to watch the third match.

Si Wa leisurely walked onto the battle stage. His opponent was a fire element magician. I believed in Si Wa as his magic could counter some fire magic and the difference between his abilities and his opponent’s was large.

Once Si Wa reached the battle stage, he said to his opponent, “You should prepare a few defensive spells as my attacks are very strong. I may accidentally cripple you in the process.” His opponent had already been frightened by the first two matches. After he listened to what Si Wa said, he blankly cast some defensive spells.

I laughed as I watched the battle stage. “Si Wa is so capable. The moment he came onto the stage, he has already diminished the fighting spirit of his opponent.”

Si Wa used a strengthened Earth Spear to sweep at his opponent’s legs. The opponent’s defensive spell wasn’t bad as the earth spear didn’t pierce his defense. It should have been Si Wa’s intention. We didn’t want to hurt others unnecessarily, after all. Although it didn’t pierce through his

defense, his opponent was tossed up high in the sky like a cannon ball. When he landed, he was naturally off the battle stage. I hadn't thought that the one who would win in the easiest way was Si Wa. It looked like he had a lot of experience.

Ma Ke whispered to me, "Si Wa had always used this move to defeat a lot of his opponents in the academy. His earth magic's main special points is its unpredictableness and its strong defense. You won't know where he is going to pierce you from."

The Vice Principal of Forest Dragon announced, "The Royal Advanced Academy has won by the overall score of three to zero. The second match will be held tomorrow."

We didn't think that we could win so easily. We couldn't help but relax a little.

Si Wa said, "Since I didn't use up much energy today, let me compete again tomorrow. . We will let Mu Zi rest, so Zhang Gong, Ma Ke, and I will make up tomorrow's team."

The second day's match was the same as the previous day as we won the first three battles. But Ma Ke and Si Wa faced some opponents who were quite strong, so they had to put in some effort to win their battles.

Chapter 14: Suffering Heavy Casualties

It would be Mu Zi, Hai Yue, and I who would compete during the third day of the competition, due to the fact that Si Wa and Ma Ke had used up most of their energy.

Mu Zi and I won the first two battles easily, but the third match would have to be fought by Hai Yue who had never appeared on the battle stage.

Hai Yue looked a little depressed and walked onto the battle arena listlessly. When she raised her head, her heart shuddered as her opponent looked similar to Feng Liang. Hai Yue just stood there and stared blankly at her opponent with a myriad of thoughts passing through her mind. At that moment, her heart was in pain, so she just stood there, rooted to her spot.

Her opponent didn't think that Hai Yue was acting strangely and was instead was extremely nervous as our team hadn't yet lost a single battle. He chanted his spells with his head bowed. I was amazed that he could actually form a power ball. It seemed that guy actually had the power of a magic scholar.

His powerball was green in colour as he was a wind magician. However, one could see that it was difficult for him to control the powerball as it flew towards Hai Yue at a slow pace.

There was no one who cared for Hai Yue as much as Ma Ke, so he had already realized that something was wrong with Hai Yue. He shouted at Hai Yue, but Hai Yue was in a trance and didn't hear him, focusing on her inner thoughts instead

My mind screamed out 'This is bad!' as the powerball was extremely strong. Even if she was fully awakened from her trance, she still might not be able to deal with it easily. Furthermore, she would be totally unprepared.

I used my magic power to make my voice form a line to reach her ear and shouted.

The loud voice made Hai Yue snap back to reality. Hai Yue was startled

and raised her head, and saw the powerball had already closed in on her. Hai Yue wasn't a Magister so she needed time to chant her spells. She knew at this point she didn't have any way to dodge this offensive spell, and so she had totally given up on countering the attack. She just made a resolute expression which showed her willingness to die for a righteous cause.

Just when the powerball was about to deal a death blow to her, a red figure suddenly appeared in front of her, shielding her by using his body to stop its the advance. That red figure was none other than Ma Ke.

I shouted from below the battle stage, "Ma Ke!" When the powerball came in contact with Ma Ke, the power of the powerball had succeeded in breaking the simple defense spell that he had cast on himself and hit his chest heavily. Ma Ke cried out in pain and was sent flying. Hai Yue was in shock as she saw what had happened. After seeing Ma Ke's figure which was blown away, she hastily gathered her magic power to catch him, but Ma Ke's momentum was too powerful and they were both thrown off the battle stage.

The surrounding observers erupted in an uproar. The vice Principal ran over and asked, "What is going on? Why did you send two of your members onto the stage?"

I didn't have the time to deal with him and bluntly stated, "We concede defeat for this match," before sprinting towards Ma Ke.

I didn't have the capacity to bother about rebuking Hai Yue at that point and immediately used an advanced recovery spell on Ma Ke. The white light enveloped Ma Ke's entire body and managed to bring him back from the Death God.

Si Wa was already on the battle stage. We didn't plan for him to participate in any matches today, but we were forced to send him out after this incident.

I checked Ma Ke's breathing and monitored on his pulse, and heaved a sigh of relief as he wasn't in immediate danger of dying. However, his meridian channels had been thrown into disarray by the shock of the

strong magic power. The worst case scenario would be if his fire elements were to become turbulent and flowed throughout his body. I let out a sigh and waited to get back to the hotel before continuing his treatment

Right then, Si Wa exited the battle stage. He walked over, thoroughly exhausted and asked, “How is Ma Ke?”

I coldly glared at Hai Yue and replied, “He isn’t in mortal danger for now. But this may not always be the case.”

Hai Yue hugged Ma Ke and weeped, continuously muttering, “Ma Ke, why are you so foolish? Why did you save me?”

I said with hatred, “Ma Ke is foolish to the point of his brain emitting foam. He knows that you have no love for him and yet still risked his life to protect you.”

Even though we had eventually attained victory in the third match, we had lost Ma Ke as a team member and knew that Hai Yue wouldn’t be a participant tomorrow either. Who would dare let her take the stage again? There wouldn’t be another Ma Ke to shield her from the opponent’s blows this time.

After returning to the hotel, our moods were unusually depressed. Hai Yue had used her strength to carry Ma Ke back and didn’t allow any of us to interfere with it.

She gently placed Ma Ke, whose face was pale white, on the bed, and suddenly knelt in front of me and painfully wailed, “Zhang Gong, I’m begging you! Please....Please save Ma Ke!”

Mu Zi hastily pulled her up and said, “Hai Yue, don’t be like this. Zhang Gong will do his best.”

I sighed and said, “Ma Ke is my brother. How can I not save him? However, because his injury is too severe, I can only temporarily keep his heart beating. We will give up on the competition and immediately head back to the academy as only Teacher Zhen will have the ability to treat Ma Ke.”

Ma Ke hoarsely and softly voiced out at that moment. We hastily

gathered at his side. There was blood flowing from the corner of his lips. He forcefully opened his eyes and said in short gasps, "Boss... My brother... It looks like I can't continue any longer... You must... win the competition... Please don't... give it up... just because of me..."

I anxiously said, "How can I do that? You must undergo treatment as soon as possible."

Hai Yue came over and rubbed Ma Ke's face. "Ma Ke, why are you so silly? You must get well!"

Ma Ke raised his hands with great difficulty and wiped the tears from Hai Yue's face. He smiled and uttered in short gasps, "Hai... Yue... you are shedding tears for me... I am already... very happy. After I die... you must... take good care of yourself... and not let your thoughts... overwhelm you..."

I held Ma Ke's hand and said, "You should also stop overthinking. You will definitely be fine."

Ma Ke smiled and continued to utter in short gasps, "Boss... I know... how bad my own condition... You don't need... to console me... but I have one last request... that I must ask of you... I beg of you... help me to take good care of Hai Yue... and you must become the champions... It is our responsibility... and possibly my last one... You must help me... accomplish it... I know that... with your power... you will definitely... be able to succeed..."

Chapter 15: Ma Ke's Crisis

I anxiously said, "But... What will we do about your wounds?"

Ma Ke bitterly smiled and replied in short gasps, "It... doesn't matter anymore... Boss, didn't you say... that we should accept our fate...? If I... am really not meant to die... then I won't die. You must... become the champions... and let the other academies know... that we... are the strongest..." After he said that, he fainted and a stream of blood continued to pour out from the corner of his lips.

I exclaimed, "Ma Ke, Ma Ke!!!"

Hai Yue stayed beside Ma Ke's body and wailed painfully till her voice gave out. I sighed and straightened my body, silently vowing to obtain the championship. I looked at Hai Yue and thought, 'If I knew this would happen, I would not have arranged for her to come along.'

I said, "Hai Yue, I will have to trouble you to treat Ma Ke. As he has a fire natured physique, the effect of your water recovery magic should not be bad. I will treat him again for now and stabilize his condition. After two more days of the competition, we will immediately head back to our academy to treat Ma Ke."

Hai Yue nodded.

I started to chant my strongest recovery spell. "Great light elements, please use your unceasing holy light to treat the injuries before you and use your merciful heart to save the life in front of you, Heart of the Holy Light!"

The surrounding light elements gathered around me and gradually enveloped me within them. The white light ray slowly became golden. It didn't have any offensive intent, but was compassionate instead.

I made the light elements form a heart shape. A sparkling heart made of the Holy Light slowly appeared in front of me. I extended my right hand and the golden heart floated toward the pale looking Ma Ke and instantly entered his chest. Ma Ke's entire body became similar to when I gathered the light elements and emitted a dazzling gold light. His pale

face became faintly red.

After a long time, the golden light halo disappeared. I checked Ma Ke's pulse and realized his erratic pulse was slightly better. Furthermore, both his Qi and blood flow were smoother than before. I let out a long breath. My body wavered a little as after using the advanced recovery spell, I had used a big portion of my energy.

Mu Zi hastily supported me. I told Hai Yue, "I will leave the rest to you. You will have to treat him every two hours. That should be able to stabilize his condition for now. I'm gonna go rest."

Mu Zi helped me back to my room and used a wet cloth to wipe the perspiration from my forehead. She asked worriedly, "Zhang Gong, how are you faring?"

I replied, "I'm fine, I merely used too much of my magic power. I am most worried about Ma Ke's condition. I used an advanced recovery spell, but was still unable to treat his wound. I am afraid that even Teacher Zhen will be unable to treat him after we return to school."

Mu Zi sighed. "We will have to see our luck then. I also hope that nothing will happen to Ma Ke."

I smiled. "This is Ma Ke's predestined fate. If he manages to overcome this hurdle, he will definitely be able to win Hai Yue's heart. Ma Ke, my brother, you must survive this ordeal."

Mu Zi, Si Wa, and I meditated to recover our magic power as fast as we could for the fourth match tomorrow.

We had checked on the more or less stabilized Ma Ke the next day. We didn't tell Hai Yue before sneaking out of the room and running to the battle arena.

After reaching the Forest Dragon's arena, the Vice Principal came over to us. He asked in astonishment, "Why are there only three of you?"

I shot him a bitter smile. "Our teammate is in extremely bad condition from yesterday's injuries and another of my teammates stayed back to look after him, so naturally, only the three of us have come." After the

Vice Principal heard what I said, I saw signs of joy radiate from his eyes. Did he really think that this would be enough to beat us with ease? I thought with hatred, 'I will definitely let him see some of my might today!' I didn't hold back any more in the competition, seriously injuring my opponent with an irresistible force and easily won the first battle.

Mu Zi's opponent was extremely powerful. It was obvious they saw we had only three members and had arranged to place the strongest competitors of the team to the starting battles. Mu Zi had won the battle with a strenuous effort. She collapsed in my arms right after walking out of the battle arena. I realized that Mu Zi had used up an exceptionally large amount of magic power, and would definitely not be able to recover in time for tomorrow's matches. Tomorrow, we would be facing our strongest opponent in this competition, Forest Dragon Magic Academy. 'What am I going to do? Ma Ke is already seriously injured. I can't bear to let Mu Zi be hurt.'

Si Wa's opponent was the strongest competitor we have faced so far in this competition. It was a fire element magic scholar. He seemed to be his academy's head teacher in fire magic, who was approximately 50 years in age and had exceptionally strong power.

This was the first time that I got to see Si Wa's strong defence as his opponent was really powerful. He didn't counter his opponent and instead stubbornly guarded against his opponent to wear down his opponent's magic power. Their magical beasts battled, but neither side could get an edge against the other. The entire battle lasted for three hours. Finally, his opponent used up the entirety of his magic power and was thrown out of the battle stage after Si Wa forcefully used an earth spear to strike at his opponent.

Although we managed to win all four matches, my heart sank to the bottom of the valley. Tomorrow would be our last battle and I was the only one in full battle condition. Moreover, we would be facing opponents that would be stronger than any competitors we fought up to this point.

I looked after Mu Zi and Si Wa, who were drained of energy, after returning to the hotel. When I went to Ma Ke's room, I found Hai Yue

sleeping beside Ma Ke's body. She appeared to be terribly tired.

After checking on Ma Ke and finding out that his condition hadn't worsened, I relaxed my worrying heart a little.

I sat on the couch at the lounge and ruminated, 'How are we going to fight tomorrow? Mu Zi and Si Wa's conditions aren't good. I'm afraid that they won't even be able to use half of their magic power. They will only lose their battles.' I clenched my teeth and made a decision.

I called Mu Zi and Si Wa to the lounge in the morning. From their exhausted expressions, I knew that they weren't able to recover a lot of their magic power.

Si Wa said, "Zhang Gong, we should head out already. If not, we won't be able to make it to the arena on time."

I nodded. "I will be the only one going. The two of you won't need to go."

Mu Zi was startled. "How can we let you compete by yourself?"

I bitterly smiled. "Can you even fight in your conditions? It would be useless even if you went up the stage. Don't forget that I'm a Magister. I will negotiate with Forest Dragon to fight all three battles myself and will definitely be the last one standing."

Chapter 16: Facing the Enemy Alone

Mu Zi rebuked with a grave voice. “No! How can I let you risk your life alone? I definitely won’t allow you to do so.”

I replied, “Have you got any better ideas then? Don’t worry! I still have Xiao Jin. He is a dragon king whose ability is definitely not inferior to mine. Do you really think that two Magisters will be defeated by three magic scholars? You all worrying too much.”

Si Wa anxiously replied, “But...”

I interrupted him. “Stop talking! I have decided! Don’t even bother accompanying me, as I will be able to concentrate better without you there.. Mu Zi, be a good girl and wait for your husband’s good news.”

Mu Zi, strangely, didn’t rebuke me after I self-proclaimed myself as her husband. She leaned toward me and tightly clung on my arm. I felt her worries clearly. After a short moment, Mu Zi raised her head and said with determination, “Zhang Gong, you can go and battle by yourself, but I will go to the arena with you. I want to see you defeat those bastards from Forest Dragon. They actually dared to plot such an underhanded method to compete against us... You mustn’t hold back against them.”

Si Wa chimed in, “I must also go with you.”

Even after trying to convince them repeatedly, I was still unable to change either Mu Zi’s or Si Wa’s mind at all. Seeing that the time for the competition was nearing, I had no choice but to bring Mu Zi and Si Wa along to the arena.

The Vice Principal of Forest Dragon smiled as he came over. “Will you be competing like yesterday?”

I shook my head. “I will be the only one competing.”

He asked in astonishment, “How are you going to compete by yourself?”

I glared at him. “Why isn’t it possible? Won’t it work if I fight all three of the matches?”

The Vice Principal of Forest Dragon looked at me, finding it a little

difficult to make a decision. “How about this? I will go and discuss this with the representatives from the other academies. Please wait for a moment.”

After a while, he came back looking a little embarrassed.

I asked, “How did the discussion go?”

The Vice Principal of Forest Dragon said, “They have decided to let you compete by yourself, but on one condition.”

I frowned and asked. “And what would that be? Just say it.”

The Vice Principal of Forest Dragon awkwardly said, “They want you to fight against five people and determine the outcome of the battle with a single match.”

Mu Zi lost her temper and cursed loudly, “Are you still human? How can one person fight against five? It’s too unfair. Zhang Gong, let’s go! Let’s not compete anymore!”

The Vice Principal replied, “If you don’t compete, it will mean you have forfeited this competition.”

I coldly looked at him, causing him to move two steps back in fright. I clenched my teeth and said in an icy voice, “I will compete, but don’t blame me for not reminding you: I will definitely not hold back any longer!.” Their despicable acts had thoroughly enraged me. This was the first time I wanted to eliminate my opponents.

The coldness radiating from my body had caused the temperature in the surroundings to decrease drastically. I extended my hand to stop Mu Zi from discouraging me. “Please don’t meddle in this. I really want to see what tactics they will employ.” I took out my magic staff from my spatial space. I knew this match would be just as dangerous as with the battle against Si Feng Ri.

I rapidly gathered light elements to me as I stood at the center of the battle stage. The surrounding light elements became chaotic as I was enraged.

The opponents I faced were two fire element magicians, two wind element magicians, and one earth element magician. It looked like two of them were students and the others were at least forty years in age. This should be the strongest team that Forest Dragon had. The Vice Principal announced, "The match begins!"

I wordlessly cast my fusion spell of battle spirit and light elements. The opponents stood behind the earth element magician. They unhurriedly cast multiple advanced defensive spells.

When the fusion spell came in contact with their defensive spells, the sky lit up. I was rebounded backwards and moved a few steps back. I couldn't help but to inhale a cold breath as I realized that my opponents were all magic scholars.

They didn't attack me, but instead released their magical beasts. With the magical beast fighting in front of them, I was slowly being suppressed. A strong pressure made my magic robe flutter. I was obviously in a disadvantageous position.

The Principal and Vice Principal watched the match and smiled as they thought that victory was already in their grasp.

I clenched my teeth and shouted, "Xiao Jin, come forth!" This was the first time that I had used my magical beast since the start of the competition. There was a flash of golden light, and Xiao Jin immediately used his body to act as my shield as he realized that there were strong enemies threatening me. He didn't need me commanding him and immediately released his defensive dragon breath. This instantly lessened the pressure on my body and I heaved a sigh of relief.

I took advantage of the fact that they had not snapped out of their shock from seeing Xiao Jin and started to chant my strong magic spell. I raised the magic staff in my hand and chanted, "Light elements! My great friends! I beseech of you to use your powers to become endless brilliant rays, transform into specks of stars and eliminate the enemies in front of you, Bright Star's Shine!" This was my advanced light magic spell. It was extremely powerful and, moreover, I could freely control it.

The surrounding light elements became beads of golden light that gathered at my upper dantian. It slowly formed into a dazzling light ball, and looked like a miniature sun while emitting light rays. I softly said, “Break!” The light ball instantly transformed into small light stars that surrounded me.

One of the opponent’s fire element magician, “Everyone! Be careful! The opponent is going to use a strong magic spell. Quickly cast defensive spells and order your magical beast to attack the opponent’s magical beast!”

All of the opponent’s seventh to eighth grade magical beast attacked Xiao Jin. When light stars appeared in front of me, I also commanded Xiao Jin to attack.

Xiao Jin shrieked as he roared. He flapped his enormous wings and tackled the two wind elemental magical beasts and shot a dragon breath at the earth elemental magical beast.

I had completed my Bright Star’s Shine, which covered the sky with light stars that headed towards the five magicians.

The five opponents already knew that this spell would definitely be difficult to counter and they all released their strongest protection spells.

When the light stars were reaching the opponent’s barrier, I smiled and drew a circle with the magic staff in my hand. The light stars suddenly stopped in mid-air and rapidly rearranged themselves like a troop of soldiers forming a straight line before they shot towards their defensive barrier like a streak of lightning.

The five magical beast’s strengths were much weaker than Xiao Jin’s so they were beaten up by Xiao Jin. In a short moment, Xiao Jin had defeated all of them and came to assist me.

Chapter 17: Life's Flame

The thick defensive barrier rippled beautifully as the stream of light stars came into contact with it. My five opponents didn't have the time to admire the scene and shouted, "Not Good!". My light stars had pierced through their solid defensive barrier. Even though it didn't have a lot of force, it had made all of my opponents cough out a mouthful of blood. I had managed to turn the table on them.

Just as I wanted to attack them, my body suddenly went soft. I screamed inwardly, 'This is bad. These days were too stressful and I haven't had enough rest.' After releasing that advanced magic spell, I was left with not much magic power. In actuality, I had forgotten that I had been simultaneously supporting Xiao Jin in his battle. Even though Xiao Jin could gather his own magic power, he still required some of mine.

Xiao Jin roared and I saw that he had forcefully gathered the five opposing magical beasts and shot a light ball at them. They flew back and could no longer get up. My anxiety eased up little. However, when I wanted to command Xiao Jin to attack my opponents, I saw a strange sight.

All five of my opponents stood in a line, hand in hand, with a determined expression on their faces. The earth element magician, who was in the middle, said, "For the honor of our academy, we will go all out!"

The other four opponents shouted, "That's right, for the honor of our academy!"

Afterwards, their faces started to shine with heavenly light rays.

I had experienced that once, so I knew what they were going to do. I shouted, "Stop!" However, it was already too late as the five of them chanted, "Great Creation God, Please release my life's potential and burn my life's flame!"

This was bad, as they were burning their life forces. They had temporarily increased their power with their life force as the price of getting that power. The five bodies lit up with different colours, according

to their magic elements.

Xiao Jin felt that this was bad and immediately flew and landed in front of my body.

I sighed. “Is this really worth it? Is victory that important to you? Why are you burning your precious life force?”

One of my opponents wind element magician coldly said, “You can just stop pretending already! We have seen enough of your noble countenance. Our life is just that useless. Can you do something about that?”

The fire element magician in middle center said, “Don’t bother talking to him. Our time is running out. Everyone, quickly start your attacks!”

The burning of their life force had instantly healed the serious injuries on their bodies. Three different magic element spells violently attacked me.

Mu Zi who was below the battle stage screamed. If it weren’t for Si Wa who had held her back, she would have ran up onto the battle stage.

Xiao Jin extended his wings to block the majority of the attacks. I expended a lot of my strength as I fought back. How was this good? I used my defensive spell to fight back against the opponent’s advance. Suddenly, I noticed that Xiao Jin was gradually moving backwards. It seemed that it was too strenuous for him to block the five magic scholars who had burned their life forces.

I definitely wouldn’t let them hurt Xiao Jin. I gathered as much battle energy as I could to help contribute to the energy needed for Xiao Jin’s next move, but the opponent’s attacks were too strong. No matter if it was the Heaven Devouring Flame Dragon, the Tyrant Tornado, or a Meteor; they were all extremely powerful. Xiao Jin couldn’t hold back any longer. His golden scales spilled out blood and his large clear eyes slowly dimmed.

‘No! I can’t let Xiao Jin die again!’ I forcefully withdrew him into my body and instantly got ready to receive all of the attacks. The opponent’s attack had succeeded in breaking through barrier after barrier that I had

cast.

The magic robe would help its owner in times of emergency. The gemstone on my chest emitted a light ray as my last line of protection.

As the opponent's attack ceased, I supported my seriously injured body with my magic staff. Fresh blood unceasingly flowed from my mouth. The magic gemstone on my light magic robe had already shattered; It had used its life to protect me. Mu Zi looked crazed as she wanted to come to my side. My body swayed, but I stood up and waved my hand at Mu Zi, saying with a low voice, "I haven't lost yet!"

Wah! I spat out another mouthful of blood. I knew that I had already reached my limit.

I looked at my opponents and saw that they weren't in a good state either. Their faces had paled and the flames that burnt their life force had already dimmed.

I couldn't hold on any longer. My body was already unable to use any spells. My battle spirit was also unable to circulate in my seriously injured channels.

I smiled gloomily, 'Am I really going to lose?'

I thought about Ma Ke who was always able to dash in bravely with no thought of his personal safety. 'I am afraid that he will never be able to stand up on his own anymore. His last wish is for me to become the champion.'

Ma Ke, is your boss done for already? No..No..No! I can do it! I must accomplish my brother's last wishes.'

I gave a loud and desperate roar towards the heavens and relied solely on my will and walked towards my opponent step-by-step.

The Principal and Vice Principal of Forest Dragon Academy stood up with all of the observers. Everyone's heart had already leapt up to their throats. The Principal and Vice Principal were already preparing themselves to have their first victory against the Royal Advanced Magic Academy in their entire history of competing.

Suddenly, I felt a warm power surge in my body. I remembered the power that had helped me block Hai Yue's attack after defeating Feng Liang Ri.

The warm power rapidly flowed through my body. I felt that the broken channels in my body seemed more comfortable. I stopped moving, tightly closed my eyes and let that warm power treat my tattered body.

The five opponents looked at my perseverance and expressed looks of respect. However, they raised their hands to prepare their last attack as that was the last remnant of their magic powers. The earth element magician wore a slightly reluctant expression.

My body slowly emitted heavenly powers that slowly formed into a golden halo. My opponents were startled, but had already released their final attacks.

Two Tornadoes, two Fire Snakes (As they weren't able to form a Fire Dragon due to a lack of power, I will use Fire Snake to describe their attack) and a large meteor shot towards me.

Mu Zi and Si Wa saw this happening and ran with all their might to enter the battle stage. However, they were prevented from approaching me by an invisible power when they were 10 metres away from me.

Chapter 18: The Holy Sword Awakens

I raised my head and my eyes had become completely gold in colour. There was a reflection behind my back. If you looked carefully, you would see that the reflection was as though there were six wings that were continuously flapping.

I raised my right hand and a strong light sword appeared that eliminated the opponent's attacks just as water extinguishes flame. In mid air, their attacks simply disappeared. Just as the sword of light was about to reach the opponents, the pierce changed to a slap, which resulted in them flying out of the battle stage.

This theatrical change in the events caused the entire arena to become dead silent.

The gold light surrounding my body dimmed as my entire body started to slump and collapsed on the floor.

There were signs of dejection in the eyes of the Principal and Vice Principal, as they looked at each other in dismay. It came as no surprise since even after having such a great advantage over their opponent, they still lost the battle. Nobody would be willing to accept such a situation.

Si Wa carried me and Mu Zi checked my pulse. After realizing that my pulse was stable, she heaved a sigh of relief.

The Vice Principal walked onto the stage, disappointedly, and announced, "This is the end of the Eight Advanced Academies Competition. The final victor is the Royal Advanced Magic Academy." Even though I collapsed on the battle stage, I was still on it. It seemed that they still had some morality. They didn't lie brazenly and announced our victory.

Si Wa and Mu Zi were elated, but were more worried about my injuries. They didn't care for those people from Forest Dragon and directly carried me back to the hotel.

I felt like I was in a dream. There were bright stars in my surroundings. I looked at all of the unfamiliar things around me, as I was in an

extremely vast space. I muttered, “Where am I? It can’t be that I died right?”

A clear and powerful voice voiced out, “Child, you have not died yet. This is our internal heart’s divine space.”

The sudden voice frightened me. I immediately looked around, only to find no life forms around me.

“Stop searching for me, child. You won’t be able to find me, as I am currently in your heart.”

‘What? He says that he is in my heart.’ I curiously asked. “Who are you?”

“Do you still remember the Holy Sword that the God King gave you? That’s me. If you really want to call me by something, you can call me Mi Jia Lei. I’m using my remaining consciousness to communicate with you.”

I asked in astonishment, “Are you the Radiant God’s battle angel, Mi Jia Lei, that the God King mentioned to me?”

The clear voice chuckled. “Child, it has been such a long time since I’ve heard that name. Your words have made me feel some warmth.”

“Why am I able to communicate with your consciousness?”

“Your determination has released the Holy Sword, so you are now able to communicate with me.”

I said in surprise, “I have released the Holy Sword. So in other words, I can finally use the Holy Sword.”

Mi Jia Lei replied, “Child, you’re thinking too naively. You can only use a very small portion of the Holy Sword’s power. If you really want to use its full power, you must inherit the power that I had left at the Sky Splitting Great Valley.”

What he said was the same as what the God King had said. I nodded. “I will definitely go there.”

Mi Jia Lei replied, “Even though you were seriously injured this time, you also gained a lot, including the ability to control a small portion of

the Holy Sword. You will have to practice a lot to use it freely though. I do not have a lot of remaining consciousness left. I will be able to communicate with you after you come to the Sky Splitting Great Valley. You have to remember that you have to use the Holy Sword's power to break the seal at the Sky Splitting Great Valley. Our human and God clan's future will rely greatly upon you. Child, you must work hard..." His voice became weaker as he spoke until it completely vanished.

The surrounding star light gradually dimmed. When everything turned dark, I lost my consciousness.

After awakening again, I felt intense pain all over my body. I knew that I had come back to reality.

I forcefully opened my eyes and was moved when I found Mu Zi lying beside my bed. Judging from her pale face, she must have been exhausted.

I tried to circulate my internal magic powers. I was surprised to find that the transparent Gold Dan had disappeared; only to be replaced by two small solid Gold Dans that were similar to the Gold Dan I had initially. It seemed that it wasn't a dream last night. What Mi Jia Lei said was right. I really had some profit from the Holy Sword. Even though the two Gold Dan's combined power isn't as powerful as the transparent Gold Dan, I know that if I could practice it to the point that they became transparent, I would have broken through from the Magister level and be headed towards becoming a Grand Magister.

Aside from the two Gold Dan, I found another strange change in my body. The battle spirit in my dantian had warm powers. It should be from the power of the Holy Sword.

After circulating the battle spirit of the Holy Sword to make it slowly move around my dantian once. My entire dantian seemed to warm up. A comfortable warm power was emitted from my dantian. It permeated through my entire body and treated my injuries. The painful areas immediately felt better after the power passed through them. So, the Holy Sword had such a function. It was even better than my light recovery spells.

After making the Holy Sword's power circulate my body thrice, I could finally move. I extended my hand and caressed Mu Zi's messy silky hair. I softly called out, "Mu Zi , wake up! Mu Zi, wake up!"

Mu Zi dazily sat up and opened her groggy eyes. When she saw that I was up, she immediately woke up and said excitedly, "Zhang Gong, you're awake! You scared me." After saying that, she threw herself at me and wailed.

She touched my wounds as she did that. I hugged her waist and replied, "Little missy, please be a little more gentle."

Mu Zi remembered that my serious injuries were still recovering. She hastily got up from my body and replied with deep concerns, "Sorry! I am just so happy that I forgot you haven't fully recovered."

Even after she had already sat up, I had no intentions to stop hugging her. Hehe! 'It's a rare chance to do so.'

Mu Zi asked, "How are you feeling? Better?"

I smiled and nodded. "You don't have to worry. I'm fine. After I rest for a while, I will be alright." 'With the power of the Holy Sword to help me recover, I believe that I will fully recover very quickly.'

Chapter 19: A New Understanding

A satisfied expression was shown on her face. “I won’t allow you to risk your life like this ever again. You don’t know just how worried I was. You were unconscious for a day and a night.”

I asked in amazement. “It has been a day and a night already? How is Ma Ke? We should head out of the city as soon as possible.”

Mu Zi said dejectedly, “Ma Ke hasn’t woken up since that day, but his condition is still quite stable. He should still be able to stay in that state temporarily.”

I heaved a sigh of relief. “Mu Zi, you go and inform Hai Yue not to worry. After resting for a day, my magic power will recover. I will then set a large teleportation array to send us directly back to the academy.”

Mu Zi said in amazement. “You also know how to create arrays? If you can use teleportation arrays that will be great, it will save us a lot of time. I’ll go tell Hai Yue about this great news.”

I chuckled. “Quickly go and tell her! Your husband has a lot of abilities.”

Mu Zi’s delicate face reddened. “You’re so annoying!” She turned and ran off.

I immediately started to train so that it wouldn’t be too late for Ma Ke to be treated. I continuously circulated the Holy Sword’s power to repair my damaged meridian channels. After just five hours of repairing, all of my meridian channels had fully recovered. The recovery rate had left me in an exceptionally astonished state.

I walked to the lounge with Mu Zi and Si Wa to eat our dinner together. They were shocked at my recovery speed. We had initially asked Hai Yue to join us, but she said she would eat in Ma Ke’s room to accompany him.

I told Mu Zi, “It is not good for Hai Yue to continue to be like this. Ma Ke hasn’t gotten any better. By the time he gets his treatment, she will be totally exhausted.”

Mu Zi nodded. "That's right, but I already advised her about that a couple of times. She just doesn't listen to me."

After dinner, I returned to my room and sat on my bed. I started to meditate for the first time since my two gold dans had formed.

I carefully moved the two gold dans as I didn't know what would happen. The gold dans were courteous and didn't give me much trouble. They maintained a certain distance between each other as they moved with one in front of the other. Even though the absorption rate of my magic power didn't increase much, the compression rate was clearly much faster. All of the magic power that entered my body was quickly compressed and became liquified. There would also be a larger space for me to gather bigger amounts of light elements this way.

After an entire night of meditation, my body surged with magic power. Even though it wasn't as much as my best state, it was already very powerful. The two gold dans were much more solidified than from the time that I woke up.

I went to Ma Ke's room at dawn. Hai Yue was lying beside his bed with her pale white face. I checked on Ma Ke and it was as Mu Zi said. His condition had stabilized and the chaotic fire elements in his body were being suppressed by Hai Yue's water recovery spell, but this was still a bad sign in the long run. I tried to use the power of the Holy Sword to help treat Ma Ke, but I didn't know why the warm power produced by the Holy Sword wasn't able to leave my dantian.

After trying for a couple of times, I finally gave up.

I woke Hai Yue up and sternly told her, "Hai Yue, you can't continue to be like this. I am fine already. You should eat something and go rest in your room."

Hai Yue shook her head. "I want to stay with him until he gets better."

I replied, "Even if you want to stay with him, you should rest up as well. Mu Zi should have said this to you before. I am planning to use a teleportation array to teleport us back to the academy. With your body's condition, you won't be able to withstand the distorted space. If

something happened to you during the teleportation, how am I going to explain to Ma Ke?"

Hai Yue raised her head and stared at me for a long time before saying, "Alright! I will listen to you."

I extended my right hand and placed it on her forehead and used a recovery spell on her. I was amazed to find that the originally light ray of the intermediate recovery spell had turned into a golden ray instead. Hai Yue's face flushed red under the help of the magic spell.

After the golden light flashed past, Hai Yue released a sigh of comfort. She opened her eyes and said, "Zhang Gong, what spell did you use? It seems different from before. My body feels as though it is filled with energy."

I also didn't understand what was going on. It should be related to two of my gold dans and Holy Sword.

I told Hai Yue, "This only treats the symptoms but not the roots of the problem. You still need to rest to recover your body's function. I will look after Ma Ke for you so don't worry. You should just quickly eat something and sleep. After you recover, we will head back to the academy. I strongly believe that Ma Ke's condition will improve."

The first smile appeared on Hai Yue's face since Ma Ke was hurt. She turned and walked out of the room.

Since my recovery spell had a new breakthrough, why not let Ma Ke be my guinea pig? It might unexpectedly be able to treat him. It would at least not worsen his condition.

"Great light elements! Please use your unceasing holy light to treat the injuries in front of you and use your merciful heart to save the life before you, Heart of the Holy Light!"

The light elements from my surrounding gathered around me and gradually enclosed me in it. There was a gold light ray emitting from my skin. After a while, the sparkling golden radiance of the Heart of the Holy Light appeared in front of me, but it wasn't the same as before. I realized

that now, the Heart of the Holy Light seemed to be alive as it throbbed lightly.

As I inserted the Heart of the Holy Light into Ma Ke's body, I pressed my hand on his chest. I felt this time the Heart of the Holy Light didn't disappear as it did before. It seemed to flow into Ma Ke's body like water flowing everywhere and in all directions, repairing his damaged meridian channels. I was elated because if this continues, there was hope in bringing Ma Ke back to life.

After Ma Ke's meridian channels were continuously strengthened by my magic spell, I didn't know how much time had passed, I withdrew the light elements. I let out a mouthful of breath before reopening my eyes. Hai Yue, Mu Zi and Si Wa all had their eyes widely opened as they looked at me.

Hai Yue anxiously asked, "Zhang Gong, how is he?"

I took a cloth from Mu Zi to wipe the perspiration from my forehead before replying, "I have treated and recovered all of Ma Ke's meridian channels and simultaneously strengthened them."

Hai Yue said joyously, "Does this means that he going to be fine?"

Crestfallen, I shook my head and said, "I won't be able to treat his wound completely because when he blocked the opponent's power ball, highly compressed wind element entered his body. The chaotic wind elements conflicted strongly against his fire elements. This caused the smooth flowing fire elements to undergo immense changes."

Chapter 20: Return to the Capital

I looked at Hai Yue as I continued to say, “There are currently two different elements that are conflicting against each other in his body. My treatment helps him to be able to withstand the destructive forces of the two elements. It won’t really treat him. As time passes, his meridian channels would revert back to its damaged state.”

Hai Yue instantly expressed her dismay and tears flowed from her eyes again as she threw herself at Ma Ke’s body.

I patted her shoulder and said, “Hai Yue, don’t be like this. Even if I am unable to treat him, I can promise you that he won’t be in mortal danger. I just need to treat him once every week. When we leave this academy, Teacher Zhen should have a solution on how to treat him.”

Mu Zi replied, “You should also rest up after using such a powerful recovery spell.”

I nodded. “I will recover my magic power to its best condition in order to keep everyone safe and improve the precision of the teleport. Mu Zi, please help me protect the array. Si Wa, I will have to trouble you to find a secluded place for me to lay the array. Don’t forget that you can’t make any mistakes.” After I said that, I opened the magic array book and gave Si Wa a page from the center of the book.

After three hours, I woke up from meditating. We carried Ma Ke to the place where Si Wa had set the array,

I said, “When I start using the array in a short moment, everyone will have to use their strongest protection spell to protect your surroundings. This is to protect Ma Ke’s safety.”

After I said that, I drew another diagram on the six corners of the array before sitting at a corner and used light elements to power long distance teleportation array.

After a golden light shone, the five of us disappeared from the array.

I had also used my strongest defensive spell to protect the out most

surrounding during the teleportation process to resist the warping space. At this moment, it seemed as though time stopped. There was nothing visible in the surrounding. Everyone had their eyes closed to withstand the immense pressure.

Our bodies suddenly lightened. I knew that it was already the end of the teleportation. I heavily heaved a sigh of relief as the teleport was quite accurate and it succeeded in teleporting us to the place that Teacher Di had previously helped me to set the array in the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy.”

Mu Zi asked in astonishment. “Where is this place? Did we end up in a wrong place after the teleportation?”

I chuckled, “Why do you have so little confidence in your husband? Everyone, welcome to the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. Teacher Di’s office is close by.”

Hai Yue nodded. “That’s right! This is indeed the back hill behind the Intermediate Magic Academy. I have come here before.”

I replied, “Let’s go! We should quickly send Ma Ke to Teacher Di’s place.”

It was in the afternoon so the academy was quiet, as all of the students were in class. We brought Ma Ke to Teacher Di’s office. However, Teacher Di wasn’t in. Since the room was unlocked, we placed Ma Ke on the bed.

I said, “Teacher Di isn’t here so I will go and find him. You just need to wait for me here.” After saying that, I immediately dashed out. I was extremely familiar with the place as I had trained here for five years already. I quickly found Teacher Di somewhere in the academy.

When Teacher Di saw me, he jubilantly said, “Zhang Gong, you’re back! How did the competition go?”

I painstakingly said, “Even though I had brought back the championship, Ma Ke was seriously injured. Please quickly come and have a look!”

Teacher Di nodded. “Alright! Where are they?”

I replied, "They are in your office. You had forgotten to lock the door again."

Teacher Di laughed. "I have aged so I'm not good at anything. How are Ma Ke's injuries? Are they serious?"

I nodded worryingly. "I have already stabilized his condition, but..."

Teacher Di replied, "Your restoration spell is of the same standard as mine. If you can't treat him, I won't be able to as well. How about this? Quickly go and find Chuan Song in the Royal Advanced Magic Academy and invite him over to see if he can help. I will send someone to inform the prince."

I nodded before dashing towards the Royal Advanced Magic Academy.

Teacher Zhen was happy when he saw me. He knew that if I came back safely, this would mean that we had won the championship. He laughed and said, "Zhang Gong, you're back already? Didn't the competition just end two days back? How are you back already today?"

I gloomily replied Teacher Zhen, "I was almost played to death by you this time. Is that really a competition? It's too abnormal. We almost didn't make it back. Please come with me, Ma Ke is seriously wounded and is now at Teacher Di's place."

Teacher Zhen was startled and said, "What happened? Ma Ke is injured? Let's quickly head there."

I told the entire process of the competition to Teacher Zhen on the way to the Intermediate Magic Academy. Teacher Zhen didn't say anything, but because he was frowning, I knew that he was unhappy.

We quickly rushed into Teacher Di's office. Once Teacher Zhen entered the room, he immediately asked Teacher Di, "Lao Lun, how is he? Can he be saved?" Ma Ke was Prince Ke Zha's son and also might be the Kingdom's future prince. If something happened to him while he was in the Royal Advanced Magic Academy, even if Prince Ke Zha didn't blame Teacher Zhen, Teacher Zhen himself would also be unhappy.

Teacher Di's long and white eyebrows tightly frowned and he shook his

head. “His condition is not good. If it wasn’t for Zhang Gong who helped him to forcefully open his internal channels, he would have died already. You can have a look at his condition yourself.”

Si Wa told me, “Zhang Gong, I will head back first. If there is a new situation, you must tell me. I will head back to invite Teacher Xi over to see if he can help.”

Teacher Zhen replied, “That’s right! Si Wa, you quickly go and invite that old brat Du Yu over. Hai Yue, you also head home and ask your grandfather and Huan Ying Yue, to come as well. Ma Ke’s wounds are problematic. I currently have no solutions to deal with it. Let’s see if the heads of us old fellows will be able to think of a solution together.”

I pulled Mu Zi out and told her, “Mu Zi, you should head back to the dormitory to rest. You won’t be able to help out. You must be exhausted after these few days.”

Mu Zi pitifully caressed my face, “Zhang Gong, you have lost weight. Don’t be too anxious! Ma Ke will definitely be fine.”

I nodded and lightly kissed her forehead. “Quickly head back! Have some food and rest up well.”

Chapter 21: Mysterious Guiding Female Qi

Mu Zi nodded and hugged me tightly. When I wanted to reciprocate her action, she lovably ran away.

As I watched her fading back, I smiled.

After about an hour, Teacher Di's office became lively. The Yue family's leader Huan Ying Yue, Xin family's leader Hai Tian Xin, the leader of the Royal Mage Union, Dun Yu Xi, and Prince Ke Zha gathered. Including me, all six Magisters were gathered here.

The few Magisters looked at Ma Ke's injuries and could only helplessly shake their heads. Hai Yue expressed a completely depressed and pessimistic expression. She was also stunned when she finally knew Ma Ke's actual identity.

Teacher Zhen asked, "It can't be that you few old fellows also have no solution, right?"

Huan Ying Yue replied, "Ma Ke's injury is too serious. There are currently two different elements fighting violently in his body. For now, we can only forcefully stabilize his condition. If we hastily try to save him, it might lead to his death."

A pained expression was shown on Prince Ke Zha's face. He muttered, "Child, Father had always been harsh on you since you were born. I had never thought that I would harm you. Father has let you down."

Teacher Zhen dejectedly said, "It's all my fault! I made him compete in that competition."

Hai Yue's body suddenly sank to the ground. She painfully cried, "It's me! It's all my fault! If it weren't for me, Ma Ke wouldn't be in this condition. God! Please punish me instead and give back Ma Ke's life!" Hai Yue's voice was like a cuckoo that was lamenting. Her melancholic voice moved our hearts.

Hai Yue's grandfather, Hai Tian Xin, walked over and pulled Hai Yue up. Hai Yue collapsed into his arms and grieved heart-brokenly,

“Grandfather...”

Hai Tian Xin heavily sighed before saying, “Yue Yue, are you really willing to pay any price to save Ma Ke’s life?”

Hai Yue raised her head and nodded without any hesitation.

Hai Tian Xin solemnly nodded. “Alright! You’re worthy to be the child of my Xin family. You’re willing to pay the price for what you have done.”

Teacher Zhen hastily asked, “Old Hai Tian, do you really have a way to treat Ma Ke’s wounds?” As a Magister, he just didn’t want to think that Hai Tian who was weaker than him had a way to treat Ma Ke.

Hai Tian Xin nodded. “Our Xin family has a Mysterious Guiding Female Qi. ** This qi would be able to calm the chaotic magic powers. This is usually used when the magic power goes amok.”

Teacher Zhen became elated. “That’s great! If you have a better solution, why didn’t you say so earlier?”

Hai Tian Xin bitterly smiled, “Say earlier? How can I bring that up earlier? Do you know what the price is for using this method? It requires a pure maiden from our Xin family that is unwedded only.” After listening to what he said, everyone was astonished. It couldn’t be that to save Ma Ke, they would have to ruin someone’s chastity, right? The chastity of girls in the whole world was an extremely important matter.

Hai Yue’s face turned completely red, but remained wordless.

Hai Tian Xin asked Hai Yue, “Yue Yue, grandfather had said the solution already. Are you still willing to save him? Grandfather initially had no plans to say the solution, but Ma Ke had risked his life to save yours. The final decision lies with you to decide whether you will do it or not.”

Everyone looked anxiously at Hai Yue.

Hai Yue looked foolishly at Ma Ke and muttered, “You had suffered so much for me. I should repay you a little.” After that she turned her head and looked determinedly at Hai Tian and said, “Grandpa, I’m willing!”

Everyone shouted in astonishment. Prince Ke Zha emotionally shouted,

“Hai Yue, don’t worry! I definitely won’t let Ma Ke turn his back on you!”

Hai Yue dully said, “That topic should be discussed much later. Grandpa, please tell me! How can I save him?”

Hai Tian Xin turned to face Prince Ke Zha. “If Prince Ke Zha believes in me, I will take Ma Ke to our Xin family to treat him.”

Prince Ke Zha considered for a while before looking at Teacher Zhen. Teacher Zhen subtly nodded at him. He replied, “Alright! Clan Leader, I will have to trouble you!”

Hai Tian Xin nodded. “Your Highness, please don’t worry! Even if I can’t have a hundred percent guarantee it will work, the chances are still extremely high. We will take our leave first.” After saying that, he ordered people to carry Ma Ke and left with Hai Yue.

After Hai Tian Xin left, Prince Ke Zha asked Teacher Zhen, “Principal, are you sure that Hai Tian Xin can treat Ma Ke?”

Teacher Zhen nodded. “Their Xin family’s recovery techniques really has that technique. Your Highness, don’t worry! I believe that there shouldn’t be any problems.”

I walked over and lowered my head. “Uncle Ke Zha, this is all my fault. I didn’t take good care of Ma Ke.”

Prince Ke Zha shook his head. “Zhang Gong, how did this happen? Please tell me what happened.”

I became extremely unhappy and angry as I recalled the competition. I added extra details as I recounted the process of the entire tournament to them.

Prince Ke Zha’s eyebrows frowned as he listened to what I said and his eyes radiated coldness.

After listening to my entire report, Prince Ke Zha said, “Principal Zhen, how could you let them participate in such a dangerous competition? Is that even a competition?” Even though he sounded calm, his voice let out an imposing aura as he spoke.

Teacher Zhen bowed slightly, “Your Highness, I indeed did not think this through enough. However, this competition has been ongoing for many years already. It was passed down from our ancestors. This time, I have thought that with Zhang Gong, he should be able to win the competition easily. I didn’t think that there were so many loopholes.”

Prince Ke Zha replied, “Forget it! I can’t blame you in this matter. However, there should never be such a competition in the future. It is not actually a competition for interactions and learning, but is just a competition that decreases the number of talented magicians in the Kingdom instead.”

Teacher Zhen nodded. “Understood, I will arrange for that to happen.”

After Prince Ke Zha left, Teacher Di asked me, “Why did you say it in such a gravely manner to the prince? Didn’t you get Teacher Zhen involved this way?” I felt wronged and explained, “What I said was the truth! The competition is really unfair towards us. You almost couldn’t see me any more. The five magic scholars fought against me and all of them used life magic. If it wasn’t for my strength being enough to withstand their attack, I wouldn’t have been able to take back the championship.”

Teacher Zhen sighed, “Lao Lun, I am in the wrong for this matter. I shouldn’t have risked putting these youngsters in danger. Stop scolding Zhang Gong already! This is a good lesson that we must always remember!”

Chapter 22: Returning to Class

After hearing Teacher Zhen's words, I felt bad. I said, "Actually, I am partially the reason. I wasn't prepared enough and had inaccurately judged our opponents' strength."

Teacher Zhen replied, "This incident was totally unexpected. Who would have known Hai Yue would fall into a trance during the competition. I hope Ma Ke gets well. If not, I will feel uneasy for the rest of my life."

I smiled and said, "From what the Xin family's leader had said, the chances for his recovery is high. Ma Ke may have won some profit from his mishappenings. That's right! Teacher Di, during the competition when I was almost defeated, the defensive power of the light robe that you had previously given to me had protected me, which had saved me when I was in a tight position. However, the gemstone on the robe was destroyed."

Teacher Di smiled and said, "I don't mind. Aren't useful items supposed to be used? Since it had protected your life, it has done its purpose. If it breaks, just let it break."

I replied, "How can I do that! It was the first item you gave me and also the presentable magic robe. I loved it. Isn't it a pity that it was ruined?"

Teacher Zhen interrupted, "That's enough! You teacher and disciple should stop echoing each other. Zhang Gong, you just have to find me tomorrow and I will give you a magic robe which will definitely be better than the previous one!"

My plan succeeded. Haha! I joyously thanked Teacher Zhen and showed a victorious smile at Teacher Di.

After resting for two days, I returned to the academy to continue attending classes. Teacher Zhen had seriously meant his words when all of the negative points that I had previously accumulated were already revoked. The few of us who participated in the competition had freely gotten our magic scholar status approved. Teacher Zhen also gave me a

new magic robe with six beautiful stars on it. Initially, I thought that it was too eye catching and thought that just five stars was sufficient, but Teacher Zhen said that I wouldn't be wearing this magic robe frequently and forcefully made me accept the six stars. We also obtained free meal vouchers to eat at the Ascending Jade Tide.

(In the first volume, it was already explained that the number of stars represented the strength of the mage. Mage that are learning magic don't have a star, an elementary mage will have a single star, and so on. It was extremely difficult to increase the number of stars.)

I carefully held on to the magic robe Teacher Zhen had given me as this old man had bought it with his own money. The magic robe was light blue in colour and was exceptionally soft. The texture was extremely nice to touch. The entire surface of the robe was embedded with countless magic crystals. According to Teacher Zhen, he had designed and made this robe himself. It was made from the skin of a rare animal called Xi. Other than being durable and tough, it had the effect to make the usage of magic power become smoother. This robe also had 108 blue crystals, 36 red crystals, and three purple crystals. He had used all 147 crystals to form a defensive array. I just needed to insert some magic power into the purple crystal residing at the center of my chest to activate the array which would form a defensive barrier. Teacher Zhen had also told me that its defensive power was equal to an advanced defensive spell, but only needed magic power matching those of elementary level spells.

I had really obtained a treasure. This was awesome. But the magic robe had a flaw. It was too glamorous, especially in the daytime. When wearing it on the street, it would constantly shine out light rays in all directions.

When I told Teacher Zhen about this problem, he chuckled. "Why? You don't want it? If you don't want it, you can give it back! I am really reluctant to part with it!"

I definitely wouldn't give up on such a good treasure. A seventh star had been embedded into the robe to represent my Magister status, as it slept peacefully in my spatial space.

When I entered the classroom, I greeted everyone amiably. It was a pity that only a few students responded to me. I sat in my seat and asked Mu Zi, "How are you? Did you rest up well?"

Mu Zi nodded. "I had rested up quite sometime already. How about you?"

I smiled. "I am fine. It has been two days since we parted. Did you miss me?"

Mu Zi pouted. "Who will miss you? I don't even know how Ma Ke is already."

I replied, "That's right! I hope he will successfully cross this hurdle. Oh right! Teacher Zhen has given me the free meal coupons. How about at noon, we..."

Mu Zi's eyes lit up. "That's perfect! I want to comfort my stomach in the afternoon."

I chuckled. "I heard the Ascending Jade Tide restaurant really gave some face to Teacher Zhen as they gave him a fifty percent discount. We don't need to conserve for that old man."

Mu Zi nodded and we simultaneously said, "Let's make him poor!" After that, we both broke into laughter.

An angry voice called out, "Zhang Gong Wei, Mu Zi Mo! You two had just ended your confinement period and have already started to disturb the class again!"

Wah! It was already time for class, and coincidentally, it was the same class teacher who had caused me to be placed in confinement. I bitterly smiled and hastily stood up. "I'm sorry, teacher!"

The teacher was stunned as he was unused to me being polite. He frowned and said, "Forget about that! Just listen properly in class!"

I stuck my tongue out at Mu Zi, but didn't dare to speak any more. I didn't want to give any more chances for Teacher Zhen to make use of me. 'What shall I do? I will write a letter to Mu Zi.' Hehe! I wanted to use

my incomparable tender sentiment to tightly bind Mu Zi's heart to me.

Just like that, a week had peacefully passed.

I had just entered the classroom today and Mu Zi excitedly ran up to me. She made me jump a little in shock. "What has made you so happy?"

Mu Zi excitedly replied, "Zhang Gong! Let's go and have a look! I heard that Ma Ke has returned to the academy."

I jubilantly asked, "Really? That's great! He's finally okay. Let's quickly check it out!"

I pulled Mu Zi along as I dashed to Ma Ke's classroom. Since class hadn't started yet, the classroom was tumultuous. Ma Ke's seat was surrounded by a lot of people.

I excitedly exclaimed, "Ma Ke! Ma Ke!!!"

The surrounding people moved aside and Ma Ke's familiar figure appeared in the middle of the crowd. I used a short distance teleport to warp to him and I tightly embraced him. I was so stirred up that tears flowed out of my eyes.

Ma Ke also embraced me back and muttered, "Boss! Boss! I'm back!"

I let him go and looked at him in detailed. Although Ma Ke had lost some weight, his vigor was very good. It was obvious he was still recovering. I beat him with my fist and said, "Are you really fine?"

Ma Ke nodded. He was choked with emotions as he replied, "Boss! Thank you! Thank you very much! I was already much better three days ago. I was really too bored to continue staying at home, so I came to the academy. Boss, did you know? Hai Yue has finally accepted me."

Chapter 23: Bitterness Ends, Sweetness Begins

“Really? That’s great!” I exclaimed excitedly, “Let’s go out and chat. There are too many people here.” We had become everyone’s focal point after this outburst of emotion.

Mu Zi and I, accompanied by Ma Ke, found a quiet place and sat down.

“Ma Ke, you have finally fully recovered. You have no idea how worried we were.” Mu Zi said.

Ma Ke nodded and replied, “I know! Hai Yue has told me about everything that had happened. Boss, thank you. Hai Yue told me that we were able to grasp victory in the end.”

I chuckled and said, “Why are you still talking about that lousy competition? I’m more interested about how you got Hai Yue to accept you. Tell me!”

Ma Ke’s face reddened. “After I got injured, I was only partially conscious and in a lot of pain. It was as though I was continuously being torn apart. I knew that you had treated me because I sobered up a little, but I fell unconscious again shortly after. I don’t know how much time had passed after that, but then a wave of cool energy suddenly surged through my body and all the pain slowly faded. I felt like I was flying in the sky, it was so comfortable. I thought I had already kicked the bucket. But when I returned to reality and opened my eyes, I found myself in my own room.”

“Why were you in your room?”

Ma Ke continued his explanation, “Hai Yue and her grandfather had sent me back to the prince’s mansion after they treated my injuries.”

“How did you get with Hai Yue then?” Mu Zi asked.

Ma Ke’s face reddened. “Mu Zi, can you move away for a bit? Some things are better left unknown.”

“What things am I not supposed to hear? I want to listen too.” Mu Zi said with a pout.

Ma Ke's face reddened further as he whispered, "This is something related to the subject of men and women. Are you still sure you want to continue listening?"

Mu Zi's small face flushed red. She turned and ran away while saying, "You're annoying! There is nothing good about you guys!" This just made Ma Ke and I laugh.

"Go on then, what happened?" I urged.

Ma Ke looked around to confirm that there was no one around and mysteriously replied, "When I woke up, there was blood!"

I was stunned. "Where?"

Ma Ke bitterly smiled. "There!" As he said that, he pointed downwards.

I came to a realization and replied, "You're saying..."

Ma Ke nodded. "That's right! It is as you think."

I enviously replied, "You're so lucky! No wonder Hai Tian Xin was acting so secretive. He even said that the recovery technique would involve Hai Yue being robbed of her chastity or something. How did you react after that?"

Ma Ke replied, "I wasn't able to react at that precise moment. The more I thought about it, the more I felt that something was amiss. I told my Father and he immediately had someone invite Hai Tian over, who confirmed my suspicions. My Father arranged my marriage with Hai Yue at that moment. He said that we will get married after graduating!" Ma Ke showed an infatuated expression as he said that.

"Did Hai Yue agree?" I asked.

Ma Ke nodded. "As soon as I was capable of moving, I immediately went to the Xin clan's home to find her. She was unwilling to meet me at first, so... Hehe! I pretended to be weak and let myself fall to the ground. She then rushed out of her room to support me. I used this opportunity to assault her romantically and finally got her in my arms. She told me that she was extremely moved after I saved her and understood who would be

a better boyfriend for her. She is willing to marry me! Haha!"

I knocked Ma Ke on the head. "Be careful now, you're so infatuated that you're drooling."

Ma Ke chuckled. "I'm just that happy! All those years of hard work have finally paid off!"

I nodded. "Brother, you have finally gotten a reward for suffering so much. You must treasure these feelings. Did you ask Hai Yue how she saved you?"

Ma Ke smiled and replied, "Of course I did! She flushed red and refused to tell me though."

"This means that you haven't completely gotten her, but either way..." I started to reply.

"We can't act with undue haste. I originally thought about doing that, but she refused. After having to go through so much to get her, I definitely won't force her. She already allows me to embrace her though. She won't be able to run away now! I am already extremely satisfied." Ma Ke interrupted.

'Ma Ke had finally gotten together with Hai Yue after suffering for so long. I truly am happy for him, but I can't help but wonder when Mu Zi and I will do it and when I can make her completely mine.' I thought.

"Boss, what are you thinking about?" Ma Ke asked.

I snapped back to reality and replied, "Nothing! I'm just happy for you. You didn't get hurt for nothing this time."

Ma Ke nodded. "That's right! I have no regrets at all. Initially, when I shielded Hai Yue, at that moment I didn't think that I would survive. I just wanted to use my own life to protect Hai Yue. The heavens treated me very well. Not only did they give me back my life, they even allowed me to get the love of my life!"

I stood up and patted his shoulders. "Hai Yue has attended class today. Let's head to Ascending Jade Tide restaurant to have a good meal at noon

to celebrate your new life! We should head back to class now!"

Ma Ke also stood up and replied, "Boss, I'll head back to attend my own classes. Let's meet up at noon."

Mu Zi and I called Si Wa to meet up with Ma Ke and Hai Yue, who kept her head lowered with her face red, at noon to head to the Ascending Jade Tide restaurant together.

I couldn't resist teasing Hai Yue, "Wah! Hai Yue, why is your face so red? You're not hurt, are you?"

Hai Yue's face became even redder as she continued to silently lower her head.

Ma Ke hastily supported her. "Boss, stop putting her on the spot!"

Si Wa and I laughed. "Now, you've started to help Hai Yue already. You brat! You will be dominated by her in the future!" I mockingly scolded.

Ma Ke showed an infatuated expression before replying, "I intend to let her dominate me!" Hai Yue grabbed Ma Ke's hand and looked at him affectionately.

"Look at them, they're so cute! I also want to be in charge of you in the future! Are you willing?" Mu Zi said.

'This is bad. If I reply wrongly, I will be digging my own grave.' I bitterly smiled and replied, "Willing! I'm willing! I'm definitely willing!"

It had been a long time since I was this happy. After this ordeal, we had become close friends that could tell each other everything, and we lunched in a perfect and harmonious atmosphere.

Volume 6

Chapter 1: A Love Faithful to the End

The time had passed by as quick as the twinkling of an eye, two months had passed, and the two gold dans in my body had improved significantly. Even though they weren't yet completely transparent, they were not far from succeeding, as I had clearly felt that my magic power had made a breakthrough. The current semester was also quickly coming to a close. Ma Ke and Hai Yue have practically been glued together; Each accompanied the other daily. Mu Zi and I were in drastic disparity as compared to them. Although I could distinctly feel her feelings towards me, she still felt close yet far to me. There seemed to be an indestructible wall between us.

I should be giving her the hundredth letter today. What should I write? Should I write about the summary of my feelings for her up to now or about our future plans? No, neither would be good. After wracking my brain, I suddenly recalled a story from a village I had previously visited. Yes, I shall use this story as a basis for the hundredth letter that I would be giving to Mu Zi.

The next class began. I gazed upon Mu Zi's average face, yet I was still bewitched by her lovable appearance. As my heart surged with strong feelings for her, I took some sheets of paper out, and started to write that hundredth letter.

Mu Zi, this is the hundredth letter. I won't continue to sweet talk you. Instead, I would like to tell you a story in this letter.

The story is about a boy from a distant past that would see a girl that he admired every day without fail. Finally one day, that boy plucked his courage up and wrote the girl his very first love letter to her, inviting her to the seaside with him. The boy was extremely shy, and would turn and run away from the girl immediately after giving her the love letter.

When the appointed day arrived, the boy waited anxiously for the girl at

the appointed place. The girl showed up, and they played heartily for an entire day.

When night time arrived, as the boy was escorting the girl home, he asked if she was willing to make their relationship official. The girl gave him a letter before turning and running off, saying, "If we are fated...."

The boy opened the letter only to find a blank sheet of paper. He was stunned and thought about her words, but did not have a single clue about what she meant.

After a few days, the boy asked the girl out again using the same method. When the appointed time arrived, the girl showed up and spent the day happily with him just like before. When they separated again, the girl said the same words, "If we are fated...." After she said that, the boy received the same second blank letter.

Just like that, the boy had used his love letter to make an appointment with the girl.

After a few years, the boy and girl had gone on 99 dates and he had given the girl 99 love letters. However, after every single outing, the girl still gave the same reply, "If we are fated..." and gave him a blank letter in reply. Eventually, the boy slowly got annoyed and so he stopped reading the replies she gave him. He felt that he was unable to win her heart over. After he receiving the girl's 99th letter, he decided to marry another girl who had pursued him for a period of time.

On his wedding night, in order to express his sincerity to his wife, he took out all of the letters he had previously written for the girl and told his wife about his story.

His wife took the letters from the girl and went through them one by one; they were indeed all blank, just like the boy had said. When she got to the last couple of dozens of letters, she realised they were still unopened and asked the boy why that were the case.

The boy replied that since the letters would still be blank, what would be the point in opening them?

His wife pleaded for the boy's consent, and upon getting it, opened the last few dozen letters that the girl had written for the boy. When she opened the 99th letter, she discovered a single line of words on it, and taciturnly gave that letter to the boy.

After the boy took the letter, he was astonished to find that the 99th letter had a sentence, "I have already prepared the wedding dress. After you give me the 100th letter, I will be your wife."

The boy was stunned, dazed and stupefied as he looked at the letter. He simply could not believe that fact. He took the 99th letter and walked outside before letting the bone-piercing cold wind carry the letter away, and with it, his heart. They both flew off to a far away place.

This is where the story ends. Even though the method utilized by the girl in the story was a little extreme, it proved that the boy's feelings for her were not loyal to the end.

Mu Zi, I don't know how many letters I will have to give you before you will be able to truly open up your heart and soul, and give yourself to me. Ma Ke has already successfully pursued Hai Yue. When will I be able to succeed in winning your heart over? If I have the chance to use my life in order to obtain your feelings just like Ma Ke did with Hai Yue, I would not even hesitate. No matter what, my love for you will always be resolute, and will not crumble.

Inscribed with my everlasting love, Zhang Gong.

After finishing the letter that brimmed with my feelings, I gave it to Mu Zi.

Mu Zi customarily took the letter and read through its entire contents in a short amount of time. She raised her head and looked deeply at me. Her eyes didn't reveal her being moved by my words like I expected, but instead were filled with a profoundly complicated expression. She sighed lightly before putting the letter away, then turned her head and stared fixedly at the whiteboard in front of the classroom instead, and did not look at me again.

I felt as though I had suffered a blow and my heart was filled with bitter

feelings. ‘Mu Zi, why can’t you open up to me? Am I really that unworthy for your love?’

I shook my head, and laughed mockingly at myself. I flopped onto my table and desolately counted the leaves on the tree outside the window as I tried my best to stop those downtrodden thoughts.

The class finally ended. I didn’t leave with Mu Zi as per usual and just solitarily walked out and headed to a corner of the academy forlornly.

I gently leaned against a large tree whose trunk needed two persons to join arms in order to completely encircle its width. My eyes stared out lacklusterly as I stared forward and my mind was completely blanked.

“Zhang Gong?” Someone patted my shoulder. I was startled and quickly turned my head only to see Hai Shui who I had not seen for quite sometime. I had constantly avoided her ever since returning from the competition. Seeing her today was the first time since then.

Hai Shui smiled at me and said, “It has been some time since we’ve met. Zhang Gong, why are you spacing out alone here? You didn’t even respond to me calling out to you after more than a few times.”

Hai Shui had lost a lot of weight from before. Her initially rosy face was a little pale as well. I smiled at her awkwardly and replied, “That’s right. We haven’t seen each other for a while. How have you been recently?”

Hai Shui seemed to laugh self-mockingly as she said, “Don’t be like this. I heard elder sister say that you guys suffered a lot due to the competition.”

I replied, “Yes. Who would have thought that the competition would be that abnormal? However, at least we still gained something, as we finally succeeded in bringing your sister and Ma Ke together.”

Hai Shui nodded and replied, “I really do envy them. That’s right, how are you and big sister Mu Zi doing?”

Chapter 2: Teacher's Summons

My expression dampened a little but I forcefully smiled and said, "We are doing really well."

Hai Shui didn't notice my expression and plainly replied, "That's great. We are going on a vacation soon. What are your plans?"

'Plans? I really haven't thought about that.'

I replied without thinking, "I still don't know. I'll make my plans when the vacation starts. Maybe, I will just head home."

Hai Shui nodded and replied, "That's a good plan. I heard from my elder sister that your magic power had already reached the Magister's stage. Is that really true?"

I couldn't, and also didn't want to lie to her so I just simply replied, "That's correct and it had already been sometime since I reached that stage. From the undulation of your magic power from your body, it seemed that you have not improved much. You must work hard."

After I said that sentence, I regretted it. As expected, after Hai Shui heard my words, her expression dampened. She plainly replied, "My heart is placed somewhere else so I can't focus." After she said that, she looked deeply at me.

My heart jumped heavily. I clearly understood Hai Shui's strong feelings for me, but I had already given my entire heart to Mu Zi. At one side, it was the one I love and on the other is someone that loved me. Both sides had similarly put me in a spot.

I coughed and changed the topic. "Have you eaten?"

Hai Shui shook her head and replied, "I haven't. I am just planning to go and eat. I coincidentally saw you so I came over."

I repressed a caring expression and replied, "You should eat more. You have lost a lot of weight again."

Hai Shui's eyes reddened and suddenly she threw herself at me like a bird seeking refuge in a forest and cried bitterly.

Her action gave me a shock, but I couldn't push her away. I stood there at a loss to know what to do and let her tears wet my clothes.

After a long time, Hai Shui then released her hands that were tightly holding my hands. She just stood a few centimeters away. Her breath gently blow on my face, making me a little intoxicated by it.

Hai Shui's beautiful large eyes were filled with tears. She whispered, "Can't you give a little of your feelings to me? Even if it is just pity, can't you?"

I looked at Hai Shui in a stunned state and really didn't know how to reply.

Hai Shui sighed lightly and placed a kiss on my lips that felt like a dragonfly stepping on water before she turned around and ran away.

As I watched her delicate back gradually vanish from my view, my mood became much heavier. I was in a little peculiar mood as I told myself, 'It wasn't that I completely didn't have any feelings for Hai Shui. However, when the heart ripples, it would be extremely hard to stop it from expanding.'

I bitterly laughed and rubbed the remaining sensation that Hai Shui left on my lips and didn't know what to do.

'This is really like when a wave had not even eased before another wave had come. I haven't even solved the matter with Mu Zi and now Hai Shui came in rapidly. What am I supposed to do?'

I didn't go to Ascending Jade Tide and just ate some food in the canteen before returning back to the dormitory by myself.

After the next few days, I didn't said anything to Mu Zi. I just sat by her side and stared fixedly at her daily. In my heart, I thought, 'Why can't you really accept me?'

Mu Zi didn't dare look at my gaze which was filled with deep feelings for her. I could see that she was avoiding me.

Ma Ke suddenly came to find me today. After seeing me, he smiled and

said, “Boss, how have you been recently?”

I snappily replied, “How can I be like you so comfortably off? From day to night, you are stuck to Hai Yue and ignored me as your brother. This is a perfect example of paying more attention to a lover than friends. From what I see, it seems that you have already forgotten about me.”

Ma Ke embarrassedly laughed. “How can I? I can forget anyone but I won’t be able to forget about you, Boss. Didn’t I come to look for you just now?”

I snorted coldly and replied, “Just say it, why have you come? Without any urgent matter, I doubt you will come looking for me.”

Ma Ke smiled apologetically and replied, “Hehe, Boss, it seems you have completely looked through me. It is Teacher Di that told me to look for you. On my way home yesterday, I met that old man. Teacher Di wants you to see him after the end of lessons today.”

Why was Teacher Di looking for me? I replied, “I got it. Do you still have other matters you want to tell me?”

Ma Ke shook his head. “I don’t have any others except this. It is that Hai Yue told me to tell you that you aren’t allowed to bully her sister. Aiyo! Boss, stop hitting me!”

As I continued to knock his head, I angrily said, “If I don’t hit you, who should I hit? This matter is a pot that you can’t open and you just lifted the lid of that pot. You are just asking to be beaten.”

Ma Ke turned and ran away. As he ran, he replied, “I don’t want to continue arguing with you anymore. Anyways, I have already told you. Don’t forget to head over to Teacher Di’s place.”

I impatiently replied, “I got it already. You just have to quickly head back to Hai Yue.” After this brat got Hai Yue, he had completely changed. He seemed to become like the wind.

After school, I went to the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy by myself.

“Zhang Gong, you’re here.”

“Teacher Di, I heard from Ma Ke that you are looking for me.”

Teacher Di laughed. “That’s correct. If I don’t find you, will you come to find me?” ‘Why did his speech seemed to be similar to what I said to Ma Ke?’

I chuckled. “This is to say that this old man missed me.”

Teacher Di rebuked, “What old man? Am I really that old, and who is missing you? I wanted to find you for some important matter.”

I hastily smiled apologetically, “Yes! Yes! Yes! How can you be old? You are at the prime of your life and are an unrivalled hero. Hehe.”

After hearing my two sentences of flattery, Teacher Di’s expression softened. “You brat, you only know how to speak glibly. Is there any improvement in your magic power recently?”

I replied, “I definitely have improved! Why don’t you try it out?”

Teacher Di curled his lip. “Why should I try? Your power already isn’t worse than mine. I still want to keep my old bones to continue living for a couple more years.” I helplessly sniggered, ‘Why did I call him old? Now, he is calling himself old bones.’

I respectfully replied, “What is your purpose in finding me?”

Teacher Di expression changed. “The vacation is coming soon. What have you planned for this holiday?”

I replied, “I am thinking of heading home to visit my parents.”

Teacher Di nodded. “That’s also good. You have been out for another half year. You should head home to visit them. However, I hope that before you head home, you can settle something first.”

I astonishingly asked, “What’s the matter? Please tell me.”

Teacher Di muttered irresolutely, “Child, do you still remember what I told you that year, to bring Xiao Jin to find his home?”

My heart tightened before I nodded. “I remember.”

Teacher Di said, "Xiao Jin is the Dragon clan's next generation Dragon King. I want you to use this holiday to bring him home. He also has parents just like you after all. Don't you want to let them, parents and child reunite?"

Chapter 3: Returning to Xiao Jin's Home

I thought, 'I really don't want to bring Xiao Jin back. After returning Xiao Jin, will he still want to leave with me? My feelings for Xiao Jin are extremely deep. Without him at my side, I will feel even more empty.'

I helplessly said, "Must I really send him back?"

Teacher Di nodded. "That's right! You must send him home. Actually, it may not be a bad thing. The Dragon King might appreciate your effort in bringing his son back and help you fight with the Demon King in the future."

A trace of reluctance appeared in my heart. I pitifully replied, "But I really don't want to be separated from Xiao Jin!"

Teacher Di said very sternly, "Zhang Gong, how can you be like this? Don't you think that you are being too selfish? Moreover, if you are overly dependant on Xiao Jin's power, it will greatly hamper your future path in improvement. No matter what, you must bring him home."

I lowered my head and the thoughts in my heart surged out like waves. 'Xiao Jin the only partner who has always been by my side is leaving me? I am really reluctant to lose you. Xiao Jin! Even though Xiao Jin really is a powerful partner, my feelings for him isn't because of his massive strength. Thinking of that year when Xiao Jin hatched, he had never left me since so to send him back like this, I...I...'

Teacher Di softly said, "I know this matter is really hard on you, but think about it. If Xiao Jin continues to follow you, he can only live to be around 60 years, whereas, the Dragon Clan can live up to a few thousands of years. It can't be that your reluctance to lose him outweighed his right to live, right?"

I was moved and replied, "Teacher Di, you're saying...."

Teacher Di nodded. "If I haven't guess incorrectly, Xiao Jin's father should have the ability to regain his initial life expectancy."

I clenched my teeth and replied, "Alright! For Xiao Jin's future, I am

willing to bring him back.”

Teacher Di smiled in relief. “That’s my good student. It was worth it for Xiao Jin to follow you for this period. Initially, I thought that it would be best to wait for you to graduate from the Advanced Magic Academy before going. However, your current ability has already exceeded my expectations. Moreover, there is still the threat of the Demon King in a couple of years so I have decided to have you look for the Dragon Valley earlier. You should still have the book I gave to you about dragons. The method to reach it is on the last page. Once holidays begin, you should head out. After sending Xiao Jin back, you should visit your home. There should be enough time for you to do accomplish all of those things.”

I replied, “It should be the book ‘The True King of the World - Dragons’. I have read through it. The Dragon Valley should be in the Aixia’s territory approximately in one of the Sky Province’s mountain valleys.”

Teacher Di nodded. “You will have to search for the actual position yourself. You must remember to stay safe. Don’t forget about the teleportation scroll I gave you the last time you went out to gain experience. You must use it if you encounter an emergency.”

I replied, “Alright! Relax! I’ve already weathered so many storms and the purpose of this trip is to do something good, it should not be too dangerous.”

Teacher Di replied, “No matter what, it’s always best to be careful. Have some dinner before you head back.”

After accompanying Teacher Di in having dinner, I returned to the Royal Advanced Magic Academy.

As I laid down on my bed in the dormitory, I silently thought, ‘I’ll soon be separated from Xiao Jin. I also don’t know what will happen during the journey to Dragon Valley. I’m really reluctant to be separated from Xiao Jin who has been with me for so many years.’

I went to the classroom the next day. I wrote on a strip of paper, “It’ll be vacation really soon. What’s your plans?”, before giving it to Mu Zi.

Mu Zi quickly replied. She wrote a line of words below mine, “I’m going home. How about you?”

I tested her as I wrote, “Can we go back together?”

Mu Zi replied, “That’s not good. My home is rather reclusive. It is better that I head back by myself.” After seeing her reply, my mood had sunk even more.

I wrote back, “I’ll forget about it then. Since you’re not willing for me to accompany you, I also have to go to a place to settle a matter.

Mu Zi replied back, “Where to? What are you going to do?”

I wrote back, “I am returning Xiao Jin back to Dragon Valley to let him reunite with his family.”

Mu Zi wrote back, “The Dragon Valley is too dangerous. It is better that you ask Ma Ke to accompany you. If you return Xiao Jin, you probably won’t have any magical beast.”

I wrote, “It doesn’t matter. It’s very important that Xiao Jin can reunite with his family. Ma Ke is currently busy, so I don’t want to disturb him. The journey this time shouldn’t be dangerous so I should be able to head there myself.”

Mu Zi replied back, “Are you unhappy about me?”

I wrote back, “No, why should I be?”

Mu Zi wrote back, “Then, why were you ignoring me this few days?”

I wrote, “You should know why. Can you please just tell me why even when I conveyed my true feelings for you, I still can’t make you open up to me?”

Mu Zi remained quiet for a while before writing back, “Zhang Gong, I’m in a really, really tough situation. Can you please stop asking me, alright? If the heavens has planned for us to be together, you will find that out in the future. Do you still remember that story you wrote for the hundredth letter you gave me? I will eventually be like the main female lead in the story and love you wholeheartedly. Will you wait for me?”

This was the first time that I felt such closeness between Mu Zi and I. Elated, I wrote my reply, "Of course, I am willing. I'll definitely unwaveringly wait for you. I'll stop pressing you. I just hope that you won't let me wait too long to the point where I won't have the strength to hug you."

After reading my reply, Mu Zi's face reddened and looked at me before laughing. She wrote back, "You're so irritating. Let's go out for lunch together."

I nodded, but didn't write anything. My heart felt much better as I felt that Mu Zi and I had become closer.

It was Mu Zi who wrote another note instead. "Actually, Hai Shui is very compatible with you. You shouldn't continue hurting her."

After reading what she said, I bafflingly whispered to her, "If I don't hurt her, then I will be hurting you."

Mu Zi smiled and shook her head. "Why would I be? It is completely normal for a capable guy to have a few wives in my homeland."

I astonishingly replied, "Can a person's feelings truly be distributed? It can't be that you're willing to share the feelings I have for you alone with others? ? I had placed all of my affections on you. Is that bad?" 'I really don't understand how she thinks. Even having the idea of sharing her sweetheart.'

Chapter 4: Mu Zi Leaves

Mu Zi smilingly said, “From the first time I met you, I had the feeling that you will definitely be an extraordinary person. Every successful man will definitely not have only one woman behind them. Rather than allowing your heart to be stolen by another, why not find sisters whom I can trust? With the assistance of everyone, even if you think about going astray in the future, hehe....”

I bitterly smiled, “Am I really the type of person that you’re describing?” Mu Zi was actually truly willing to accept Hai Shui. Her way of thinking really makes me embarrassed to the point of cold sweat.

Mu Zi glanced at me and said, “Now, you are saying nice things, but I don’t know what it will be like in the future. All you men are not good things. Aren’t you all always becoming enamored with the new and bored with the old? I can’t defeat you so what can I do if you bully me in the future. If Hai Shui and I teamed up, hehe... You will know.”

Looking at Mu Zi’s lovable yet hateful face that was just like a red apple, I really wanted to strongly give her a bite. I grabbed and pulled her small hand towards me, lowered my head and gently bit on her hand under my desk.

Mu Zi let out a low cry and said, “What are you doing? Class is still ongoing.”

I replied, “Since you don’t object to the relationship between Hai Shui and I, I’ll go and tell her later.”

Mu Zi’s face showed traces of unhappiness. She dejectedly replied, “Looks like you have exposed your fox tail. I knew that you were bad.”

I rocked back and forth as I laughed. “I was only teasing you. Haha.”

Mu Zi pinched me really hard, even using her hand to cover my mouth so that I wouldn’t be able to release any sound. She hatefully said, “Fine then! You dare to play around with me.”

After a long time, I recovered from my pain. “I’m fearful of you, little jar

of vinegar. I actually believed that you were really that magnanimous. After one test it turned out to be not at all.”

Mu Zi replied, “What I said was the truth, but I am a woman after all so I will always...”

I hastily expressed an understanding and charming, yet vile expression. “Regarding Hai Shui, we will discuss further in the future. If she and I are really fated to be together, I will do as you said, but you can’t force me to.”

Mu Zi scoffed and said, “How virtuous you are! You’re blessed with so many girls that others could only dream about, yet you actually want to hide from it instead.”

I bitterly smiled. “I can’t betray my heart. You can’t possibly want me to marry someone that I dislike, right?”

Mu Zi nodded. “Fine.”

Mu Zi’s broadmindedness deeply touched me. Her words also untied the knot in my heart. I wouldn’t need to work hard at restricting myself from now on. I swore to myself silently, ‘I won’t easily express favourable impressions of other girls anymore and invite trouble.’

.....

The holidays had finally arrived. Mu Zi was the first one to leave the academy. Ma Ke, Hai Yue, Si Wa and I sent her off at the entrance of the academy. I initially wanted to accompany her for a while, but she said it was unnecessary as her family members would meet up with her not far from the academy.

I said with my eyes that was reddened, “Mu Zi, you must take care of yourself and remember to miss me.”

Mu Zi nodded and threw herself into my arms and tightly embraced me before standing on her toes and gently kissed on my face. “Zhang Gong, you must also take care. When you’re heading to Dragon Valley, you must

be careful. I'm heading out now, so I'll pass this to you." As she said that, she took a small jade pendent from her neck. It was carved out using an unknown black gemstone. It had a pheonix shape to it. It gave off a refreshing feeling in my hand. Its texture was extremely smooth. From the looks of it, you would know that it was priceless.

Mu Zi continued to say, "This is my Ink Phoenix pendant that my mother had given me when I was young. I will give it to you. Whenever you miss me, you can look at it."

I hung the Ink Phoenix pendant around my neck before I lifted her face and kissed heavily on her lips until there was an annoying cough sound from our side and I reluctantly let her go.

Mu Zi's delicate face was completely red, but she didn't reprimand me for that. As I embraced her, I showed furious expression to the few people behind me, making them laugh.

Mu Zi gently pushed me away and whispered to me, "I really have to go now."

I nodded and took out the magic robe that Teacher Zhen had given me from my spatial space and placed it into Mu Zi's hands. "This is something that Teacher Zhen gave me previously. You just have to insert your magic power into the amethyst gemstone at the chest area to set up a good defensive array. Its defensive power is very strong. I don't need it so I will give it to you for protection." As I said that, I placed the magic robe on Mu Zi.

Under the radiance from the sun, Mu Zi's entire body glittered and brightened up; Accompanied with her flushed delicate face, she looked exceptionally adorable.

Mu Zi replied, "This is too precious. You might face danger during your trip to the Dragon Valley. You should keep it."

I shook my head. "What danger will I be in? I'm not going there to pick a fight, I'm just bringing back their child. Even though this magic robe is good, it is too dazzling. You just have to place it in your spatial bag."

Ma Ke shouted from behind, “Boss, when did you have such a good item? I also want one!”

I smiled, “If you were to turn into a girl, I will consider. Haha.”

Ma Ke instantly choked from hearing my words.

The time to be separated had finally arrived. I forced myself not to chase after her as I looked at Mu Zi’s figure gradually disappearing from the horizon as she turned her head back thrice at every step.

Ma Ke patted my shoulder. “Boss, stop being so reluctant. It is not as if you won’t be seeing her again. Let’s go! We should head back.”

I sighed and replied, “I really hope that the holidays end quickly.”

Si Wa chuckled and said, “When there isn’t any holiday, you wanted one. When it is a holiday, you want to attend classes.”

Hai Yue replied, “What about wanting to attend classes? He just misses Mu Zi. You had seen how hard he kissed her previously.”

I feigned anger and said, “Hai Yue, you still talk about me. I don’t know who was it with Ma Ke that day...”

Ma Ke’s and Hai Yue’s faces reddened. Actually, I didn’t see anything and was just purposely teasing them. I didn’t expect to see that it actually worked.

Hai Yue pinched Ma Ke before she shyly said, “It is all your fault.” After she said that, she turned and ran towards the academy.

I looked at Ma Ke who was clenching his teeth in pain and said, “Who told you to tease me? Haha, you reap what you sow!” After this commotion, the pain from being separated from Mu Zi had decreased drastically.

Ma Ke, Si Wa and I slowly headed towards the academy.

Ma Ke said, “Boss, are you sure that the trip to the Dragon Valley won’t be dangerous?”

I shook my head. “I have never been there. How will I know what will

happen?"

Chapter 5: Magical Groom Recruitment

Ma Ke said astonishingly, “But you just told Mu Zi...”

I snappily glared at him. “That was to stop her from worrying. You don’t even understand something this logical?”

Ma Ke and Si Wa speechlessly stared at me. I asked, “Why are you two looking at me like this? Do you find me that handsome?”

Ma Ke didn’t mind my teasing and said resolutely, “Boss, I will go with you to the Dragon Valley.”

Ma Ke’s will and spirit had greatly touched me. I changed my expression from a teasing appearance to a serious one before replying earnestly, “Do you think I am going to play? In this world, the strongest creatures are the dragons. If something goes wrong, it would not be likely we would be able to return. How can I let you risk your life with me?”

Ma Ke said determinedly, “I want to go with you because it’s dangerous. We are brothers. We should help each other out during difficult times.”

I shook my head and smiled while I replied, “My good brother! I understand your feelings but stop trying to convince me. I have already decided to go there by myself. During the previous competition, you almost died and I felt guilty about that for a long period of time. I definitely won’t allow you to risk your life with me. Moreover, you have Hai Yue now. It can’t be that you want her to worry about you, right?”

Once I mentioned Hai Yue, Ma Ke replied hesitantly, “Boss, I....”

I interrupted him and said, “That’s enough! I understand and I won’t treat you like a person that pays more attention to their lover than their friends. My decision is final.”

Ma Ke expressed gratitude in his eyes. Si Wa said from the side, “I am currently without any family or job. Let me go with you! It can’t be that you will reject my offer, right?”

I bitterly chuckled, “Big Brother Si Wa, even though we know each other for only a short time, I already know what kind of person you are. You

also know what kind of person I am. You don't need to say any further. I accept your good intentions but I should settle my own problems by myself."

Si Wa shook his head. "Zhang Gong, I know that you are a sensitive person, but no matter what, I must go with you. The chances of our survival is better if we are in this together."

I knew that I wouldn't be able to move him so I didn't say anything else. I gathered my belongings that night and secretly went to the Royal Intermediate Advanced Academy to bid my farewell to Teacher Di. After that, I walked solitarily on my path to find the Dragon Valley. What I didn't know was that when I sneaked away, not only did I manage to avoid Si Wa, but I had also been able to slip past Hai Shui who had planned on following me.

The Sky Province was about 800 kilometres from my position. After looking through the map in detail, I chose a path that seemed easier to walk on. Anyway, I had a lot of time as the vacation had just started. The people staying at the academy should soon find out that I had left. I slowly walked on my chosen path and in two days, I had traveled only 100 kilometres.

As it neared noon, my stomach began protesting. Right in front of me, there was a small town. I decided that I would look there for any good food to console the five viscera of my meridian channels; it would be bad if they went on strike.

After walking into the small town, it could be said that it was a big village that was surrounded by walls. This place was not as big as the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. Even though the town was not large, it was unexpectedly flourishing. Different sellers that were peddlers for life hawked their wares with all their might.

After asking a random passerby, I found out that this place was indeed a village. Since it's location was beside the official road, there were a lot of people that walked through the town, giving liveliness to the town. After many years of evolution, it gradually became what it is today. In other

words, this could be counted as a traffic hub.

After I found a diner that appeared quite clean, I filled my stomach and rented an ordinary room. The sights of this town had lifted my mood so I decided to stay for the night and continue on my journey the next day's morning.

I wandered through the main streets of the small town, admiring the local conditions and customs. I occasionally bought the specialties of the town and tossed it into my spatial space, preparing to give them to my friends after heading back.

As I walked, there were a lot of lively people making a racket in front of me. There was a very large crowd. I wondered what had happened and pulled a petite young man who was preparing to squeeze through the crowd and asked, "What has happened to garner such a large crowd?"

The petite young man shoved my hands away and anxiously said, "Stop pulling me! I need to head there quickly. If not, I won't be able to make it!" After saying that, he immediately squeezed through the crowd.

I was stunned as I wondered what had happened for him to be in such a rush.

A peddler at the side laughed and said, "With his morality and conduct, he wants to be the town chief's son in law? Haha, what a joke!"

I hastily asked, "What about being the town chief's son in law? Big brother, can you please tell me what is going on?"

The peddler laughed, "Brother, you must be an outsider."

I nodded. "That's right! I am not from here."

The peddler replied, "Even though this place looks like a city, it is actually just a flourishing village. The town chief was the original village head. No, that's not the village head. It is the town head, he is helping his daughter find a good home and planned something about a magic competition for one to take her as their wife as a reward, this attracted a lot of people to come."

“A magic competition to find a groom? This is quite uncommon to me. Is the daughter of the town’s head not good looking? Why did they want to have such a magic competition to get a groom?” I laughed as I said.

The peddler laughed and said, “What’s new about that? The competition has been on for six days already. There isn’t any outcome yet. Talking about the daughter of the town’s head, she is really a beauty but just a little shrewish. Our Kingdom of Aixia mostly respects those who are experts in using magic. The town chief obviously wanted to strengthen his status so he came up with a plan and prepared the competition to gather strong magicians to compete and become his son in law as his facade.”

So it was like that, it seemed rather fun. I asked, “Are there any rules to it?”

The peddler said, “Of course there is. If there are no rules, nothing can be done to get the groom. How about you look at the large red paper over there? You should take a look yourself.”

After thanking the peddler, I walked over and saw that the red paper noted, “The conditions to participate in the competition.

- 1: Age must be 25 and below and must be a bachelor.
- 2: You must not have any disabled body parts.
- 3: You can’t kill anyone during the competition.
- 4: This competition only invites magicians. For those who are warriors, please don’t enter the competition.
- 5: The competitors just need to defeat my daughter, rather than defeating all of their opponents to be my son in law.”

‘These are quite easy terms. This does not look complicated at all. Why is it that after six days, there still hasn’t been any outcome?’ Curiosity made me squeeze through the crowd to find out the reason.

Chapter 6: Meddling in Others' Business

There really were a lot of people. Although my body could be considered sturdy, I still used a lot of effort to finally reach the front line. Even though there were still people in front of me, I was able to clearly see the current situation with my height.

The arena was at least 500 square meters in size that had a rope surrounding it. There was an area at the side for distinguished guests, which had ten people in it, and they seemed to be the judges and the host's family. There was a girl whose appearance was veiled with a light muslin. From her rather good body figure and faintly discernible looks, she was definitely a beauty. She should be the daughter of the well groomed large man sitting at her side, who was likely to be the town's chief.

In the arena, there were two magicians battling. After looking at their magic powers in detail, their strengths were just too weak compared to me. They were at the level of an Intermediate Mage. Currently, it was the fireball of one opponent against the wind blade of the other; it seemed to be a quite an intense battle.

It was no wonder why there wasn't any outcome after so many days as they were only rookie magicians. If it were anyone from our Royal Advanced Magic Academy, they probably would have won against that beauty immediately.

Since the strength of the competitors were so weak, my interest decreased drastically.

The wind magician won at that moment, using his agile and ever changing attacks to gain a quick victory.

From the distinguished guest area, an old man wearing a magic robe walked out and announced, "Wind magician Tian Di has won. Are there still any young heroes willing to compete against him?"

Just like that, after they completed three to four matches, there wasn't anyone that managed to win twice in a row. This was meaningless. The

two competitors in the arena were seriously injured, and thus the match ended. This low level competition made me lose interest. Just when I was about to walk away, there was a sudden breeze that passed by. A lean figure appeared in the arena.

As I focused on him, he was that petite youth that did not answer my question previously. He was completely different from before. He straightened his not very sturdy chest and arrogantly stood at the center of the arena. He wore a magnificent magic robe. What surprised me was that his magic robe actually had five stars on it. This was to say that he was a Magic Scholar.

Everyone was startled by his attire. The old magician in charge of judging asked, "Young mage, are you a Magic Scholar?"

The petite youth puffed out his chest and arrogantly said, "Of course I am. I am a Royal Advanced Magic Academy year 3 student. I am the academy's 5th ranked student, Ma Ke Sai De. My major magic is fire and my minor magic is wind."

His words made everyone gasp. I was unsure if it was because of Ma Ke's fame or the reputation of the Royal Advanced Magic Academy.

I, who had wanted to leave, became interested in this imposter youth. I really wanted to see how he was going to pretend to be Ma Ke. If I haven't guessed wrongly, he should be at the Advanced Mage level. Once he fought, he would be exposed immediately.

What was beyond my expectation was that the old magician judge expressed a respectful expression. He respectfully said, "I represent this town's chief to welcome Magic Scholar Ma Ke to participate in the competition. Are there any competitors who would like to fight against him?"

After a long time, there actually wasn't anyone that wanted to compete against him. It was no wonder why he didn't come out at first and waited for his chance when the two competitors from the previous match were seriously injured. After he exposed his name, there probably wouldn't be anyone who would dare to challenge him. It couldn't be that much of a

coincidence, right?

Even though I disliked meddling, this was related to Ma Ke's reputation. I shouted from the crowd, "You imposter brat, get down from there." My voice was loud and clear, as I used magic power to amplify my voice, making it impossible for anyone to know where my voice came from.

The imposter's expression changed, but it instantly turned back to normal. He said with a clear voice, "This hero shouldn't tease his younger brother. If you are willing to teach me a lesson, your little brother will be waiting for you here."

The crowd of audience was in an uproar from what I had said. Currently, due to his beautiful cover up, I was quite impressed by him. However, he ignited my anger.

I used short distance teleportation to move to the center of the arena. "I am the hero that said that you're an imposter."

The petite youth obviously hadn't paid any attention to my looks when we encountered each other previously as he frowned and said, "This friend. If you want to teach me a lesson, please make your move."

I ignored him and looked towards the judges. "My greetings to the judges, I am not here to participate in the magic competition. The purpose is to protect my friend's reputation. I hope you will forgive me for doing this."

The old magician frowned and asked, "May I ask how you know this magician is a fake?"

I said smilingly, "Sorry about this, but Ma Ke is my friend. I just left the Royal Advanced Magic Academy not long ago and was still with Ma Ke two days ago."

My words instantly attracted everyone's attention. There were discussions from below the stage.

The petite youth turned green and then turned red. He angrily said, "You're driveling! I don't recognize you. You actually dare to use our Royal Advanced Magic Academy's name to lie to the people. What bad

intentions do you have?”

I laughed and said, “I don’t have any bad intentions. The one who has bad intentions should be you. Since you were attracted by that family’s maiden, why don’t you use your own abilities to get her, rather than using someone’s name?”

The petite youth said to the old magician, “I want to have a match against him to clear my reputation, which he has spoiled.”

The old magician glanced at the town’s chief, who indicated approval. “Alright, the match has started. Please stop when you hurt your opponent, and similarly, don’t hurt the audience.” He was worthy of being an old fox. He was quite astute as he knew if one of us was telling the truth, the barrier of the arena wouldn’t be able to withstand the attack, so he reminded us first.

I replied, “Alright, I also want to be enlightened on how you will have the ability to impersonate Ma Ke.”

The petite youth didn’t respond to my words and fired a large fireball at me with all his might. The fireball was scathing with heat as it flew towards me.

He wanted to fight against me with this standard? I didn’t even dodge his attack. Just as I saw the fireball was in front of me, I extended my right hand and that petite youth already realized that his fireball was no longer in his control.

The fireball was held in my hand and was quietly floating there. Its heat made my face flush red.

Chapter 7: Regret

I chuckled, “You call this a fireball? From how I see it, it looks just big enough for me to cook rice. You can have it back.” The fireball returned with twice its original speed.

Seeing the whizzing fireball, the youth’s face turned green. Attacking with the magic previously had cost him a lot of his power. The power of this fireball, he was naturally aware and he wanted to dodge it, but the fireball’s trajectory kept changing so he didn’t know how. He clenched his teeth to cast a wind blade and attempted to cut the fireball open.

I inwardly nodded my head as his usage of the wind blade was not bad. His positioning was very good, but his magic power was a little lacking.

“Pu!” The fireball and wind blade simultaneously disappeared. The petite youth’s face turned pale white. It was obvious that he had used up a lot of his magic power.

I smiled faintly and said, “Do you still want to compete?” Since impersonating Ma Ke was not a major offence, there wasn’t a need to hurt him. It was enough to make him admit defeat and step down.

The petite youth was stunned and replied, “Are you really a student from the Royal Magic Academy?”

I nodded. “Of course, even the real Ma Ke wouldn’t be my match if he was here, let alone you. I don’t want to put you on the spot, but can you tell me why you are impersonating Ma Ke?”

The petite youth dejectedly replied, “Since it is impossible to defeat you, I concede. Let’s head down and discuss this further.” He turned his head to the judge and said, “I accept my defeat.” After saying that, he took the lead to jump off the stage.

Just as I wanted to go down the stage as well, a tender gentle voice voiced out, “Young hero, why aren’t you continuing to compete after defeating your opponent?”

I was startled and looked to where the voice was coming from. It was

from the maiden in the distinguished guest area. “Previously before I came on the stage, I had clearly said that I am not here to marry so there is no need to continue competing.”

The maiden’s voice sounded furious, “Do you think we are playing a game here? When you want to come, you come. When you want to go, you go. Let me have a look at your ability!” After she said that, she cast a wind blade towards me.

How could she be so unreasonable? I knew that I shouldn’t have meddled in this. I should quickly get out from here. After dissipating the wind blade, I purposely said coldly, “If the young lady continues to be impudent, don’t blame me for being impolite.”

The maiden didn’t respond. She cast so many elementary and intermediate wind and fire spells that they hid the sky and covered the earth.

It looked like it was impossible not to show some of my strength.

I snorted coldly and chanted my spell. “Great light elements, I plead to you to give me endless God power and form into a huge sword to eliminate everything that lies before you, Light Sword!” The people in the audience instantly saw a peculiar sight. I slowly floated up from the ground. My body lit up with glamorous golden light rays. Golden lights could clearly be seen gathering around me. All the maiden’s magic spells vanished five metres away from me.

I raised both of my hands above my head and placed my palms together. All the light rays gathered in my hands. “I will let you have a look at real magic.” After saying that, an enormous light sword stuck downwards from my clasped hands. This magic was my most recent self created magic spell. It used Light Severing Sword as its foundation and was combined with Teacher Di’s theory to strike out a sword from gathered magic powers. I haven’t tried it out yet so it was a good chance to take it out to scare people.

The maiden’s face in front of me became void of colour. The veil that was covering her face had also fallen off. She had long red hair

accompanied by her fair skin; with her large eyes and slender body figure, her looks could be comparable to Hai Shui's. The people from the distinguished guest area shouted out simultaneously, "Please be merciful!"

However, it was too late as the Light Sword had already struck. What it struck wasn't at the maiden, but the center of the arena.

After the Light Sword disappeared from the center of the arena, there wasn't any changes to the ground. The maiden snapped out from her fright and said mockingly, "So it is just a deceptive trick. Hmph! I knew you aren't capable."

I laughed and replied, "I suggest that you move backwards. If not, don't blame me for the outcome." After I said that, the entire ground shook. The old judge quickly held on to the maiden's hand and took her away.

I used a Radiant Binding Array around the arena before using a short teleportation to be beside that petite youth and shouted, "Everyone, please move back as a precaution to avoid unintentional injuries." After shouting, I released battle spirit from beneath my feet and quickly left the area.

A tremendous noise sounded behind me. If I were to see what happened, I would be in shock. The circular five hundred square meters arena had been completely segregated. From the light binding array, it was filled with dust. I was lucky that the arena was large enough. If not, the light binding array wouldn't be able to withstand the power of the explosion.

I didn't care about the after effects and quickly brought the petite youth to the inn.

I let him have a seat before pouring some water for myself. After drinking a mouthful of water, I said, "Tell me what is going on?"

The petite youth gave me a distressed look.

How could I not know what he was thinking? I said smilingly, "If you speak truthfully, I won't put you on the spot."

The skinny youth laughed awkwardly, "It's like this, my family is the

local peddler. My father, in order to give me a good future, had me learn magic. Last year, when the Royal Advanced Magic Academy was recruiting students, I participated, but of course I failed. At that time, just when I wanted to leave, a fire magician was just giving a lecture on magic and even demonstrated several high-level spells. I felt so envious. I asked the people around me and discovered his name is Ma Ke, one of the top ten students in the school. The past few days, I saw there was a magician marriage competition here, and so had the idea of using Ma Ke's identity to rush through the doorway. That's how the scene you saw today came about."

I curiously asked, "Aren't you afraid that someone would see through your act?"

The petite youth bitterly smiled and replied, "How can I be not afraid? However, that young lady is just too pretty. Moreover, those people who come from the Royal Magic Academy have a supreme reputation in this area so I decided to take a risk and give it a try. Who would have thought that I would bump into you?"

After hearing his story, I laughed heartily. So, it was because this brat had a fondness for beauties.

After laughing, I seriously told him, "I will let you go this time. However, don't impersonate others anymore. If you meet with someone unreasonable who decides to grab your weak point and blackmail you, I'm afraid that you will suffer at his hands."

Chapter 8: Onwards to Dragon Valley

The petite youth nodded repeatedly. “I definitely will not dare to do that again. Thank you for forgiving me.”

I waved my hand at him. “That’s enough. You are free to go. Be more careful when you head out and avoid being seen by the Town Chief’s people.”

The petite young man suddenly kneeled before me and sincerely said, “Teacher, please take me in as your disciple. I am willing to follow your steps. I just wish to learn more advanced magic spells.”

I pulled him up and replied, “I am still a student myself. How can I take you in? Furthermore, my magic is incompatible with yours.”

After the petite young man listened to my words, he kneeled down once again and profusely kept on begging me to keep him as he shed tears.

I couldn’t stand it. It seemed like this brat was quite quick witted. How else could he know how to bother someone to this extent? I suddenly had an idea and said, “You stand up first. Only after you stand, I will give you my decision.”

The petite young man hastily replied, “What is your decision? Please quickly tell it to me.”

I smiled and said meticulously, “I will give you a letter. You will then head to the Royal Advanced Magic Academy to find Ma Ke Sai De whom you have impersonated to let him mentor your magic. You use the same magic as him, fire and wind. It will be more suitable for him to be your teacher.”

The petite youth was stunned and asked, “Will that really work?”

I laughed and replied, “Why won’t it work? He’s my little brother. If he doesn’t listen to me, I will beat him up after I come back. You can just relax and rely on me. That’s right, what is your actual name?”

The petite youth was startled by my words and replied, “I am Zhen Fan Ren, and I am 16 years old.”

I replied to him, “Alright! Please wait for a moment. I will write a letter for you now.” After saying that, I moved my pen and quickly wrote up a letter to Ma Ke. The content was definitely to threaten and bribe him to take in this fellow.

After bidding my farewell to the petite youth who was on cloud nine, I hastily packed my luggage and prepared to leave.

I toppled over after opening the front door because outside was filled with people. They were here due to the maiden. She was no longer vicious and said tenderly, “Since you had won against me, I am willing to marry you.”

‘Damn it! Damn it! I am in trouble again.’

I wiped the cold perspiration from my forehead and replied, “You don’t have to. You don’t have to make such a decision. I also did not triumph against you. I already have a fiancée already. I will head off first.” After saying that, I used teleportation to move to the back of the crowd and ran away from the inn as though I was flying.

As I ran into the main streets, the scene was rather hilarious. I was running at the forefront with a huge group of people chasing after me. I didn’t explain to them and even if I were to explain, it wouldn’t be easy. I didn’t care to offend the whole of society and used battle spirit under my feet to elevate. I applied battle spirit to the back of my body to become a huge driving force and made myself become like an arrow that was shot out.

This was the first time I flew outside like this. The travelling speed was really fast as I left the small town in a flash.

After landing, I took in a few mouthfuls of air and hit myself once before muttering, “Who told you to be so meddlesome that you almost got tangled in another problem? I haven’t even settled Mu Zi’s and Hai Shui’s matter. If I add one more to the pile, I don’t need to live anymore. Let’s quickly leave!” What I didn’t know was that this matter that I had meddled in would give rise to a major problem in the future.

After reaching the border, I entered the Sky Province. This province was

the largest in the kingdom, and it took up the entire west side of the Kingdom of the 6 interior districts.

I didn't rest well for these two days as I feared that those people would catch up to me. There shouldn't be any problems now. I needed to pamper myself a little. After I looked at an inn that seemed to have an acceptable bar from the roadside, I walked in.

The waiter walked over and asked, "Sir, how many will be coming?"

"It will be only myself."

"Oh, please come with me." The waiter brought me to a clean position in the corner. As I surveyed the place, there weren't many people. There were just people sitting sparsely at some of the tables.

The waiter passed me a menu before asking, "What will you like to order?"

After looking at the menu, there were only some names of wines and beverages. I frowned and asked, "Do you not have anything to eat here?"

The waiter nodded. "We do but they are all rather simple."

Since I had to get something, I ordered a large glass of fruit juice and some sustainable main dishes. After that, I just ate up.

After I ate my fill and drank up, I called for the waiter to get the bill and gave the change to him as his tip.

I asked him, "Brother, do you know whether there is a Dragon Valley in this Sky Province?"

Initially, I didn't carry much hope, but he unexpectedly replied without hesitation, "Of course, I know. It is a scenery in our Sky Province."

"A scenery?"

"That's right! The Dragon Valley is located outside of Pagoda City not far from here at the Cloud Mist Mountain Range. It is covered in mist all year round. The area of the Cloud Mist Mountain Range is very large. However, most people wouldn't go too deeply into it and just played at the outer perimeter of the mountain range. That scenery is extremely

captivating, especially the sky ocean. You just have to climb up to a not very high position to see it. I've also been there. It was exceptionally beautiful."

I astonishingly asked, "Why didn't you go inside?"

The waiter continued to explain, "The interior is dangerous. There are rumours that it really is a Dragon Valley with real dragons in the Dragon Valley. At times, loud dragon roars can also be heard. There were many people who wanted to check it out in the beginning to search for traces of dragons. However, no matter how many people went in, they would always say that it was like a big labyrinth inside. After turning here and there, they walked out. Furthermore, there were still many people who had gone in that didn't come out. After a long period of time, that place became a mystery. There aren't any more people that go in to find the dragons. Are you heading to that place?"

I nodded. "That's right! I want to have a look. Can you tell me the directions to that place?"

The waiter kindly said, "Of course you can. However, please don't wander too deeply in it as safety is the most important thing. You just have to head straight down the main street to find Pagoda City. After you reach there, you will see a wide expanse of high mountains at the west side of the city, and that will be the Cloud Mist Mountain Range."

I chuckled. "Thank you, brother. I will head off now." I had never thought that it would be that easy to locate the exact position of the Dragon Valley. I was partially elated and also a little dejected, as I would be separated from Xiao Jin.

After leaving the inn, I walked as per instructed by the waiter, heading towards Pagoda City.

Chapter 9: Flying into Dragon Valley

After three days, I had arrived at the Dragon Valley on the west side of Pagoda City. When I was still at a very far distance away, I could already see tier after tier of mountains. The clouds at this place were extremely low. They covered most of the mountain starting from the midsection and up. It looked really beautiful. The locals had said that no matter which of the four seasons it was, the clouds here wouldn't dissipate all year round so this place was called the Cloud and Mist Mountain Range.

Since I didn't know how long I would be in there for, I had bought rations and water from the City to suffice me for twenty days.

Just when I stepped into the Cloud and Mist Mountain Range, Xiao Jin who was sleeping in my body suddenly woke up at once and conveyed to me a sense of impatience. He had never been here before; could he actually know he was nearing his home?

I used my spiritual thought to tell him that I would be sending him home shortly. Xiao Jin's mood was obviously abnormally excited. In his excitement, there also seemed to be a tinge of sadness. He told me that he felt that this place was very nostalgic to him and also really familiar.

The Cloud Mist Mountain Range was really beautiful. All of the mountains were completely green as far as the eye can see. There were occasional sightings of cascades and noises of water flowing from the mountain spring while walking in the mountain. This place had no traces of mankind's activities.

Xiao Jin had become the best compass. I moved around the Cloud Mist Mountain Range in accordance to the strong feelings he felt from the depths of the mountain range.

At the start, the path was relatively easy to tread on as there were people that passed through earlier. However, after a day, there wasn't anymore trails left to follow, I could only bore through the forest. Even though I had the short range teleportation spell, this place's terrain was precipitous. Thus, in order to avoid falling off a cliff by mistake, I only

walked.

Most of my clothing had been torn up by bushes and brambles. I was forced to use light magic defensive spells for my surroundings.

Even though the path was difficult to tread on, my mood felt abnormally tranquil. I was no longer dreading about being separated from Xiao Jin. The air in this place was extremely fresh. After taking in a deep breath, my entire body relaxed.

There were many small animals in the mountain, but there weren't any ferocious beasts. There were pheasants, unknown birds, and also small animals. They weren't wary of me at all. They obviously were used to the easy life here and constantly snatched my rations that I was partaking in. I also happily frolicked with them. I seemed to have merged with nature. In my eyes, everything looked perfect.

When night arrived, I found a lofty tree and slept in it. My heart quietly settled down and felt refreshingly tranquil from coming to this place.

After entering the mountain for five days, Xiao Jin's feelings kept getting stronger. I already knew that we weren't far from the Dragon Valley. What I wasn't aware of was that without Xiao Jin's guidance, it would have been impossible to find the actual position of the Dragon Valley in all of my lifetime.

After passing through another forest, what was reflected in my eyes was a large basin. I was at an extremely high altitude. I could only see the approximate size of the whole basin. Under my feet, there was a thick layer of dense fog above the basin. I knew that I had arrived at my destination. This should be the Legendary Dragon Valley.

It was really difficult to find a trail to head downwards. I initially thought of flying down, but my battle spirit wasn't perfected. If the bottom of the basin was too far from my position atop the cliff and my battle spirit couldn't support my landing, I was afraid that my body would be torn apart, and my bones crushed into smithereens.

Xiao Jin, who was in my body, suddenly became anxious. He told me that he wanted to come out.

I helplessly let Xiao Jin out. His huge body stood beside me. With this mist filling his large eyes, Xiao Jin suddenly let out a exceptionally loud dragon roar without any warning. His voice was filled with the dominance of a royal.

The fog in the surrounding was forced back 30 metres from his roar. Even though my cultivation was profound, I nearly lost my balance. Just as I was curious at what he was doing, there were countless responses that resounded from the basin beneath me. Xiao Jin motioned for me to sit on his back.

It looked like he wanted to go down by flying. I had never rode on Xiao Jin before. This was my first chance to do so. I gently jumped on and sat on his large back. Xiao Jin told me to sit steadily before he flapped his pair of large golden wings to fly.

I hastily grabbed onto the spikes on his back. I was exceptionally nervous.

Xiao Jin charged down the thick fog. My ears were filled with the sounds of the wind. Xiao Jin repeatedly let out long dragon roars. It was as though he was telling his family that he had returned.

After finally reaching the bottom of the valley, it turned out to be a barren land, and I saw that there were other dragons similar to Xiao Jin.

I saw two blue and red dragons initially, and it looked as though they were playing. Their heads were about the size of Xiao Jin's. After seeing Xiao Jin's arrival, the other dragons took similar actions without prior consultation to each other, lowering their noble heads and gently whistled.

At this moment, a strong force came over. A deep voice called out, "Welcome back, our Dragon Clan's King."

A green dragon with a huge head appeared in front of me. When his head and Xiao Jin's stood together, they looked like an adult and a child. From his ability to speak, I knew that this large dragon must be at least 8000 years old as dragons must reach that age at least to be able to talk and be in a harmonious phase derived from its maturity.

Xiao Jin was not fearful of the strong strength that the green dragon possessed and unyieldingly stared at him.

The green dragon said, “Child, do you know that your parents have been waiting for you for a long time already? When you went missing that year, they were distraught. Why are you so weak?” Just as he said that, he noticed me on Xiao Jin’s back. He immediately raged.

The green dragon shouted, “You low human being actually dared to sit on our Dragon King. Go to hell!” It seemed that he had treated me as the chief culprit in the weakening of Xiao Jin. However, I was curious, how was Xiao Jin weak? Wasn’t he doing well?

Just as I wanted to explain, the green dragon’s large tail swiped towards me. Xiao Jin became anxious and immediately let out a strong dragon’s breath to try and block its advancement.

What startled me was that the green dragon unexpectedly didn’t move nor dodged and let Xiao Jin’s dragon breath hit him but his tail continued to strike towards me without fail.

There wasn’t enough time for me to think. I immediately cast my strongest light defensive spell. Just as I wanted to teleport away, the space in the surroundings seemed to have been condensed by that dragon’s swipe, making it impossible for me to move.

Why was it that even though they were similar dragons, there was such a large disparity in strength?

Chapter 10: I'm Out of Luck

I looked on helplessly as the green dragon's tail hit my chest. All I could do at that moment was to concentrate my magic power, battle spirit and the Holy Sword's power at where I was hit.

I was like a softball being hit by the green dragon for a beautiful home run. I flew backwards like a cannonball. "Hong!" I was deeply embedded into the Dragon Valley's wall. My entire body seemed to be broken, but I wasn't in any actual pain, just numbed to the bone. It was impossible for me to withstand such a strong attack with all of my current capabilities; I clearly heard the breaking of my own bones. If it wasn't for my magic power, Battle Spirit and Holy Sword's power protecting my body, I would already be mincemeat.

The numbness gradually disappeared. What replaced it was a heart impaling and bone piercing agony. I was lucky to be completely embedded into the wall of the mountain without falling off the face of it. If not, I could only beg for the God King to reincarnate me if I got smashed again. Why was this green dragon so powerful? Xiao Jin definitely didn't have such power.

After Xiao Jin saw that I was hit, he became enraged, and no longer cared if the other was his clan member, insanely attacking the green dragon with his dragon breath, clawing and biting, and attacking it with every method known to him.

However, in front of the green dragon, he was a small kid. All of his attacks were easily thwarted by the green dragon's large wings. The green dragon helplessly said, "My King, why are doing this to me? I have already helped you to eliminate that hateful human being."

Xiao Jin roared out short dragon roars. His voice was filled with fury and unceasingly continued his attacks. The few dragons that was similarly sized with Xiao Jin were scared and hid at the side, not daring to voice out.

After the green dragon heard Xiao Jin's dragon roars, he was dazed

before he said astonishingly, “What? King, you have actually said that human is your master? How can that be? Who can be the master of our Dragon Clan? This is the most impossible of impossibilities.”

As he was in a daze, he was immediately beaten by Xiao Jin a couple of times. Even though Xiao Jin wouldn’t be able to injure him, he was in so much pain that he grimaced.

At this moment, a gale of wind blew, and a gentle woman’s voice sounded out, “Is it true that the prince has returned? Aiya! Why is he fighting?”

A white large dragon descended from the sky. She clearly saw the situation in front of her and used her large wings to hit the green dragon away. She then excitedly gathered Xiao Jin in the center of her wings and shouted, “Child! It’s really you! You’re finally back!”

Xiao Jin spaced out for a moment before awakening from his rage. The nostalgic feeling he felt from the other dragon made him cease his attacks, instead staring at the enormous white dragon who was even larger than the green dragon.

Large tear drops flowed out of the large white dragon’s eyes. She sobbed, “Child, I am your mother. You are finally back. I missed you to death.”

Xiao Jin whistled out a few sounds. The white large dragon was stunned after hearing what Xiao Jin said. “How can that be? You’re my child. How can I recognise you wrongly? There is only a Dragon King in every generation, and you are one. Child, why can’t you recognise me? I am really your mother.”

Xiao Jin’s expression gradually softened, a glow of adoration emitting from his eyes, and gently leaned his head on the huge white dragon.

The huge white dragon used her head to rub it against Xiao Jin. She then suddenly raised her head and let out a roar of elation.

The green dragon who was previously blown away climbed up from the ground at that moment. “Big sister, there is no need to hit me so viciously

when you, mother and son, reunite with each other, right? I didn't even dare to hurt a single hair of your precious son."

The white dragon was obviously in a good mood and glanced at him before saying. "You reap what you sow. Who asked you to make my son angry? Hmph!"

The green dragon helplessly replied, "I just sent that human who was sitting on the young King's body away. I didn't do anything." In front of the huge white dragon, the green dragon's previous arrogance had disappeared.

After hearing what he had said, Xiao Jin thought about something and struggled out of the huge white dragon's embrace, crying loudly.

The white dragon exclaimed, "What? You said the one that was smashed away is your master? Child, you are the next generation's Dragon King. How can you have a human master?"

Xiao Jin stubbornly let out few sounds. The huge white dragon helplessly said, "Alright! Mother will take a look. However, after getting hit by your uncle Qing, it is impossible the human to be still alive." After saying that, she flapped her enormous wings to fly over.

Even though my entire body was in immense pain, I was still conscious but couldn't talk. The Holy Sword's power was quickly repairing my damaged meridian channels. The huge white dragon flew over. After looking at me with an odd expression, she said with astonishment to Xiao Jin and the green dragon that came along, "Eh! That human is unexpectedly still alive."

I bitterly thought, 'Do I really deserve to die that much?'

The huge white dragon let out a halo of white light rays that retrieved me from the stone wall. She told Xiao Jin, "Even though he is not dead, his injuries are very severe. I really did not expect this master of yours to be alive even after being attacked by Xiao Qing. This is truly a miracle. Let's hurry back to let your father take a look to see if he can be saved."

Xiao Qing bitterly smiled, "Big sister, can you not call me Xiao Qing in

front of my nephew? I am still counted as his elder.”

The huge white dragon replied, “Do you even act like an elder? Fighting with him immediately after meeting him.”

The green dragon felt wronged and replied, “Big sister, it can’t be that you have not discovered your son is very weak, right? His life force is pitifully weak. I thought it was caused by the human so....”

After hearing that her son’s body was weak, as a mother, she hastily examined Xiao Jin in great detail. The huge white dragon undulated with strong powers. “Child, who did this to you? Quickly tell mother! Mother will help avenge you.” It seemed that it was due to Xiao Jin’s life force that made them think that he was weak.

Xiao Jin looked at me anxiously and barked some sounds at the white dragon.

The white dragon helplessly said, “Alright. We will head to your father to save this human and also to see if your father can help you recover your life force. My child, how have you become like this?” After saying that, tears flowed from the huge white dragon’s eyes. One of those tears unfortunately fell on my body. The white light surrounding my body instantly fluctuated. ‘Why am I so unlucky to get struck by her tears?’ Wah! I spat out a mouthful of blood. My wounds were even more severe now.

I felt that there weren’t many bones in my body that were still in good condition. Just the pain created from the friction between my bones made me oscillate between life and death.

Chapter 11: Dragon King

Xiao Jin hurriedly came to my side to protect me and yelled unhappily at his mother.

The huge white dragon hastily said, “Aiyo! Mother didn’t do that on purpose. Let’s quickly go!”

A line of three dragons and a human flew towards the deep parts of the basin.

There was an enormous hole in front. The large white dragon was using her dragon claw to drag me, who was currently wrapped in my own light, and came to a stop. She turned her head and told Xiao Jin, “This is our home. Xiao Qing, ah! I mean Xiao Jin’s Uncle Green, you stand guard at the door. We will head in first. Don’t allow any dragons to come and disturb our family of three’s love and joy.” After she said that, she brought Xiao Jin and I inside.

As the green dragon who was left behind saw our fading backs, he used his large claws to strike at his head due to being in pain. He muttered, “I... I.. I am one of the eight elder heavenly dragons of the Dragon clan. I am now turned into a dragon to guard the door. Big sister is really too much.” Suddenly, he seemed to have thought about something and became elated again. “Haha! I am the next generation’s Dragon King’s Uncle Green. Haha! This is a title that those other defect dragons can’t obtain. Haha! This is awesome. I have something to boast about in the future.” The simple-minded green dragon sat in front of the entrance and watched his surroundings, fearing that someone would come and make him fail in completing the task the huge white dragon had given him. This dragon had always been in the Dragon Valley since birth. Even though he experienced countless baptisms of time, he was still young and childish at heart.

My entire body was in tremendous pain, and I seemed to have torn my heart and cracked my lung. However, the Holy Sword’s power had stubbornly protected my brain, making me unable to faint. I would soon be driven insane. My perspiration drenched my entire body.

Xiao Jin felt my pain and cast a Primary Spirit Recovery spell on me.

The huge white dragon astonishingly exclaimed, "Child, you also know how to use light magic? That's not bad. There are very few of us that can use elemental magics. Most only rely on their dragon's breath and Dragon magic spells."

Xiao Jin complacently raised his head and called out a few sounds.

The huge white dragon looked at him amazed, but didn't say anything anymore.

The hole got bigger as we proceeded in it. Finally, we reached a place that looked like a large public square. The white dragon stopped and respectfully said in front of her, "Dragon King, I have returned. Our son has also returned."

Xiao Jin curiously looked to the dark place in front of him that had suddenly lit up. A dazzling golden light appeared as an enormous gold dragon squatted in front of them. Even though he was squatting there, a powerful pressure instantly filled the entire hole. The huge white dragon couldn't help but to lower her head.

The huge gold dragon's body was approximately 200 metres. Its entire body was covered with massive gold scales. There were a pair of wings kept by its sides. Two enormous dragon claws were in view. He slowly supported his body and used two enormous dragon's eyes to look fixedly at Xiao Jin.

Xiao Jin subconsciously took two steps back to hide behind the huge white dragon and used his small claws to directly grab onto the scales of the huge white dragon.

The huge white dragon gently said, "Child, don't be afraid. He is your father."

An imposing filled voice voiced out. He placidly said, "My child, you're back. Quickly come over for father to have a look."

A golden light shot over and covered Xiao Jin, dragging him over. The closer he got to the Dragon King, the more he felt the pressure that was

emitted by the Dragon King.

The huge white dragon said caringly, “Dragon King, be a little more gentle. Don’t scare our child.”

The Dragon King’s imposing voice replied, “As my child and the successor of the Dragon King, how can he have the possibility of being a coward?”

After hearing the Dragon King’s words, Xiao Jin seemed to have released his potential grandeur. He straightened his chest, and golden light shone out from his eyes to form a circle of power surrounding his body, standing up under the loftiness of the Dragon King.

The old Dragon King looked satisfied. “That’s right! This is my good child. Something is not right. Child, why is your body so weak? Ah Bai, have you brought something else in here? I smell the scent of a human.”

The huge white dragon also walked over and passed me, who was covered with white light, over. “Our son says that this is his master. He has been injured by Xiao Qing. Take a look.”

The old Dragon King didn’t become angry as what the huge white dragon had expected. He took me over. “Can this be the light inheritor that the God King had spoken of, the savior of the world, the Child of Light?”

Xiao Jin whistled loudly, confirming the Dragon King’s thought. The Dragon King frowned and said, “This Xiao Qing is almost 10000 years old and is still so hot tempered. This human’s injury is very severe.” After he said that, a golden light shot out from his dragon’s horn and wrapped around me.

I could completely hear their conversations without missing any word, but I was in so much pain that I couldn’t speak.

The golden light that shone on my body from the Dragon King gave me a warm feeling. The warmth gradually became hotter. It seemed as though it wanted to melt me. I involuntarily screamed out in pain.

Xiao Jin looked impatiently and kept on crying out anxiously. The huge

white dragon told him, “Don’t worry. Your father is giving him treatment.”

The old Dragon King didn’t have any intention of stopping. The gold light kept intensifying. Finally, under the effect of the strong power, I lost consciousness.

When I woke up again, I was currently in another stone hole. The green dragon, who had previously injured me, was by my side. When he saw me open my eyes, he coldly said, “Human, you’re awake. I will bring you to meet with our king.”

This stupid dragon that had seriously injured me was still this arrogant. Wasn’t he just older than me? What was so good about that? I checked my body’s condition. Even though I was still feeling a little feeble, all of my bones had reconnected. I gently moved my body. Everything was normal. My body also felt as though it had lightened a little.

I also coldly said, “You stupid dragon, you sneak attacked me when I wasn’t paying attention. How can we say that it is due to your skills?”

The green dragon used his dragon wing to gently hit me, making me stagger. I angrily said, “What are you doing?”

The green dragon with contempt said, “With just your abilities, you want to fight with me? From how I see it, you are seeking death.” After he said that, he also simultaneously pinched at his two respectively smaller front claws, giving off creaking sounds.

I snorted heavily and replied, “Aren’t you supposed to take me to the Dragon King? Why are we still not heading there?”

The green dragon withdrew his contemptible attitude at that moment. He didn’t say anything and walked out first. As I followed behind him, I really wanted to kick his butt hard. This fellow was really too arrogant.

I arrived at the same hole I was in previously. The huge white dragon and Xiao Jin stood separately at the sides of the Dragon King. The Dragon King said imposingly, “Human, you have awakened.”

Chapter 12: Xiao Jin's Family

As I faced the world's strongest expert, the Dragon King, I didn't dare to slight him. I bowed towards him and said, "Dragon King, I thank you for saving me."

The dragon King replied, "I didn't do much. It is my clan member that hurt you, so I definitely have the responsibility of saving you. From what I've heard from my child, you have been taking care of him all this time, right?"

I nodded. "It cannot be said that I took care of him. Xiao Jin is my best friend. He has experienced many life and death dangers with me. Without him, I would be dead already."

The old Dragon King nodded. "I want you to explain to me why my child's life force is this weak."

My expression dampened and sighed, "To tell you the truth, this was due to my...." I told him everything that had transpired.

When the green and white dragon heard that I let Xiao Jin out to compete, even after I was warned not to, they glared at me until I said I used my life to save Xiao Jin. Only then did they calm down a little. The old Dragon King heard what I said emotionlessly.

".....So that was what happened that resulted in Xiao Jin's life force being so weak. I came here to return him to your side. I hope you can find a way to recover his life force."

Xiao Jin loudly cried out. It was obvious that he didn't want to be separated from me.

I glanced at him, full with emotion, and lukewarmly said, "Xiao Jin, this is your home. You must listen to your parents from now on and qualify to become a great Dragon King, alright?"

Xiao Jin strongly shook his head and said in my heart, "I want to follow you. I don't want to stay here." After being together for so many years, Xiao Jin was filled with reluctance to part from me.

I walked over and leaned on his body. With tears flowing down my face, I replied, "I am also reluctant to leave you. However, this is your world. You have your family, and they're the same species as you. You will only be in danger if you follow me."

Xiao Jin cried out to the old Dragon King and used his big wings to place me at the center of his body.

The old Dragon King said, "Human, I don't know if I should thank you for returning my child or to blame you for the great loss of his life force. I will count it as the balance between contribution and errors. You are free to go. Xiao Qing, you send him out."

I nodded and struggled out of Xiao Jin's embrace. I deeply bowed towards the old Dragon King. "Thank you for not punishing me. I hope that after I leave, you can recover Xiao Jin's life force. Xiao Jin's previous death is the most remorseful incident in my entire life."

The huge white dragon replied, "We will."

Xiao Jin was restricted by the old Dragon King's power. He repeatedly cried out and was filled with reluctance. The old Dragon King looked at my fading back before gently sighing.

Just as I was going to walk out of the hole, the old Dragon King's imposing voice called out.

"Human, come back here."

I was stunned as to why he wanted me back. Could it be he didn't know how much determination it took for me to leave Xiao Jin? However, with the call from the Dragon King, I couldn't disobey it.

After returning to face the Dragon King, Xiao Jin was already no longer there. The dragon King lukewarmly said, "I have already locked Xiao Jin up in a secret room. After settling your matters, I will start to help him recover his life force."

I gratifyingly replied, "Thank you. I will be happy if Xiao Jin is alright."

The Dragon King said smilingly, "He's my child. I will definitely treat

him. I should be the one to thanking you. Even though my child has lost a large amount of life force, he is still brought back here safely by you. If you have any request, you can say them. I will try my best to fulfill them.”

I lowered my head and thought before suddenly saying, “I do not have any request for myself, but I want to plead to you to help save the other races in the world.” I thought, “If I can involve this old Dragon King in the battle, I will feel more relieved when the time comes.”

The Dragon King looked interested and replied, “Carry on.”

I composed myself before telling him what the God King had told me previously. After the Dragon King heard what I had to say, he sighed deeply and said, “You’re a good child. You are kindhearted. Actually, I already know everything. We have the same enemy, the Demon King. You perhaps don’t about this, but during that year of the great God and demon war my father had led the dragon clan to also participate in it.” Here, the old Dragon King’s eyes were filled with dejection.

He continued to say, “My father, the previous generation’s Dragon King, was killed by the Demon King. From then on, I inherited the Dragon King’s position. The God King once told me that even with his God’s power, he was still unable to eliminate the Demon King. There will be a day the Demon King will emerge again. However, at that time, a hero that has a short life, the Child of Light, will lead all of the brave warriors to have the ultimate battle against the Demon King.”

I was startled and replied, “It can’t be that Child of Light that has a short life is me, right?”

The Dragon King nodded. “That’s correct. It is you. If you aren’t that person, why would the God King give you the Holy Sword? Child, there are some matters that you won’t be able to escape from. Do you understand?”

I smiled embarrassedly, “Even if I want to escape, will I be able to? You can stop worrying. I will do my best.”

The old Dragon King noded. “Child, I have already recovered your life force that you sacrificed for my child and also strengthedn your bones.

Your path is still an extremely long one.”

This was not bad. It was worth the trip. It had actually recovered my life force. This was just too amazing. Haha!

I said with gratitude, “Thank you for recovering my life force.”

The old Dragon King shook his head. “After a couple of years, I will lead the eight elders of the dragon clan to participate in the great God and demon war in the future. You can be reassured of that. If the Demon King wants to invade the whole world, he will definitely not let my clan off.”

I respectfully nodded. “I represent the human race of the world to thank you beforehand.”

The old Dragon King replied, “My child’s dependence on you is very strong. I know that you two will be inseparable partners in life. I will not forcefully keep you two apart. However, I have some conditions that you must agree to.”

I instantly became elated. I didn’t want to be separated from Xiao Jin. This was too perfect.

I hastily replied, “Please state your terms. As long as I can be with Xiao Jin, I will accept any conditions.”

The Dragon King chuckled and replied, “I have three conditions. The first is that you must protect the safety of my child and not let him be fatally wounded.”

Chapter 13: The Dragon's Conditions

I resolutely said, "If someone wants to hurt Xiao Jin, he must step over my dead body."

The old Dragon King nodded with satisfaction before he replied, "Good. The second condition is that no matter what the outcome is in the future, you must become my Dragon clan's protector and also not expose any of my Dragon clan's secrets to the other races."

I replied, "Of course, I will definitely not breathe a word of it."

The Dragon King continued to say, "The third condition is that you must bring my child back to inherit the Dragon King's position."

After hearing that condition, I couldn't help but be stunned. "It will definitely happen. Is that even counted as a condition?"

The old Dragon King bitterly smiled, "It definitely is a condition, and also the most important one. Do you know, even if we successfully annihilate the Demon King, your human lifespan is only 100 years while our Dragon clan has a lifespan of a few 10,000 years. Once you die from old age, with my child's feelings for you, he will definitely want to die with you. In that case, my five claws gold dragon lifeline will end with his."

'Ah! Would that be the case?' I thought of Xiao Jin's feelings, which confirmed the old Dragon King's words.

I sighed and said, "Dragon King, you can be reassured that I will definitely bring Xiao Jin back to inherit your position."

The Dragon King frowned and replied, "Don't agree to it so fast! Even though my interactions with Xiao Jin aren't many, I can see that he is extremely stubborn and won't be easy to convince."

I smiled and replied, "I have my own plans for the matter."

The old Dragon King who was still worrying said, "Tell me your plans."

I used an extremely soft voice as I told my plans to him. The old Dragon King laughed. "You are really sinister. I will be able to relax in that case."

However, I won't be satisfied with only your sayings for my first condition. You must undergo my test."

"Test? What test?"

The old Dragon King smiled sinisterly. "You can pick anyone from my eight elders of the dragon clan and only if you defeat him, can you leave."

Wah! He was really sinister and still talked about me. I replied as I wailed, "They are all so abnormal. How can I fight against them?"

The old Dragon King replied, "It isn't up to you. I will give you a month's time to increase your abilities. After that, we will commence the competition. As for my child, he will not be able to leave this place temporarily. I will need a year's time to recover his life force and make him become a real Dragon King. After he finishes my tasks, I will directly send him to find you. Of course, you must first accomplish the test that I just gave you." From his words, it was to increase Xiao Jin's powers.

Would I stand a chance in fighting with the Dragon clan's abnormal elders? My face instantly turned green like a bitter gourd. However, for the sake of being with Xiao Jin, I must give it a try. I clenched my teeth and replied. "Alright. I will fight with that green dragon." As I said, I pointed at the huge green dragon who was standing not far away.

The old Dragon King was stunned and said, "Xiao Qing is the strongest among the elders. Do you want to reconsider?"

I replied with determination, "I don't need to reconsider. I pick him." 'Hmph! Stupid green dragon! You hit me, I will definitely humiliate you.'

The old Dragon King replied, "That's great! I will give you a month. After a month, we will compete outside. In this month, you must work hard. If not, you will definitely be unable to defeat Xiao Qing. Xiao Qing is well known for his iron body. His speciality is physical attacks. He can deal with 100 behemoths without any difficulties. From what I heard from my son, you are a magician. You must remember that our dragon's magic defense is extremely strong. Alright! I will leave it as it is for now. You will live at the hole you were in before coming here. If you have any problems, you can find Xiao Qing. I will first head back to treat my child."

I replied, "I understand. Thank you." After saying that, I left with the green dragon. As they walked, the green dragon said. "Aiya! It has been a long time since I can use my strength. My weary old bones can finally move. Brat, even though you are so small, you seem to be good to beat. You must train hard in the month so as to not disappoint me." After he said that, he pinched his dragon claws again with an elated expression. The Dragon clan's life was extremely dull so with me to excite his life, he was definitely happy.

Seeing his expression, it was clear that he already treated me as his sandbag. I coldly said, "Xiao Qing, just you wait and see how I will deal with you."

When the Dragon King previously called him Xiao Qing, he was a little unhappy. The Dragon King was still older than him after all, so he didn't dare to say anything. With my call, he raged furiously and shouted, "I don't allow you to call me Xiao Qing! I am much older than you. You are from my younger generations. How can you be this rude?"

I sneered and replied, "Who is your younger generation? Xiao Qing, quickly get me something to eat."

The green dragon angrily walked around me, but didn't dare to hit me. He viciously said, "Brat! You are currently so wild and ruthless. I will deal with you after a month."

We already walked out of the hole at that time. The green dragon called a smaller blue dragon over. "Xiao Xiao Lan, I will pass this brat to you. You will have to satisfy all of his needs. I will go first. You must remember to protect him."

As the blue dragon saw the fading back of the green dragon, he unhappily said, "He dumped his burden on me again. Who did I provoke?"

I cordially greeted him. "This dragon brother, can you get your little brother something to eat?"

The blue dragon looked at me curiously and replied. "Are you that human being that brought back our young King?"

I nodded. "That's right! It is me, why?"

The blue dragon replied, "So humans looked like this. This is still my first time in seeing one." As he said that, he used his claws to catch me to look at me in detail.

I knew he didn't have any bad intentions so I didn't resist him. I bitterly smiled and said, "Have you seen enough? If you have, please quickly get me something to eat. I must train as soon as possible. Your Dragon King has given me one month before I have to fight with that stupid dragon."

After the blue dragon heard my words, he was shocked. With the release of his dragon claws, I instantly dropped down. As it happened too suddenly, I fell until I was totally muddle-headed.

The blue dragon hastily clenched his huge fist and asked, "Are you alright? I am sorry for what just happened. I was absentminded previously."

Chapter 14: Naming Dragons

Since he had already apologized like that, what more could I say? I rubbed my butt before standing up. “Why did that stupid dragon call you Xiao Xiao Lan?”

The blue dragon replied, “It is how we call each other here. We call each other by colours. Let’s use that green dragon as an example. The Dragon King will call him Xiao Xiao Qing. A dragon from the same species, but younger by a generation, will be called Xiao Xiao Qing, therefore I am the pitiful Xiao Xiao Lan.” As he said that, he gave me a grievous look.

I curiously asked, “What if there are two dragons of the same species in a generation?”

The blue dragon’s expression darkened. “In our Dragon clan, that will rarely ever happen. Every species generally has only one heir. If two dragons really appeared in the same generation as you said, they will be called Xiao Xiao X1 and Xiao Xiao X2. Even though I am already 8000 years old, I am still younger by a generation from Xiao Qing. However, I am a well known figure in the Dragon clan’s young generation.” As he said that, he showed off a posture that he thought looked very cool.

I wanted to fall down and faint. These dragons were really uncivilized. I meant well as I asked, “How about I give you a new name? Xiao Xiao Lan doesn’t sound good.”

The blue dragon immediately became elated. “Ah! My human brother, I thank you for that. Please quickly give me a name.”

I thought and replied, “I will call you Ice Blue. How about that? Is that impressive enough?”

The blue dragon silently said that name. “Ice Blue...Ice Blue.. Wah! That’s perfect! I have my own name. I have my own name.” As he said that, he turned and ran away.

I shouted at his back, “Hey! Please bring me something to eat!” I didn’t even know whether or not he heard me, but I shook my head before

solitarily going back into the hole I had woken up in earlier.

‘How can I win against that stupid green dragon? His power is just too strong. Even if I team up with Xiao Jin to fight him with all our might, we may not be able to defeat him.’

I had only a month’s time. Even if I improve as fast as possible, it would be impossible to defeat that dragon. I never thought that I, a Magister, couldn’t even defeat a dragon. The Dragon King said that their magic defenses were good. He definitely wasn’t bluffing me. Any magic spells lower than the advanced spells would be useless against them.

‘If I want to defeat him, I must move as I fight him. His body is so huge. His agility will definitely be lower than mine. I must be the first one to attack him during the competition by using short distance teleportation to hit him. After that, I will use my chantless Light Sword. However, the attack power of the Light Sword will probably just be an itch to him. What to do? He definitely won’t give me time to chant my spells. It looks like I can only use the magic and battle spirit fusion strike. I may stand a chance then. The goal for this month is to strengthen the power of the magic and battle spirit fusion strike and lessen the time of its gathering speed. I can only see my fate after that.’

With a goal, my mood improved. Just when I wanted to prepare and start practicing, I suddenly felt something similar to an earthquake.

The whole floor was flooded with “Hong! Hong!” sounds. It sounded like dense thunder clouds were coming.

‘What was going on?’ I used a short teleportation spell to get out of the hole. I was shocked at what I was seeing in front of me.

I saw all kinds of dragons. There seemed to be 200 of them. It looked like the entire Dragon clan’s forces had gathered. Some were flying and some were standing. Their sizes and shapes differed, but they all were threatening in their grandeur.

What shocked me was that their target seemed to be me as they formed an enormous circumference around me and slowly moved towards me. There were peculiar gazes from all of the dragon’s eyes. They seemed to

want to gobble me up.

Not to mention myself, but even if it was the God King seeing so many dragons, he would most certainly have a headache.

I forcefully smiled and said, “Wah! Greetings to all of you. I’ve just arrived and look forward to all of your advice.”

The crowd of dragons didn’t care about me and continued to constantly surround me. This was bad. It couldn’t be that they think of me as dessert, right? But I’m so small. I probably wouldn’t even be able to satisfy a single dragon and there were so many. How were they going to share me? Such a thing shouldn’t be the case. Could it be that stupid green dragon called them over? That also shouldn’t be it. The only one that could move the entire Dragon clan should be the Dragon King. The green dragon wouldn’t have this ability.

When the crowd had me completely surrounded, four hundred large eyes met my small eyes. I vigilantly said, “What do all of you want? I am the Dragon King’s guest, so you can’t just do whatever you’d like.” Seeing that they hadn’t replied to me and that all of their dragon claws began to stir, I knew this was going to be bad. They must have come here due to the matter regarding the life force of Xiao Jin. I hastily said, “Wah! Dragon brothers, if you want to vent your anger, please let me keep my little life, and also when you hit me, please don’t hit my face.” After I said that, I crouched down and used all of my magic power to protect my entire body.

After a long time, there still wasn’t any response. They were still looking at me as before. Suddenly, there was movement from within the crowd of dragons and the blue dragon that ran away earlier squeezed himself into the middle with me.

The few small dragons at the side made some sounds towards him. Ice Blue puffed out his chest and said, “Leave it to me!” I didn’t know what he had just promised to them.

After Ice Blue said that, he walked over and lowered his huge head and seemed to curry favor with me. “Human brother, the name that you have

given me is extremely resounding. For so many years, my clan members have never had their own names. Can you also.....”

Sigh! So it was for this. I wiped away the cold sweat from my forehead and calmed down. I replied smilingly, “Isn’t it to give all of them names? There won’t be a problem. Don’t worry. I am well known for being handsome, outstandingly elegant, with the manners of a jade tree and am a powerful yet exceptionally witty mage amongst humans. How can this matter be considered as a problem to me?”

Ice Blue was stunned and asked, “What does handsome, outstandingly elegant, with the manners of a jade tree and a powerful yet exceptionally witty mage mean?”

I toppled heavily. I smiled awkwardly, “They are all phrases that describes something that is good. Alright. Let’s not continue to talk about that. Are they all here to get a name?”

All of the large and small dragons simultaneously let out a long dragon roar. They had confirmed my question. The sound was definitely loud enough to topple the mountains and overturn the seas.

I jumped in shock and said, “Alright. Please lower your voice. You’re scaring me to death. You can come forward to me in accordance of your age, from the youngest to the oldest.”

These dragons with tyrannical powers were all like obedient babies due to wanting me to give them a good name. Every dragon that came over looked at me with hope filled eyes. There wasn’t even a hint of a dragon’s usual loftiness.

“You are covered with red scales and there are three spikes on your back. Your dragon breath is fire. You look really bold and powerful so I will give you a name, Flamy.”

“Your dragon scales are purple,....., I will call you Purple Dream.”

Chapter 15: Backed by the Dragons

Just like that, I wracked my brain for the entire day to give all of the dragons names that they were satisfied with. After that, even Xiao jin's mother, who was the huge white dragon, also came. I also gave her a name, White Queen as she was the Dragon King's wife. Haha! After giving so many dragons their names, I still felt very accomplished.

I finally finished that task when night came. Except for the Dragon King and the Green Dragon that had 'offended' me, all of the dragons had their own name."

After the crowd of dragons had dispersed, I also went back to my hole. The Green Dragon that had been hiding at the side ran over and pulled Ice Blue. "Xiao Xiao Lan, what is that brat up to? I was too far away so I couldn't see clearly what happened."

Ice Blue arrogantly said, "Please don't call me Xiao Xiao Lan anymore. I have a new name. Please call me Ice Blue instead. The human brother has previously given us all our own names. Haha! Uncle Xiao Qing, I am afraid that you are the only one that doesn't have a new name. I am heading off. Ice Blue...Ice Blue.. I am extremely satisfied with my name."

After looking at Ice Blue who was on cloud nine, the green dragon used his large claws to hit his head. He muttered, "If I knew this will happen, I won't have offended him. What can I do now? I can't just go up to him and ask for a new name." After he said that, he sighed before walking away.

As for me, after heading back to my hole, I ate all kinds of fruits that the bunch of dragons had given me. (There were also some wild beasts. However, it was too troublesome to make it edible so I just ate the fruits. I am lazy.) It soothed my mood. Even though it was a little tiring today, I made good relationships with those dragons. It would definitely be beneficial to the competition in a month's time.

Starting from the next day on, I had given myself tasks. I would train battle spirit in the morning and then train the gathering speed for my

magic and battle spirit fusion spell. Afterwards, I would meditate. As I slept, with the two Gold Dans, the gathering speed of my magic power had increased drastically. It was not like one plus one equals two kind of increases, but rather twice as much. After my two Gold Dans turned completely transparent, my magic power would be able to breakthrough from the Magister's realm so the good effects of lying down to meditate could be seen clearer.

After working hard for a month, I could clearly feel the improvement in my magic. No matter if it was the God King that had shed my mortal body and exchanged my bones or the Dragon King that had changed my physique, the results were amazing. My battle spirit had improved rapidly, my body was much stronger than before. My physical capability was abundant and I had trained to the best standards for the battle. Even though my power might not reach the Radiant Knight rank, it had at least reached the Heaven Knight rank. My battle spirit had almost reached the God Battle Spirit's class. Of course, my martial skills were still bad, however it shouldn't matter as I trained my battle spirit to be better at using my magic.

Even though I still had not reached the speed of using chantless intermediate light spells and Elementary spells, the gathering speed had decreased drastically. I currently only need 3 seconds to cast a fusion magic and battle spirit spell that was stronger than before.

A month soon passed. The Dragon King had told a small dragon to pass his words to me to prepare myself for the test tomorrow.

In this one month, I was already very familiar with the dragons. They had already accepted me, a human being. No matter if it was 1 or 2 thousand small dragons or the 10000 years and above elder dragons, they all called me their brother.

I had never seen the green dragon since that day. He probably hated me to death. He definitely wouldn't hold back his strengths. We would just follow my preplanned fighting tactics tomorrow. With the Dragon King's supervision, I should have no problem with keeping my small life.

.....

There was an extremely flat and sparse land in the middle of Dragon Valley. It was the best place to hold competitions. The green dragon stood in front of me with his eyes glaring like a tiger watching his prey. The Dragon King also walked out from his hole. From what he had said, Xiao Jin had started close doors training. His life force was slowly recovering.

The Dragon King's imposing voice rang out. "The test begins. Xiao Qing, you must remember not to kill him." After he said that, with a wave of his claws, an enormous golden transparent barrier formed to enclose us at the center of it.

The green dragon extended his dragon claws. "Brat, if I don't cripple you, I will no longer be called Xiao Qing."

The group of dragons surrounding us roared simultaneously. From the huge dragons that knew how to speak, it seemed that they were cheering me on. The green dragon yelled furiously at the barrier, "Why are you all extending your dragon claws? You are being biased towards outsider! Quickly cheer me on."

Ice Blue replied, "Uncle Xiao Qin, it can't be that you don't know that we were given his grace, right? Furthermore, we are all cheering for the weaker competitor. Zhang Gong! You can do it! Zhang Gong! Go for it!"

The green dragon was so angry that his entire body shivered. The Dragon King yelled, "Why aren't you two fighting? Quickly start the test!"

Xiao Qing instantly moved 30 meters ahead and swiped his tail at me. He used the same move that he did previously to strike at me horizontally.

I had long prepared to used short teleportation before the Dragon King said those words. When I saw him move, I immediately teleported away. As the speed was extremely fast, the green dragon's tail hit my after image.

I mockingly said, "I am here!"

The green dragon angrily dashed over, but I didn't counter attack. I

dodged all around him. Suddenly, I thought of a good plan, I started to run in a circle in the barrier that the Dragon King had erected. I gradually increased my pace. When I ran at my maximum speed, there was my silhouette from all directions. The green dragon got dizzy from my movement.

I struck out at that moment using the fusion magic and battle spirit spell that I gathered earlier. Due to the remnant images, it seemed that I was striking at the green dragon from all directions, making it impossible for him to avoid the attack.

“Hong!” The long white light with a tinge of gold struck on his back.

I had struck him with all of my might. The longer I stored up the spell, the stronger it got. It was definitely stronger than any advanced spells that I used before.

The green dragon screeched out in pain. The scales on his back spewed out blood from my strike as his body heavily struck the ground.

The Dragon King and White Queen paled as they didn’t think that I would have such a powerful attack.

Actually, I knew that even though I had injured the green dragon with this strike, it would not be wounded fundamentally. Even though I had estimated that his defences was extremely strong, his durability was still beyond my expectations.

The green dragon gradually stood up. His eyes had turned blood shot red. He gently flapped his wings and flew up into the sky with his body emitting intense green light rays. I knew that his next move would definitely be world shaking. Blood was still constantly dripping from his body.

Chapter 16: The Holy Sword's Handle

I didn't dare to slight him. I immediately started chanting. As I chanted, the green dragon's mouth was also continuously moving. This was bad. It was a dragon language spell. I couldn't help but to be frightened as I didn't know if my power would be strong enough to block his attack.

I would stake it all with this one exchange, "Light elements, my great friends, I plead for you to use your power to form unlimited light rays to form small stars to eliminate the enemy before you, Bright Star's Shine!"

I rapidly gathered light elements beside me and continuously formed them into stars in front of me, forming layer after layer of defence. I quietly heaved a sigh of relief.

At this moment, the green dragon's entire body lit with green light. His eyes had recovered their previous sober and calmness. He chuckled at me and said, "It has been 10000 years since I had been injured, excluding the previous great God and Demon War. I will let you see the true power of the Dragon clan."

This was terrible. His entire body's green ray formed an enormous wave moving towards me. I hastily gathered the stars in front of me and released the second fusion spell.

When the magic and battle spirit fusion spell's light ray and the wave from the green dragon collided, the wave didn't stop at all after smashing through the white power from the fusion spell and charged towards the star defense area.

The stars had temporarily stopped the advancement of the wave but its strength were rapidly diminishing. When the stars and the wave collided, it gave off "Zi! Zi!" sounds.

I knew that the stars wouldn't be able to block the attack so I immediately cast a Holy Swords protection spell and also gathered my battle spirit in front of my body.

The charging wave succeeded in breaking through the stars defense area and heavily hit on my last defence. I didn't get hit head on, but flew

out along with its power.

Even if that was the case, I was still unable to break through this tremendously strong power. “Hong!” I smashed into the gold barrier that the Dragon King had cast. Due to the collision, the barrier rippled. I violently spout out blood as I was seriously hurt.

I had used all of my abilities to forcefully block the advancement of the green dragon’s attack but also suffered serious injuries. I had once again experienced how powerful a dragon’s power was.

The green dragon was also shocked that I could block his attack. He immediately pounced over, getting ready to hit me so as to make me completely lose my fighting power.

It was just like the final match of the Advanced Academies’ competition. I had once again faced the fear of facing death. ‘Xiao Jin, is it really impossible for me to be with you?’ My heart felt as though it had been torn apart. At the crucial moment, I similarly felt that the Holy Sword power in my body surged out. I knew that at crucial moments, the Holy Sword would awaken temporarily again. My eyes had turned completely gold as the Holy Sword power surged out of my body.

What was different from before was that I had some understandings on how to use the Holy Sword so I could barely be able to control it. My body elevated and my body shone with peculiar gold light rays. An enormous gold light sword gathered in front of me similar to the previous time. The power emitted from the Holy Sword was much stronger in comparison. The green dragon could already feel the immense pressure, but he knew that it was impossible for him to retreat. There was also not enough time for him to cast another dragon language magic spell. He clenched his teeth and curled up into a ball before he rapidly charged at me with his back facing outwards.

With a single thought, the light sword shot out. The Dragon King was shouting from outside the barrier. He had already felt that something was wrong. The power had made him felt threatened. To protect the green dragon’s safety, two light rays shot out from his two enormous dragon

horns. One was shot to counter my light sword and the other was towards the green dragon.

The Dragon King's golden light and my light sword collided first. With the valiance of the Dragon King, due to using his power in a rush, he could only slow down the advancement of the light sword. The light sword was a little sluggish as it quickly engulfed the Dragon King's golden light before continuing to fly towards the green dragon.

The Dragon King hollered, "Xiao Qing, be careful!" Even though he had warned the green dragon, he knew that with all of the power that the green dragon possessed, it would still be impossible for him to withstand the light sword's power. It would be too late for him to gather more powers as well. There was pain that was shown from the Dragon King's eyes. He never would have thought that I could use the God King's Radiant Holy Sword. Actually, even though the Holy Sword had only been half awoken, I used only a sliver of its power.

Just as the Radiant Holy Sword's power was going to hit the green dragon, I gently moved the power of the Holy Sword upwards and towards the left before rapidly sending it out. I got a beautiful home run just like when the green dragon had previously used his tail to swipe at me.

The enormous green dragon's body broke through the Dragon King's barrier before heavily hitting at the nearby stone wall. With his strong body, he shouldn't be in much danger.

I didn't have the time to laugh as I had used up all of my strength. The Dragon King shot out some power to catch me who was dropping down from the sky. With the Dragon King's treatment, I felt much better. I had recovered some of my body's strength. I said feebly, "Dragon King, does this count as I have pass the test?"

The Dragon King sighed. "I never thought that the God King had given the Radiant Holy Sword. Thank you for holding back."

I smiled, "Your Dragon clan members are so few. Moreover, I don't have any deep grudges towards him. Why would I take his life?"

The Dragon King replied, "To be honest, I suggested this test just to

make things difficult for you. I and Xiao Bai, ah no! I heard that you gave her a name called White Queen, are reluctant to be separated from our son. Do you know why he left the Dragon Valley previously? It was because of that old fellow, the God King. He said that whoever can hatch the dragon egg, that person will have the means to inherit the Radiant God's power. Just like that, our child was separated from us. This time, you have sent him back with such difficulties. We also don't want to be apart from him."

I nodded. "I understand your feelings. What kind of parents doesn't want their children to be by their side? How about this? After Xiao Jin helps me to settle the Demon King's problem, I will let him return to Dragon Valley to accompany you all. I will also frequently come to see him at that time. If he misses me, he can also come to find me." Xiao Jin was their child after all. Which parents would want to be separated from their children?

The Dragon King happily nodded his head. "That will be great! I represent the Dragon clan to thank you for that."

Chapter 17: The Dragon's Gift

I laughed and said, "What's there to thank me for? Xiao Jin is your child after all." In my heart, I sniggered, 'This Dragon King is really silly. If he doesn't want Xiao Jin to go with me, can I beat all of the dragons? Won't it still be his call? Now, I am just doing someone a favor at a low cost.' Actually, the one that was silly wasn't the Dragon King but rather our leading actor, as he didn't know that Xiao Jin had formed a contract with him. Without his permission, Xiao Jin would be unable to leave him. If he died, Xiao Jin would also die. This was why the Dragon King used every possible means to make him promise not to allow Xiao Jin to die with him.

The Dragon King replied, "How about this? Since you agree to let Xiao Jin return, you are the benefactor of our Dragon clan. I will impart to you a special Dragon language spell from the Dragon clan. What do you want to learn?"

This was great. I really had to think this through. My eyes lit up. "I want to learn how to break through magic seals." This spell had saved me a couple of times. It was not bad to have the power to eliminate all kinds of magic seals.

The Dragon King astonishingly nodded his head. "You really know how to pick. This spell in the dragon language is an advanced spell. I will impart this spell to you."

The Dragon King's body shone with gold light. Two cold lights shone out from his large eyes before deeply piercing into my own. Instantly, there were countless strange symbols that appeared in my mind. The Dragon King said, "This is the chant to break magic seals. If you want to use it, you just have to read exactly as it appears. ."

The chant was very simple. It was just like a little tongue twister. I replied, "Thank you. Is Xiao Jin's closed door training going well?"

The Dragon King replied, "It is currently going well. I used a few treasures of the Dragon clan to increase his power and life force. He has

matured too quickly so his foundation is still unstable. The eight elders and I will take turns to help train him. You don't have to worry about him. After a year and after his close door training has ended, I will let him find you. No matter where you are, he will always be able to find your position. You can totally be reassured about that."

I nodded. "I feel relieved that way."

The Dragon King said, "After resting for a day, you can leave this place tomorrow."

The last day with the dragon clan was the busiest day by far. Almost all of the dragons gave me some kind of presents. As the dragons had the hobby of collecting, they had all given me different kinds of gemstones, a big piece of diamond, different colours of magic crystals, other rare products, et cetera. My spatial space was filled to the brim with gifts.

Seeing them so passionate, I was a little embarrassed to just leave as I had taken everything that they gave to me. Haha! 'I am rich! After heading back and selling this off, I will at least have a few tens of thousands of diamond coins. HeHe! I won't be afraid to treat Mu Zi to good food in the future.'

After awakening from my money dream, I packed my belongings. Actually, there wasn't much to pack. I just changed a set of new clothes. After that, I walked to the Dragon King's hole to bid him farewell.

The Dragon King wasn't there. There was only White Queen there in the hole.

I asked, "Aunt White Queen, where is the Dragon King?"

White Queen smiled and said, "The Dragon King is currently helping to train our child. He told me to tell you that you don't need to bid him farewell and tell you to stay safe. Child, you are leaving. Aunty does not have anything good to give you. I will give you this. This is something that I inadvertently picked up many years ago. There were a lot of them at that time." After she said that, a white light floated towards me.

I extended my hand forward to receive the white light. As the light ray

gradually dulled, it was an exquisite magic staff. It was roughly 1.2 meters long. Its body was made up of an unknown metal was shining with gold light rays. There was a light green dragon on the staff's body. The dragon head was the staffs head piece. Its mouth had a large transparent gemstone between its jaws, the dragon eyes made of two red gemstones. Two dragon wings slightly opened on two sides of the magic staff. The green dragon staff looked like it was alive. It seemed that his entire body was carved out of a large piece of gemstone. A precious light ray illuminated the entire magic staff. The magic staff kept on emitting power. I knew that it was definitely a top grade magic staff.

I fondled with the magic staff and said, "Aunty, thank you for this gift. This present is too precious."

White Queen said smilingly, "This magic staff is not very useful to our Dragon clan. It is known as Sukrad's magic staff. This was the weapon that the Dragon God Sukrad used that year."

I asked in amazement, "There is also a Dragon God?"

White Queen nodded. "There definitely is. The Dragon God was not in charge of our Dragon clan. He was just responsible for our interactions between the God clan and our Dragon clan. His power was also extremely strong. He unfortunately sacrificed himself during the Great God and Demon War. Before he died, he left this magic staff to us. I will pass it on to you today. Even though it is much weaker than your Radiant Holy Sword, you should be able to use it with your current strength. You can keep and use it."

I replied emotionally, "This gift is too precious. I thank you for this, Aunty."

White Queen shook her head. "You don't have to thank me. We also have selfish motives. I only hope that you will protect our child's safety in the in the future. It will be your greatest gratitude to us." She had spoken so honestly. However, even if that was the case, I was still thankful.

I rode on Ice Blue's back and waved saying my farewells to the crowd that came to send me off. Ice Blue expanded his enormous wings to fly

through the clouds and into the sky.

I asked him, “How is that stupid green dragon?”

Ice Blue replied, “It is all thanks to you holding back that Uncle Xiao Qing only suffered superficial wounds. His condition isn’t bad. After resting, he should be fine.”

I laughed and said, “When you head back, tell him that I have given him a name called Blank Green Head.”

Ice Blue obviously didn’t understand what Blank Green Head means. He elatedly replied, “Ah! That’s great! After I head back, Uncle Xiao Qing will definitely be happy. Even though he didn’t say, we all know that he has been envying us because of our names.”

I sniggered but didn’t say anything.

Ice Blue had flown me to the entrance of the Cloud and Mist Mountain Range before reluctantly heading back. My mood was indescribable great. This was extremely good. Even though I had experienced some difficulty, I had settled Xiao Jin’s matter and also got the support of the Dragon clan. The burden on my shoulders lightened a little.

After settling this matter, I should head home to visit my parents. There was still a month’s time before school reopens. I could still make it.

Chapter 18: Warm Familial Love

I set up a permanent magic array at a relatively secretive location so that I wouldn't need to walk and could instead teleport directly back here next time.

I drew a returning magic array beside it. This place was far away from my house. Thus, to be together with my family for a few more days, I had decided to head back using the magic array. Even though the distance was a little far, with my current magic power, there shouldn't be any problems.

I stood at the center of the magic array, raising the Sukrad's staff, and muttering the chant for the returning spell. Speaking of the magic staff, I am growing increasingly fond of it. It wasn't only just because of its enormous power, but also because of its beautiful appearance. This was the most beautiful magic staff that I had ever seen; just holding it gave me an imposing feeling.

As I chanted the retuning spell, the Sukrad's staff's transparent gemstone shone out misty gold light rays before it activated the magic array. The feeling of the return was different from before due to the Sukrad's staff. It shot out a gold light barrier that protected me so I didn't feel the twisting and tearing of space.

I had arrived at my destination, my hometown, without any discomfort.

Standing on the permanent magic array that I had previously established, I cast my eyes upon the small village that looked more prosperous than before, my heart filling with warmth. I shouted, "Mom, dad, I'm back!"

I held on to the Sukrad's staff and rapidly ran towards the village. The Sukrad's staff had a special property, I couldn't store it in my spatial space so I could only hold it by hand.

When the villagers saw me, they greeted me excitedly. Since my magic was outstanding with my status as a Royal Advanced Magic Academy's student, I had become a well known figure in the village. I hadn't even

reached the entrance of the house when my parents appeared to welcome me. This might be because I had given them quite a sum of money so they needn't work for a living anymore and could instead stay home to practice their magic.

I emotionally shouted, "Father, Mom, I am home!"

Mom cried as she hugged me. "Child, you're finally back. Mom really missed you this past half year."

The village chief came over. "Zhang Gong, you're the pride of our village. I will go and prepare for your family of three to come over to my house to have lunch at noon and hold a welcoming reception."

I said smilingly, "How can I do that? It will be too troublesome for you."

The Village Chief replied, "How is this troublesome? Don't be modest. Father of Zhang Gong, you all come over as well."

Father replied, "Alright! We thank you for your hospitality."

The Village Chief happily walked away. The rest of the villagers surrounded our family of three, especially me. They kept on asking me questions. Their enthusiasm was almost unbearable to me. When some people saw my beautiful magic staff, they insisted on examining it. My head was spinning as I had never encountered such a situation before in my life. This was really humans fear becoming famous, pigs fear becoming fat.

This was really even more tiring than fighting consecutive battles. Finally, I was able to escape home with my parents.

I had noticed after coming home that the house was totally different. The entire house was three times larger. The rooms had changed from four rooms to eight. The middle of the living room was bright and spacious. I astonishingly asked Father, "Father, why has our house become like this? Did you spend money on it?" The money I gave them was sufficient to build such a house. However, it wasn't like mom's and dad's style. They usually preferred to live a low-profiled life.

Father smiled bitterly, "Your mother and I would never waste money on

a thing like this, our previous house was sufficient for us. This was given to us by the Village Chief. I rejected him initially, but the Village Chief said that the house couldn't be too unpresentable when you marry in the future and insisted on getting it done up. You take a look at how big it is right now, cleaning it is such a chore and now we'll owe them a favour for nothing at all."

So, there were that many benefits to being strong with magic, even the house was renovated. I asked, "Is there something that the Village Chief and the others want from me? If not, why are they fawning on you like this?"

Mother shook her head and replied, "They don't. However, ever since you became outstanding, our standard of living and position in life has completely changed. Currently, apart from Village Chief's house, our house is the largest and the degree of respect received from the entire village sticks out like a sore thumb."

I replied smilingly, "Isn't that great?"

Father replied, "Why is that good? The feeling of being looked at by everyone is really unbearable

I replied, "If you're not used to this life here, I can bring you to live somewhere else. We can just return this house to them."

Mother shook her head. "Your father and I are nearing the big five-zero already, this place has rolling hills and crystal clear water, we aren't leaving to go anywhere. We know that you won't live here in the future, but you must come to visit us frequently. We don't ask anything else of you."

I nodded and clung onto mom's arms. "Mom, I will. If I marry in the future, I will follow your example in finding a place with a good environment to settle down. When the time comes, I will bring you over to have a look, and you can move over to live with me if you like the place."

Father teasingly replied, "Good boy! From your words, it seems that you have a partner already."

My face flushed. “Stop talking nonsense. Things have not even begun to take shape yet.”

Mother also understood this time and excitedly said, “Quickly tell mom whose family that girl is from!”

I bitterly smiled, “I also don’t even know which family she is from. I can only tell you that she is my classmate at the academy. She is called Mu Zi Mo. She isn’t very pretty, but her personality is good.”

Father chuckled, “I don’t mind if she is pretty or not, as long as she has a good personality. Look at your mother, even though she isn’t that beautiful, I am still in love with her for so many years. Haha!”

Hearing Dad’s front words, Mom’s eyebrows had became vertical. It looked like she was going to blow a fuse. However, after hearing the last sentence, she instantly softened. She angrily said, “You senile man! If I’m not pretty, could it be that you’re the pretty one? You don’t have a single bit of self-awareness.”

Father didn’t refute what Mom had said and told me, “Son, are you tired? You should get some rest.”

I shook my head. “Father, I am not tired at all as I used the returning magic array to come back, so the journey was very easy.”

Father said in amazement, “Where did you use the returning magic array? It should be a high level magic.”

I nodded. “It isn’t too far away either. Your son’s current abilities is extraordinary. What is a small returning magic array to me?”

Chapter 19: Returning to the Academy

Father suddenly became serious and said, “Don’t be too complacent. Arrogance is the biggest obstacle for a magician to surpass.”

I struck out my tongue and replied, “I understand.”

Mom protected me by saying, “You’re hateful. Our son just came back and you are lecturing him already. Our Zhang Gong is strong.”

Father showed a helpless expression. “You will spoil him this way.”

I smiled mischievously, “How can it be that way? I am the most obedient.”

Father replied, “Since you are not tired, let’s go to the Village Chief’s house. We must go and face him. He has been taking good care of us while you weren’t at home after all.”

I replied, “Must we head there now? Let’s wait for a while longer. Father, Mom, how are your magic training going?”

Father replied arrogantly said, “It is going very well. Even though we gave up our original magics for light magic, we still have good results. I can freely use any Intermediate light magic. Your mom is almost at the same level as me. She is slightly lousier than your father.”

Mom rebuked, “Who is lousier than you? Didn’t you lose against me previously and ran away?”

Father embarrassedly smiled and said, “I was going easy on you. It can’t be that you didn’t see that correctly?”

Mom revealed a disdainful expression. “Zhang Gong, you can teach us new spells. Our improvement is quite fast.”

I tested Father and Mom’s magic power and said frowning, “As you didn’t initially learn light magic, your magic power isn’t pure enough. It will be difficult to learn advanced magic.”

Father and Mom dejectedly looked at each other. Father replied, “If we can’t learn it, we will then forget about it. We mustn’t forcefully learn it.”

I could see their determination for magic. After all, in this Kingdom, who didn't want to become an expert in using magic. I suddenly thought of an idea and said smilingly, "Don't be uneasy ! I have a plan."

After saying that, I took out a few pure purple magic crystals from my spatial space. "Take a look! What is this?"

Father and Mom shouted in amazement, "Purple crystals?! How are there so many precious things in your possession and in such large quantity?"

I said smilingly, "How can this be regarded as something? I still have a lot of them. These were given to me by my friends. I definitely got them honorably. I will leave a few for you. After meditating, you will pass your magic power into the purple crystal. It not only will cleanse your magic power, it can also help to improve the gathering speed of your magic."

Mother took the largest purple crystal. "This is really beautiful. I want this piece."

Father said, "You can't do that! We must split everything by halves...." The two of them argued about the distribution. I finally became the mediator and gave them equal amounts of crystals to settle their argument.

I said, "That should be alright. Let's head off, my two guides. Aren't we supposed to be heading to the Village Chief's place?"

On the way to the Village Chief's house, Father suddenly told me, "Zhang Gong, I forgot to tell you this, but Ao De and Luo Yu are married."

I said surprised, "Really? They were in such a rush. They didn't wait for me to come see their wedding. That brat!"

After reaching the Village Chief's house, Ao De and Luo Yu came over. I walked over and gave Ao De a punch. "You're good! You brat! You didn't wait for me before you wed!"

Ao De held the place that had been hit and replied, pretending to be in pain, "Aiyo! A magician is hitting a person."

I laughed as I scolded him, “Aren’t you a magician?”

Luo Yu said smilingly, “That’s enough! Stop fooling around and quickly get inside.” After half a year, Luo Yu had become even more beautiful. I smiled and replied, “Congratulations in becoming my younger brother’s wife. You must discipline Ao De more from now on.”

Luo Yu replied, “Of course! If he cheats on me, I will tear his ear out.” Ao De hastily expressed that he wouldn’t even dare to do that. Seeing their blissful relationship, I really envied them.

The other mishap was that there was only the Village Chief’s family in the house, and he didn’t invite the other villagers. The Village Chief said, “I fear that you will find it annoying if there are too many people so I didn’t call for the others to come. Zhang Gong, quickly take your seats. The dishes will be coming up soon.”

Everyone ate the meal happily. To congratulate the marriage between Ao De and Luo Yu, I gave them each a purple crystal. The Village Chief was even more polite to our family.

When the next day began, I mentored my parents on how to learn advanced light magic and also helped them remove the impurities in their magic so that they will be able to learn even better magic spells.

Time flew past, and it was already rapidly approaching the reopening of the academy. In this month in the village, I was treated by everyone like the moon that was cared for by the stars. In this month, I realised that I had put on some weight.

“Father, I will be heading back tomorrow.”

“My son, learning is most important. Even though you have already achieved some accomplishments, you still need to work hard!”

I nodded. “Don’t worry! I will definitely work hard!”

Mother said smilingly, “You must bring back our daughter-in-law for us to take a look the next time you return.”

My face flushed red. “I will try my best. If I can really bring her back

with me, you will then really have a daughter in law.”

Mother replied, “You must work hard! We are waiting to carry our grandson!”

I used the returning magic array to return to the academy the next day. What I didn’t know was that a long time would pass before the next time I returned home.

I decided to visit Teacher Di.

Arriving at the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy, I saw Teacher Di taking care of his flowers and grasses. I shouted, “Teacher Di, I’m back!”

Teacher Di stood up and replied smilingly, “Zhang Gong, you’re back. How is it? Did you send Xiao Jin back?”

I replied, “The trip can be counted as successful. Not only did I send Xiao Jin back, I also gained the support of the Dragon clan. They have agreed to help us out during the final battle against the Demon King. I saw many different kinds and types of dragons. It was an eye opener.”

Teacher Di replied, “Quickly tell me what happened!”

I told him everything that happened in the Dragon Valley and also let Teacher Di see the Sukrad’s staff.

Teacher Di sighed. “Zhan Gong, your life is really exciting. If only I am 50 years younger, I will definitely want to roam these places with you.”

I clung onto Teacher Di’s arm, “Isn’t it that you, old man, have taught me well? Without you, how can I have what I have today?”

Teacher Di felt consoled and stroked his long mustache, expressing a heartfelt smile on his face.

Chapter 20: Ke Zha's Succession

Suddenly, Teacher Di's expression changed and said, "There is something that I must tell you. During this holiday, the Kingdom's King had passed away. Prince Ke Zha is now the King of Aixia."

I asked astonished, "Did the Emperor of the Kingdom really die?"

Teacher Di sighed. "That's correct. It was already very difficult for him to hold on to his life for such a long time. Once the Prince was in power, he immediately gave titles to us few old fellows. Everyone of us has a title of Royal Magician. You also received that title."

I chuckled. "The prince... Ah! I mean the Emperor of the Kingdom really knows how to win over the hearts of the people."

Teacher Di said, "I think that Ke Zha still did quite a good job with this matter. Not only did he reward us, he will also reward the two large families and Dun Yu Xi. He also made Chuan Song, Dun Yun Xi and I the mages to protect the Kingdom. Currently, the power of Duke Te Yi has gradually withered. Aixia should temporarily settle down for a while."

I replied smilingly, "Isn't that great? It is what we expected. We didn't do all that work for nothing."

Teacher Di nodded. "I have returned your title to Prince Ke Zha. You are still too young. You shouldn't act too ostentatiously. It won't give you any benefits that way. You won't blame teacher, right?"

I chuckled. "Why will I blame you? I can't even thank you enough. I don't want to be an official. I won't have any freedom. I still have the little piglet Mu Zi to take care of. Meat is precious and the price of the meat is even more precious. If there is a large piece of meat, when both of them occur together, then that life will be more suitable to me."

Teacher Di mockingly scolded, "I really don't know what to do with you brat. There is also a reason why I didn't want you to get that title as I didn't want you to be too distracted. Your task is extremely difficult. The Demon King isn't that easy to deal with. Even if you have the help from the Dragon clan, you still mustn't be complacent. Do you understand?"

I gravely nodded. "I understand. You don't have to worry about that."

.....

Mu Zi only returned on the opening day of school. Her complexion didn't look good. She looked extremely pale. I caringly asked, "Mu Zi, what happened to you? Are you unwell?"

Mu Zi forcefully smiled and replied, "It is alright. My head is just in a little pain."

I touched her cold forehead. "If you are really uncomfortable, you must tell me. According to your current magic power, you shouldn't fall ill easily."

Mu Zi replied, "I'm fine, really."

I felt that there was something different from Mu Zi's gazes towards me. It seemed that her love for me had deepened. However, there was a tinge of grief in her eyes. It seemed that something saddening had happened.

I called some of my good friends to eat together at the Ascending Jade Tide that afternoon. Ma Ke was flushed with success. With his good relationships with the Magisters and his own strong powers, it was already enough to make exceptions to be given the title Prince by Emperor Ke Zha. Furthermore, with the whole heartedness that Hai Shui was treating him, he was currently the happiest person in our group.

What made me curious was that Mu Zi seemed to have lost her appetite. When I gave her what she loved to eat, she only nibbled at it. She was completely different from before.

After the meal, I brought her to a quiet corner of the academy. "Mu Zi, what is the matter? Is there something wrong? Can you please tell me?"

Mu Zi suddenly threw herself at me and hugged me tightly. "Zhang Gong, I really don't want to be apart from you. I really don't want to!" As she said that, she cried.

She was extremely emotional right now. I gently patted her back. I knew

that if I didn't let her cry it out, it would be bad for her body.

After a long time, Mu Zi finally stopped crying. She looked up with tears on her face. "Zhang Gong, if our parents disagree for us to be together, what will you do?"

I caressed her long hair and gently replied, "Silly girl, what silly words are you saying? How will that happen? I am so outstanding! They will definitely like me." After I saying that, I even showed a disdainful look at the world.

Seeing my comical actions, Mu Zi laughed and turned her tears into laughter. After her mood lightened up a little, she went back to be dejected. She replied, "What I just told you is the truth. I am not joking with you. Please quickly answer me."

I resolutely replied, "There is no one that can tear us apart, even if it is your parents. If they don't agree with our relationship, I will try to convince them. If that really can't work, I will snatch you and bring you somewhere far away. We will hide at a place that has enchanting scenery so that they won't be able to find us. After a period of time, we will... Hehe! When the raw rice becomes cooked rice, I will bring you back to meet them again."

Mu Zi sighed and leaned on my opposite shoulder as she replied, "If that can work, it may be a good plan. But will it really work?"

I frowned and said, "From what you said, your parents really don't accept our relationship. Why am I not good enough? They haven't even met me before so why are they banning our relationship?"

Mu Zi replied, "You don't understand. It isn't whether you are good or not. It is just...."

Seeing that she wanted to talk but stopped, I anxiously asked, "Then what is it? Please tell me. We will then be able to think of a solution."

Mu Zi shook her head and looked at me aggrieved. "Forget it! You will find that out in the future. Let's walk one step at a time."

I was already out of options. She always said this sentence at every

crucial moment. However, I didn't have the heart to force her to say it. I just silently hugged her using my warm embrace to ease the burden in her heart.

I unintentionally looked down and saw that the shoulder she had been lying on was drenched. I said smilingly, "Aiya! You take a look at this. My shoulder is completely filled with your snivel and tears. You must help me wash my clothes." As I said that sentence, I immediately lightened the heavy atmosphere.

Mu Zi pushed me away with her face reddened. "You're detestable. You're the one that have snivels. I will help you to wash it off." As she said that, her eyes flashed with cunningness. A small waterball formed in her hand.

I look at her bewildered before turning around to run away. Mu Zi tossed the small water ball at me as she quickly chased after me.

After dinner, I had escorted Mu Zi back to her dormitory and also advised her to rest well.

I solitarily walked in the quiet training field. What Mu Zi had told me during the day really weighed deeply in my heart. It seemed that if Mu Zi and I wanted to be together, it wouldn't be easy. What was really going on with her?

Volume 7

Chapter 1: Assassin in the Palace

After returning to the dormitory, I couldn't fall asleep as I lay down on my bed. I truthfully couldn't be apart from Mu Zi. Even though we hadn't known each other for a long time and Mu Zi didn't have any special characteristics, other than her magic and appetite. But my heart had already been locked onto her. Her every frown and smile moved me. Seeing her in such pain, how could I feel good at all.

As I tossed and turned restlessly in bed, a sharp flute tune suddenly sounded outside. Someone was shouting loudly, "All students are to immediately gather at the training field! This is an emergency! All students are to immediately gather at the training field. This is an emergency!"

What happened? They were calling all of us to gather this late in the night. This was the first time this happened since I first entered the academy.

I tidied my uniform and ran to the training field, holding the staff. I saw Teacher Zhen and Teacher Lie stand grimly at the training field. When Teacher Zhen saw that the majority of the students had come, he shouted, "Students, time is pressing. A rescue signal have just suddenly sounded from the palace! I am unsure what happened. All year 5 students and year 3 Zhang Gong and Mu Zi are to immediately follow me and the vice Principal to enter the palace. Make haste!" Ma Ke was living in the palace and the Hai Yue three siblings had returned home.

Looking at Teacher Zhen's face, I knew something major had happened. I teleported to his side and asked, "Teacher Zhen, what is going on?"

Teacher Zhen frowned and replied, "I also don't know what is going on. The sentry on duty suddenly saw the fireworks that are signals for assistance come from the palace. Something major must have happened. Let's go! Where is Mu Zi?"

I looked in every direction but didn't see her. I replied, "I don't see her anywhere. It may be because she was too tired in the day so she hasn't woken up. I will go find her."

Teacher Zhen replied, "Forget it! Don't call her. We must make haste immediately and if we don't head out now, we will be too late!" If there was danger, it would be better that Mu Zi didn't go. I also didn't persist and teleported out with Teacher Zhen.

Teacher Zhen had brought the 100 of us quickly into the palace. From a far distance, we could see blazing flames soaring all over the palace. I heaved a sigh of relief and said, "So, it is just that the palace caught fire. Teacher Zhen, you don't need to be anxious."

Teacher Zhen's expression darkened. "No, it isn't that simple. Let's quickly head in." He shouted at the 5th year students behind him, "Everyone, pay attention! As we head in, you are to simultaneously extinguish the fire. Be careful!"

After he said that, he gave me an eye signal before heading in first. I hastily followed behind Teacher Zhen, the palace was abnormally disordered. Teacher Zhen pulled a guard and asked, "What happened?"

The guard replied panting heavily, "There... There are assassins. A large group of black clothed people invaded. They are extremely powerful. The guards and the Royal Mage Union suffered severe casualties and injuries."

Teacher Zhen and I were astonished. I asked, "It can't be Duke Te Yi, right?"

Teacher Zhen replied, "It is still uncertain. Let's hurry into the inner palace. They must be here to assassinate the Emperor."

Teacher Zhen and I shot towards the depth of the palace. There was suddenly a few black clothed people fighting with the people from the Mage Union in front of us.

Teacher Zhen shouted, and a dimensional slash struck.

There were five black clothed people. When they saw us charging over, two people were dispatched from the team. There was thick black fog

being released from their hand. I shouted, “Teacher Zhen, it is dark magic. Be careful!” After I said that, I immediately struck a light blade at them. The light and dark magic went against each other. The opponent’s magic was obviously not as skillful as I was, and the black fog immediately dispersed from my attack. The remainder was absorbed by Teacher Zhen’s dimensional slash.

Teacher Zhen and I were mutually overwhelmed with shock and simultaneously shouted, “Demon race!”

The black clothed person facing us coldly said, “It is too late even if you find out now. Your Emperor may have already been killed by us. Haha!”

Teacher Zhen and I knew that time was pressing. I said, “I will give this two to you to deal with. I will deal with the other three.” With Teacher Zhen’s power, even if his opponent used dark magic, they definitely wouldn’t be his match.

I used teleportation to go past them and headed towards the other three Demon race’s men. There were only three mages from the Royal Mage Union bitterly fighting on. They would soon be unable to fight. I knew this wasn’t the time to be lenient. I gathered the fusion of magic and battle spirit spell and struck them with all of my might.

The three dark magician immediately dispatched one of them to try and block the light blade I had shot out. The fusion spell’s power could be seen as it had effortlessly broke his defensive spell and cut him in half.

I raised the Sukrad’s staff highly and chanted, “Light Elements, my friends, please turn into unceasing Holy light to eliminate the enemies before you!” As I had experience in fighting with the Demon race, I knew no matter if it was offensive or defensive spells with light magic, it would cause them severe injuries.

The two Gold Dans in my body quickly rotated. The gold light surged out from my body and struck out like lightning. I used a defensive spell so I wasn’t afraid that I would harm the people from the Royal Mage Union. Thus, even though the attack was an advanced spell, I had used all of my strength.

The remaining two dark mages mournfully let out blood-curdling screeches under the shine of the Holy light. Their entire body seemed to have caught on fire. They rapidly burned and quickly turned into ashes.

At this moment, Teacher Zhen had already dealt with his opponents and ran over. Looking at him, he seemed to have used up a lot of his energy. We pulled the people from the Mage Union who were crouching on the ground as they panted profusely. Teacher Zhen anxiously asked, “What happened? Quickly explain!”

The mage recognised Teacher Zhen and said as he panted, “Principal, you should quickly go! We don’t know how many assassins there are. They all use dark magic and are extremely powerful. It is impossible to stop them. Our Royal Mage Union has suffered disastrous losses. They may already have attacked the interior of the palace.”

Teacher Zhen told me, “Zhang Gong, let’s quickly head in.”

As we moved, Teacher Zhen told me, “The dark magic is too powerful. The two that I had dealt strenuously with should be only at the Advanced Mage of the Demon race. It looks like the best way to defeat them is with your light magic. Don’t ever hold back and use your quickest speed to deal with them!”

I replied, “I understand.”

We consecutively met with three to four small assassins that we eliminated at rapid speed like a gale that blew away dead leaves.

There was a lofty palace in front of us. Teacher Zhen said, “Let’s quickly go! It should be the inner palace in front of us.”

When we dashed into the inner palace, we saw a far from good situation. There were 100 black clothed Demon race’s member with their faces masked currently invading the inner palace.

Chapter 2: Forbidden Light of Eternal Recovery

The Royal Mage Union members who were under Dun Yu Xi's leadership fought with all their might. It was his Earth magic's defensive power which was extremely powerful that had let them persevere to now.

After looking everywhere, the Emperor Ke Zha's figure wasn't there. He should have hidden himself.

Ma Ke was also inside the Royal Mage Union group. From their looks, they should be unable to hold on much longer.

Teacher Zhen whispered to me, "Zhang Gong, you must gather your power to use your most powerful spell. I will assist you as you do that." After he said that, Teacher Zhen placed his hand on my back and rich magic power surged out from it. I knew that he was doing this as light magic had a much better killing effect.

Under the assistance of the first ranked Magister of the world, I felt that my magic power was exceptionally abundant. The two gold Dans in my body had turned completely transparent. I suddenly developed a bold thought.

I started to chant, "Great light elements! You possess limitless powers. Darkness is extremely small before you. The eternal light ray that circulates the horizon. I plead to you to descend to the world and give me the endless recovery spell to recover all pains, to let all sufferings to be far away from us, Forbidden Light of Eternal Recovery!"

After I chanted, Teacher Zhen felt that all of his magic power in his body seemed to have been emptied by me. He was overwhelmed with horror and flew back retreating. A stream of blood flowed out from the corner of his mouth. He feebly leaned at the side before shouting in astonishment, "Zhang Gong, what are you doing? That...That is a forbidden spell!"

My entire body seemed to have been torn apart. The light elements from my surrounding frantically gathered around me. The two Gold Dans shot up from my upper Dantian before floating behind my back to form an

enormous hexagram. Both of my hands raised high up involuntarily. The staff in my hand emitted peculiar light rays. There were numerous unknown types of symbols that appeared from the transparent gemstone of the staff surrounding me.

At this moment, the demon race's invaders already felt that something was not right. Even though they didn't know what magic spell I was using, the pressure from the spell had terrified all of the demon race's members. One of them shouted, "Not good! Quickly stop that human!"

Immediately, 7-8 demon race members attacked me. However, once their offensive magic touched the strange symbols at my side, they strangely disappeared.

Ma Ke shouted. "Boss, you come and quickly annihilate them!"

My eyes seemed to have turned completely gold like when I was using the Holy Sword. The hexagram on my back became increasingly brighter. There was a faint shadow that appeared behind my back. Teacher Zhen was amazed to see that there were six light formed wings.

I felt that my entire body was inflated to the point that I would soon explode. I gave a desperate long roar after lifting my head. All of the power had gathered at the Sukrad's staff was shot out as a pure golden light ray towards the sky. After the golden ray shot out, my entire body went soft. I immediately collapsed on the ground.

When everyone thought that nothing had happened, an anomaly appeared. The initially dark skies suddenly lit up. A fragrance first permeated down. After that, it was a golden light rain.

Teacher Zhen shouted "Not good!" As the light rain poured down towards the enemies, it also poured down onto the group on my side. The entire palace was enveloped in the light rain.

One of the black clothed people suddenly shouted, "Everyone! Quickly use your best defensive spell. This is a light forbidden spell." After he said that, he took out a black rod from his spatial space and raised it high above his head. The black rod gave off light rays as dark as ink that enveloped him and another black clothed person in it.

The light rain was already pouring down. Teacher Zhen was amazed to find that the light rain didn't have any offensive power. It had treated his wounds instead. It was just his magic power that needed some time to recover. Not only him, all of the people from the Royal Mage Union also felt that effect.

The demon race members at the scene didn't have such luck. When the light rain got in contact with their dark magic defensive spell, it gave off 'Zi! Zi!' sounds. Their defensive spell was incapable of blocking the invasion of the light rain. Just like the two demon race members that was ignited by the Holy light, they all underwent spontaneous combustion. The palace instantly was filled with fire lights.

I was still conscious. It was just that I was feeble from using too much power. As I was immersed in ecstasy, I unexpectedly was able to use a forbidden spell. I had succeeded. I really succeeded in using it.

Actually, the main reasons why I could use the forbidden spell was due to my good luck. Firstly, my magic power was already at the Magister's level. Secondly, I had the assistance of the world's first rank Magister. Furthermore, my staff wasn't just a toy but a God's weapon. Without its help, the spell would have backfired on me. The most important reason was the Holy Sword's power. The magic spell that I had casted was light magic. Since the Holy Sword was used for a long time by the Radiant God's battle angel, Mi Jia Lie, the Holy Sword had a light attribute. With all those reasons colligated on me, I was able to smoothly cast out the forbidden spell.

Ma Ke already ran over and supported me. He shouted, "Boss, you're too awesome. You just used a single spell to deal with all of the enemies. If you had come a little later, we really wouldn't be able to hold on."

Dun Yu Xi also walked over and patted me, who was still feeble. "You're really a hero that is still a youngster. If I haven't guessed wrongly, the spell you just used should be a forbidden spell."

I slightly nodded and weakly replied, "I am able to use it due to the magic power assistance that Teacher Zhen gave to me. How is the

emperor?"

Ma Ke replied, "Father suffered some injuries. He is currently at the far back of the group. If they were able to breakthrough, I am afraid....."

Dun Yu Xi said, "The enemies' plans were too meticulous. They first set fire everywhere to disperse the guards' attention. After that, they gathered their powers to release a few large scale spells, making my team suffer a great loss. As the Kingdom has been peaceful for a few hundred years, the security of the palace also isn't tight. If you didn't come in time, I'm afraid that they would have succeeded."

A hundred people came running from outside. They were the academy's year 5 students with Si Wa leading them. Si Wa ran over and asked Dun Yu Xi, "Teacher, what happened? Why did our wounds heal in a short moment while the opponents suddenly underwent spontaneous combustion?"

Dun Yu Xi smiled and said, "Regarding that, you will have to ask your good brother." As he said that, he pointed at me.

Chapter 3: The Heart Bleeds

I awkwardly smiled. “It is just a small trick. Hehe! Aiya! You see, they have already been burnt into ashes. Hmm! Why are those two people not burned to death?”

The two that didn’t undergo combustion were the two that were protected by the black rod’s power. Even though they didn’t combust, they collapsed onto the ground without any strength to fight back.

Dun Yu Xi shouted, “Arrest them!”

There were four people that came running out of the Royal Mage Union to arrest the two demon race members. The demon race member that used the black rod to protect himself had a malicious look. He shouted without any intentions of surrendering, “Wait for my race’s main army to invade! It will also be the time for your deaths!”

The other demon race member’s eyes held a hidden bitterness. He just fixedly looked at me. I was stunned as those eyes looked very familiar.

Dun Yu Xi ordered, “Take down their masks!”

The demon race member with the malicious eyes had his mask removed first. It was an old man with a face full of wrinkles. He coldly snorted and raised his head.

When the other demon race member’s mask was removed, everyone from the academy was startled. When I looked at him, I felt as though all of the blood in my body had rushed towards my brain.

I shouted, “Mu Zi, why is it you? Why are you here? Could it be they caught you?”

Mu Zi looked fixedly at me with her eyes filled with dismay. She replied. “Zhang Gong, I have let you down. I am from the demon race. This is the worry that I have never been able to tell you.”

All of the cells in my body went stiff. Every thought kept surging up. I had finally understood why Mu Zi initially didn’t want to accept me, and also why she didn’t want me to heal her with light magic; why she

wanted to be a matchmaker for Hai Shui and I and why she had always wanted me to forget about her.

My eyes filled with despair. A mouthful of blood deep from my heart, violently sprayed out. I shouted, “No!!!!” In my eyes, the world had completely changed into a bloody haze. Mu Zi’s figure gradually became fuzzy. Once my head slanted forward, I fainted.

.....

My heart was in extreme pain. In the darkness, I could imagine as though Mu Zi was waving mournfully at me before she gradually fell into a dark whirlpool that was so deep that the bottom couldn’t be seen.

I wanted to catch her but I just was not able to. I could only see her slowly become engulfed by the whirlpool. I shouted, “No! Mu Zi, don’t!”

I screamed out for her and suddenly sat up. My entire body was drenched in cold sweat. Teacher Di walked over and said, “Zhang Gong, you have awoken. How are you feeling? Is there any discomfort?”

I shook my head and looked fixedly at Teacher Di. My tears came out, dropping onto the blanket. Teacher Di gave out a long sigh before sitting by my side, embracing me.

I immediately wailed loudly and cried out, “Why? Why are the heavens treating me like this? Why is this happening? Teacher Di, please tell me that this isn’t real and is only a dream, right?”

Teacher Di rubbed my back and benevolently said, “Child, you must accept this fact. It is real. This can’t be changed by human strength. I only just found out that you are really that deeply in love with her.”

Mu Zi’s attractive reflection appeared unceasingly in my mind. My heart was ice cold. Mu Zi unexpectedly was a spy from the demon race and also participated in attempting to assassinate Emperor Ke Zha. With such heavy crimes against her, it was impossible for her to remain alive for long.

After a long time, I slowly controlled my sorrow. I sat properly and asked, “Teacher Di, how is she now?”

Teacher Di shook his head slightly. "Child, don't put any hope on that thought."

I exclaimed, "It can't be that she is already dead, right?"

Teacher Di replied, "Listen carefully, she currently isn't dead but her magic is sealed. She has been locked up in the Sky Prison with the other remaining demon race member. That's right! I heard that you used a forbidden spell that also killed a majority of the demon race members that invaded. Is that true?"

Mu Zi's time being locked in the Sky Jail wouldn't last for many days. I dejectedly said, "That's right. I had used the Eternal Recovery light spell. It is also the only forbidden spell that you had taught me."

Teacher Di curiously said, "It is a recovery spell and not an offensive spell. Why is there such a strong killing force?"

I replied, "It is due to the demon race having dark attributes so no matter if it is an offensive or a defensive light magic, it'll have a strong killing force."

Teacher Di nodded. "So it is like that. Child, you are not allowed to go anywhere and just stay at teacher's place. Your injuries aren't bad, just that you have overused your magic power."

I begged, "Teacher Di, can you please let me see Uncle Ke Zha?"

Teacher Di's expression instantly became strict. "You can't! Even if you go, there won't be any outcome! Do you understand that the demon race and beast clans have joined their armies and are now moving restlessly at our border? Furthermore, the demon race has come to assassinate Emperor Ke Zha and almost succeeded. Mu Zi's position in the demon race isn't low. How can he let her go because of you?"

I rolled onto the ground from the bed, kneeled down and begged as I cried out saying, "Teacher Di, I beg you, to at least let me give it a try."

Teacher Di helped to lift me up and sighed saying, "Child, what do you want me to say to you? You should know that the human race's hatred towards the demon race and beast clans has already been deep rooted."

Since you are unwilling to give up, you can give it a try. But you can't do any foolish acts! Do you understand?"

I elatedly nodded my head and stood up. "Thank you! Thank you so much! I will head there now."

Teacher Di helplessly said, "Child, are you that anxious? If you want to go, you have to recover first. After your magic power has recovered, you can go after that."

After standing up, my head felt very giddy. I knew that Teacher Do had said the truth. I immediately sat on the bed and did my best to gather my magic power. 'Mu Zi, I will do my best to help you resolve this matter. No matter what, I will save your life. Even if I have to exchange my life for yours, I am also willing.'

After resting for a day, the two gold dans had rapidly recovered my magic power. Even though I wasn't at my peak state, eighty percent of my magic power had been recovered. Actually, when I had made thirty percent recovery, I could already enter the palace. However, in my heart, there was a shadow. If Emperor Ke Zha didn't want to let Mu Zi go, what should I do then?

I wore an ordinary white magic robe and with the staff in my hands, I headed towards the palace. 'Mu Zi, nothing must happen to you. I am coming. Even though you are from the Demon race, my love for you hasn't decreased at all. You must wait for me.'

Chapter 4: My Decision

As I neared the entrance of the palace, the guards on duty stopped me. My expression dampened. “Please help me to report that the Royal Advanced Magic Academy’s Zhang Gong wishes to meet with His Majesty.”

After hearing my name, all of the guards displayed respectful expressions. The guard immediately respectfully replied, “Please wait for a moment. I will immediately go and report.”

The guard quickly walked back out from the palace. “Magister Zhang Gong, His Majesty has requested the pleasure of seeing you.”

I nodded and followed him into the palace, which was different from before. Even though there were some burned parts that was still not repaired, the guards in the palace and mages were placed every three steps and a sentry every five steps. The security of the palace was exceptionally tight.

After walking to the entrance of the inner palace, the guard shouted, “Magister Zhang Gong request for an audience.”

Emperor Ke Zha had personally came forth. When he saw me, he elatedly said, “Zhang Gong, you’re here! Let’s chat inside.”

After entering the inner palace, I immediately kneeled and said, “This commoner hadn’t properly protected Your Majesty and risked His Majesty getting injured. My crime is severe enough for me to be punished to death ten thousand times.”

Ke Zha’s expression changed and said angrily, “Zhang Gong, what are you saying? If you are counted to have protected me unsatisfactorily, then the others are rice buckets! I am lucky to have you this time. I am preparing for you to become the Kingdom’s protector. All of you withdraw. I have some matters to discuss with Magister Zhang Gong.”

Ke Zha had ordered the guards to withdraw before pulling me up. He said in appreciation. “Zhang Gong, you’re really the Kingdom’s pillar. If you didn’t use the forbidden spell, the outcome would be unconceivable.”

I hastily bowed and replied, “Your Majesty, it was something I ought to do. Moreover, the forbidden spell was successful under the power of Teacher Zhen and mine with some luck.”

Ke Zha replied, “There is no outsider here. You don’t have to call me a Majesty. You just call me Uncle Ke Zha. I am more familiar with you calling me that. No matter what, you’re a great contributor to the Kingdom. You don’t have to continue studying at the Advanced Magic Academy, come to the palace. I will appoint you to be the Vice head of the Royal Mage Union and be the protector of the Kingdom.”

Seeing that his mood was good, I felt that I should say my purpose in coming here. I kneeled again and replied, “Uncle Ke Zha, I don’t need any rewards. I just beg for a favour.”

Ke Zha waved his hand and replied, “How can you be unrewarded. You don’t have to plead to me about that matter. I know what you want to say. I can grant you anything but that.”

I anxiously replied, “Uncle Ke Zha, I.....”

Ke Zha sighed and replied, “Zhang Gong, you must know that she is from the demon race. This is no longer just my problem. I need to account for all of the officials and also the commoners. Do you understand? I haven’t done any punishments on Mu Zi for your sake. I can only promise you that before execution, she will be slightly more comfortable.”

When I heard about the execution, my mood abruptly dampened. I knew that in usual cases, Mu Zi and her accomplice wouldn’t be exempted from their punishment. I was afraid that other than the stubborn old man, nobody would be my opponent. There wouldn’t be any of her race that would come to rescue her.

I sighed and replied, “Since that is the case, Your Majesty, I will withdraw first. As for the position for the Vice head of the Royal Mage Union and to be the protector mage of the Kingdom, please forgive me that I can’t accept those roles as I am used to the academy’s lifestyle.”

After leaving the palace, I definitely wouldn’t let Mu Zi die. I squinted my eyes. I wanted to save her and must immediately do so. If not, once

Teacher Di and the others were to interfere, it wouldn't be good.

After making a firm resolution, I went to a place not far from the palace to formulate a plan. The demon race members were imprisoned at the back of the Sky Prison. They surely would be heavily guarded. It would definitely be difficult to enter it. What should I do?

After thinking for a long time, I still couldn't find a good plan. There wasn't much time already. I just had to try to breakthrough it once and must move at a speed like a thunderbolt that couldn't be heard to save Mu Zi.

I first looked at the surrounding of the Sky Prison. There should approximately be 1000 guards. One tenth of them were mages. With this strength, it would be difficult for me to break in and might have the chance of being unable to leave it unless I massacre them. No matter what, the situation had not wavered my determination to save Mu Zi. I bought some things from the city first before returning near to the Sky Prison.

I suddenly thought about the escape scroll that Teacher Di had given me. If I used my magic power to envelop all of us, we should be able to send them out from there. With it, my chances of success had increased by far. What I had to do now was to break into the Sky Prison.

I sat cross legged on the floor to gather my magic power one last time.

After two hours, I appeared at the entrance of the Sky prison. Just as I neared the entrance, I was blocked by the guards. The guard asked, "Who are you? Don't you know that this is the Sky Prison?"

I coughed and raised the Sukrad's staff in my hands. "It is me, the Royal Mage Union's Vice head and the protector mage of the Kingdom, Zhang Gong Wei."

After hearing who I was, the guard immediately bowed and replied, "I don't know what is the purpose of the protector of the Kingdom coming to this place."

I said displeased, "I come here from the order of His Majesty to check on

the two demon race prisoners.”

The guard said in difficulty, “I don’t know if you have the written order from His Majesty. We don’t dare to let you in with just your words.”

I yelled, “Outrageous! It can’t be that you don’t know who I am, right? You dare to obstruct my matters. Do you still want your heads to be on your neck?”

When the guard wanted to explain. There was a mage that walked out from the Sky Prison. From the symbol on his body, it seemed that he had a Great Mage ability. He asked, “What is going on? Why is it so noisy?”

When he walked over and saw it was me, he immediately smiled obsequiously, “So it is Lord Zhang Gong, is there something wrong?”

I coldly snorted and replied, “I want to take a look at the two criminals from the demon race, but they denied me entry.”

The mage said to the guards, “You’re all have such nerves to do that. Don’t you know the two demon race prisoners were apprehended by Lord Zhang Gong? Without Lord Zhang Gong’s help in annihilating the assassins, we would have already been killed under the hands of the demon race. I can’t vouch for others but there definitely is no problem for Lord Zhang Gong. Quickly let him in!” The mage thought, ‘Since this child had just saved the lives of the kingdom, he definitely is an important person in the Kingdom and is also the Vice Head of the Royal Mage Union, managing them. I have to take this chance to curry favor with him. There is a possibility that there will be a meteoric rise in my position in the future.’

The guards momentarily kept quiet out of fear and let me in. It seemed that the mage was currently trying to curry favors from me as he said, “My Lord, the spell that you used at that time was too remarkable. This junior has never seen such a powerful spell. I am afraid that even Principal Zhen isn’t your match.”

Chapter 5: Jail Break Success

I said seriously, “Don’t shoot off your mouth! The most respectable teacher to me is Teacher Zhen. That old man’s accomplishments are not something that you can talk about.”

The mage immediately smiled his apology and replied, “Yes! Yes! I had misspoken. Please forgive me.”

My expression softened and replied, “That’s enough. You also don’t need to be too courteous. Your efforts in protecting His Majesty is also not small. I will say good words about you to His Majesty.”

After the mage heard that he became elated and replied, “I will first thank you before hand. You can just tell me whatever you need in the future.” As I saw him bending and scraping to curry favor from me, I felt an indescribable annoyance but I must feign civility with him. I said, “You can lead the way in front of me. I want to have a look at the two demon race prisoners. Have they been interrogated already?”

The mage replied, “There wasn’t enough time for that as the commotion in the palace was too vicious. The majority of the people are currently cleaning up the after mess. They should be interrogated in two day’s time. Please follow me.” I thought elatedly, ‘I wouldn’t have not thought that I would meet with this silly fool that is blinded by greed, making it this easy for me to infiltrate the prison.’

The security of the Sky Prison was really strict. That mage’s position must not be

low here because when we walked, we were unexpectedly unhindered. After crossing four doors, we were in the depth of the Sky Prison. The mage told me, “My lord, this is the Sky Prison’s most strictly guarded place. The two demon race members are locked up in the number one prison cell of Sky Prison.” After he said that, he pressed on the stone wall at the side.

There was a small crack in front of us. There was a flight of stairs heading downwards. I thought, ‘If it wasn’t him leading me, I really won’t

be able to find it. It seems that it is fated for me to save Mu Zi.'

We walked down. At the bottom, there were three jail cells. In the innermost cell, Mu Zi and the older demon race were in there.

I said to the mage, "You wait outside for me. I have some things to ask them."

The mage said with difficulty, "That...That won't be a good idea."

I glared at him and said, "Is it that you really wish to hear what His Majesty wanted me to ask them? The security here is so tight. It can't be that you're afraid that I will let them out, right? I also don't need you to open the prison cell."

The mage said in embarrassment, "Alright. I will be waiting for you upstairs. But you must make it quick."

I waved my hands at him impatiently.

When the mage walked out, he was still worried and sealed the opening that led down to this place. I sniggered in my heart, 'If I wasn't completely prepared, I won't have come to this place.'

Mu Zi and the old man from the demon race seemed to be unconscious. All of their limbs were locked by thick iron chains and shackled to the wall. Since time was pressing, I held onto the jail cell's door and shouted, "Mu Zi, Mu Zi, quickly get up!" After shouting for a couple of times, there still wasn't any response from both of them.

I gathered a small water ball and tossed it over. "Pah!" The water ball landed on Mu Zi's face.

Mu Zi slowly woke up and looked around bewilderedly. When she finally saw me clearly, she instantly woke up before crying out in fear. "Zhang Gong, why are you here?"

I anxiously replied, "That's enough. You don't have to say anymore. I'm here to save you. Time is pressing. We will talk after getting out of here." I circulated my magic power before gently waving the Sukrad's staff in my hand. A gold light ray shot out. No matter how strong the lock, it still was

unable to withstand my spell. The lock broke into two. I pushed open the door of the prison cell before charging in.

As soon as I opened the prison cell, the alarm bell suddenly rang loudly, filling the Sky Prison with its sound. The people outside shouted, "Someone has infiltrated the Sky Prison! Make haste!" After that, the mechanism at the top opened. That mage was the first to come charging downwards. After looking at the scene below, he said in astonishment, "Lord Zhang Gong, what are you doing?"

I was too lazy to answer him so I shot a light wall to lock him outside and continuously circulated my magic power to completely seal the entrance of the place. I turned around and used a light blade to cut open Mu Zi's shackles. Mu Zi weakly slumped to her knees. I hastily supported her and asked, "Mu Zi, how are you feeling?"

Mu Zi's face paled and with her large eyes filled with tears, she replied, "Zhang Gong, why did you come to save me? Don't you know that you will ruin your future by doing this?"

I bitterly smiled and replied, "Now is not the time to talk about that. Let's immediately leave this place!" As I said that, I took out the escape scroll from my sleeve. Mu Zi pulled on my clothing and said, "Please save him as well. He is one of my teachers.:)" As I looked at Mu Zi's wishful eyes, I thought, 'Since saving one is a huge crime already, saving two is equally the same. Moreover, with this old man, he can assist and protect her on her way back.'

I nodded and unlocked the shackles of the old man of the demon race. At that moment, the light wall sealing the entrance suddenly shook violently. This was bad. An expert had come.

As expected, Dun Yun Xi's voice was heard from outside. He shouted, "Zhang Gong, what are you doing? Don't you know that this is an act of treason to the Kingdom?"

I said clearly, "Teacher Xi, I am sorry. I just can't do nothing and look on helplessly as Mu Zi is executed. Currently, I just don't care about anything anymore."

The demon race old man also woke up and watched the scene playing in front of him in surprise. I shouted, “If you want to live, quickly come to my side before it is too late!” Dun Yun Xi’s attack was really strong. I would soon be unable to hold on.

The demon race’s old man wasn’t ordinary. He knew that time was pressing. He moved as fast as he could to latch onto me. I chanted as I used the Sukrad’s staff to simultaneously support the defensive barrier and also activated the escape scroll. The defensive light wall shattered at the same time as the activation of the scroll. Dun Yun Xi was the first one to charge in. He was the head of the Royal Mage Union. With a look, he already knew what I planned to do. He immediately struck an enormous earth blade.

However, it was already too late. After the flash of light, the three of us, Mu Zi, the old man and I simultaneously disappeared from the prison.

Dun Yun Xi told a mage at his side viciously, “Quickly go and report this to His Majesty and also gather the Royal Mage Union and guards! Immediately search through the city! They won’t be able to escape too far away.”

As he saw the mage leave, Dun Yun Xi sighed heavily. “Zhang Gong, you’re such a silly child. You’ll ruin yourself this way. Don’t you understand that? The word ‘Love’ really can cause a lot of trouble. That’s right! Who let him in?”

The mage that had led me walked over shakily. He kneeled down and cried bitterly. As he cried, he said, “Lord Union head, I did not mean for this to happen. He said that it was on the order of His Majesty....”

Dun Yun Xi said angrily, “You’re useless! Someone, come and lock him up first. After capturing the escaped prisoners, we will interrogate him.”

Chapter 6: Mu Zi's Identity

There was a flash of light at an isolated corner in the capital's far west, and three people appeared.

I had Mu Zi in my arms, stared at old man from the demon race lying on the ground, then knotted my eyebrows and surveyed our surroundings.

Mu Zi asked, "Where is this?"

I thought for a bit and replied, "My escape scroll is limited to an escape radius of three to five kilometers; This should be somewhere within the city. It is too dangerous, they will be able to find us soon. We need to leave the city immediately."

Mu Zi smiled bitterly, "How are we going to do that? I'm afraid the city's entrance has already been locked down, and we can't even fly out even if we wanted to. Just look above you."

I raised my head and discovered that there were numerous wind mages hovering and searching in all four directions, I hastily drew both of them aside. It sure seemed like our luck wasn't too bad, as there were not many people in our immediate surroundings. I placed Mu Zi on the ground before chanting the spell that the Dragon King had transmitted to me. A light halo spread out with me as its epicentre.

Mu Zi exclaimed, "Don't! We are sensitive to light magic!" However, she quickly realised that what I used wasn't light magic.

I replied, "This is a seal removal spell. You two should recover your strength as quickly as you can. I will draw a magic array, we need to leave the city immediately."

Mu Zi's eyes were filled with complicated expression. She gave me a long, deep stare before sitting down cross-legged to meditate. The old demon race man didn't even hesitate, as he knew recovering his strength was the key to leaving this place alive, and started his rejuvenation without speaking a single word. Judging from the thick black fog that gradually emitted from his body, I knew that if I hadn't used the forbidden spell that day, I might not have been his match. This old fellow

definitely had reached a Magister's standard. His position within the demon race was definitely not low.

As I was contemplating, I was also rapidly drawing the teleportation array. In order to succeed in completing the array in a small amount of time, I had selected one that could only teleport us 20 kilometres.

After an hour, I wiped off the perspiration that had formed on my forehead. I had finally completed it.

Actually, although drawing this magic array wasn't a hard task for me, I drew the array with utmost care as I was being extremely sensitive to the voices in my surroundings and was intensely nervous and feared of making even the slightest mistake.

I shook Mu Zi gently, saying, "It's done. We can leave now."

Mu Zi opened her eyes and replied, "I've recovered about ten percent of my magic power and am no longer that feeble. Teacher, how are you?"

The old demon race man's eyes flew open and a cold glint flashed across them. "I've recovered almost thirty percent of mine. Pity, my staff had been snatched away by the vile human race, otherwise I would have been able to recover much faster. I really feel like going another round with them."

I coldly snorted and said, "Talk less crap, hurry up and enter the array! We won't make it if we don't leave now!"

The old demon race man instantly turned furious. "Brat! Do you know who you are talking to? You're seeking death."

I refused to yield and rebuked him instead, "I don't know who is the one that is seeking death. If it wasn't for Mu Zi, I wouldn't have saved you. Hmph!"

The old demon race man fumed, and said, "You....."

Mu Zi said anxiously, "Stop quarreling! Teacher, as an elder, saying a few less words won't hurt you."

The old demon race man seemed to be a little fearful of Mu Zi and

jumped into the array first. I also pulled Mu Zi into the magic array. Due to it being a short teleportation, there wasn't a need to place a protection around us. I activated the array and teleported to the west side.

After golden light flashed, we appeared on a small hill outside of the city. I heaved a sigh of relief and said, "We were lucky that we didn't teleport into a river. If we did, it would have been terrible. It is temporarily safe here. You can continue recovering your magic power. I will draw a bigger teleportation magic array."

Mu Zi replied, "Zhang Gong, I....."

I interrupted her and said, "Let's not talk now. We will chat later after I've drawn the magic array." Even though we were out of the city, it was still not completely safe so I drew a long range teleportation magic array to teleport Mu Zi again.

The sky had gradually darkened. This time, I had set up a magic array that would enable them to teleport about 500 kilometers away. This should be enough for them to escape successfully.

The sky finally darkened completely, and my magic array was finally complete as well. I woke Mu Zi up and took out a lot of rations from my spatial space to her. As I handed her these, I said, "This is your most favorite dried fried Dragon meat. This bottle contains Ascending Jade Tide beverages. These are some fruits you can eat on the road. Quickly! Quickly place them into your spatial space. Here are some magic gemstones for you, they will come in handy during your travels." I passed every single item to her with my head lowered. After giving her everything I wanted her to have, I discovered that Mu Zi's face was filled with tears.

Mu Zi threw herself into my bosom and sobbed loudly.

"Why do you treat me so well? Why?"

I tightly embraced the woman I loved the most and enjoyed the warmth she gave to me. Even though it was the same embrace, I was able to feel that this was the first time she had totally opened up and given herself to me. Her heart would no longer be able to run away from me.

After a long time, I pushed Mu Zi away. “Alright! You should compose yourself. You should be able to tell me the truth now, right?”

Mu Zi looked at me fixedly and replied, “Yes, I can tell you about it now. Take a look.” After she said that, her right hand rapidly flashed past her face.

Ah! Mu Zi’s entire person had undergone a transformation. However, even though she, she, had transformed……, she had transformed into the demon race’s princess I had seen at the Serene Dream Lake. Even though we’ve only met a single time, her flawless figure had been engraved deeply in my memory. At that moment, countless thoughts surged through my mind.

Mu Zi not only changed her appearance, her voice also had changed into a beautiful sound of a black-naped oriole, just like the time when I first met her. “Now, you should know why I was filled with animosity towards you when we first met at the academy.”

I said dazedly, “You...You’re the demon race’s princess. Why is it you? How can it be you? Mu Zi? Where is my Mu Zi?”

Mu Zi’s flawless appearance expressed helplessness and replied, “I just am Mu Zi, always have been, and always will be. The first time you met me in school was me, the one you love is the me that had changed her appearance and voice. Do you understand?”

“Change of appearance and voice?”

Mu Zi nodded, “That’s right. I used one of the demon race’s special appearance change spell. No medication is needed. It directly changes the structure of the face and modifies the muscles of the throat. The change in appearance will be flawless that way.”

Chapter 7: The Past Vanishing Like the Wind

I gradually snapped out of my shock and muttered, “It’s actually you.”

Mu Zi saw that I was still in slight disbelief to accept that fact. She placed both of her hands on the sides of my face before tiptoeing and deeply kissing me with her tender and beautiful red lips.

Mu Zi’s familiar sweet taste invaded my entire body. I tightly hugged her and intensely responded to her kiss.

Mu Zi, who was in my embrace, said, “You should now believe that I’m Mu Zi.”

How could I still not believe her? Everything else may have changed but this familiar feeling had not changed in the slightest. Her body still was as soft as usual. Her lips were still able to bewitch me. Who would be unhappy that their wife had become beautiful anyways? My feelings for Mu Zi had deepened. I tightened my hold on her delicate body and embraced her again before sitting down. I lightly kissed her forehead and said, “Tell me. I want to hear your story.”

Mu Zi replied, “Before I start telling you my story, can you tell me why you still rescued me even after knowing that I am from the demon race? Could it be that you really don’t care about your status?”

I smiled a little before replying, “What powerful position do I have? Even if I did, it still wouldn’t matter to me. I’m different from the rest. I don’t hate your demon race; so what if you’re from the demon race? You are living in this world, you all have the right to live. You also haven’t hurt me. In my eyes, your race and the human kinds are no different. All life forms are equal. However, that wasn’t the main reason why I decided to save you.”

Mu Zi asked, “What is the main reason?”

I plainly replied, “In my heart, you’re more important than my life.” It was such an easy statement but it expressed my heartfelt feelings. Currently, my heart was extremely calm. It couldn’t be said to be happy as I had forfeited my chance to live life happily and comfortably.

However, it also couldn't be said that I was in pain as I had successfully pulled back the person I loved the most from the clutches of death.

Hearing what I had said, Mu Zi raised her head. Her reddened beautiful large eyes looked at me before she violently embraced my neck and wailed bitterly.

I patted her back and said, "It's ok. Don't cry. I still want to hear your story."

Mu Zi slowly calmed down and said, "My father is the demon race's Demon God Emperor, Qi Meng Satan."

I interrupted and said, "If that is the case, aren't you called Mu Zi Satan?"

Mu Zi nudged me and replied, "Don't interrupt me and listen to what I have to say. My name is still Mu Zi Mo unless I inherit my father's position. Only then, will I be called Mu Zi Satan, as Satan is the highest title to be called by. It was the name of the first Magic God Emperor. In order to commemorate him, the following rulers will use his surname."

So it was like that. It was still lucky that Mu Zi's surname wasn't Satan as that surname was just too horrible.

"I am father's most doted third princess. I have two elder brothers. My mother died when I was young so I was raised by my father as though I were a jewel. Initially, I could have had a life that was free of worry, but my brothers were a disappointment, breaking my father's heart."

I couldn't hold back my curiosity and asked her, "How were your brothers a disappointment? It can't be your father wants you to inherit his position, right?"

Mu Zi didn't mind my interruption this time. She sighed and said, "My eldest brother is bold, but not very astute, while my second brother is ignorant and incompetent. He does nothing all day except eating, drinking and fooling around. Father has scolded them frequently for their behavior. As for me, during one of the major magic competition at the palace, I unintentionally exposed my talent in magic and was discovered

by my father and few of my teachers. Father momentarily became elated. Our demon race isn't the same as your human kind. The throne can be inherited by women."

I was astonished and said, "So your father really wants you to be the Magic God's Empress?"

Mu Zi nodded. "From then on, I lost my usual freedom. I was taught consecutively by a few teachers about magic, tactics, the knowledge to govern the Kingdom, etcetera. I was also appointed to be the successor of my father. You may not know this but our life is more arduous compared to yours. This is the reason why the demon race and the beast clans are always wanting to invade the human kinds. The left side of the world is almost completely barren. The areas for cultivation are extremely limited. Approximately two and a half years ago, my father thought that the time was ripe so he gathered a majority of the military power of my Radiant Light Empire to form into a large army of the demon race. We also allied with the Mist Martial Empire, which is the beast clans. We were prepared to invade Ström Fortress. They also sent Teacher Fu Rui and I to investigate your land. Who knew that we would meet with you, our enemy at the Serene Dream Lake. Do you know that you're the reason for the delay of my race's invasion of human kind?"

I asked in surprise, "Because of me? Why? That Teacher Fu Rui that you mentioned is he the bamboo pole that I had defeated?"

Mu Zi replied smilingly, "You're detestable. You're still calling him Bamboo Pole. When you called him that at that time, you nearly angered him to death. You should know that the only magic that counters our dark magic is light magic. The reason why we infiltrated as humans was to check if there are a lot of light element magicians on your side. Do you still remember what you said?"

I blankly asked, "What did I say?"

Mu Zi replied, "You previously said that the entire Eastern continent knows light magic and that you were the worst. At the time, I knew you were being glib and immediately let Teacher Fu Rui return to the demon

race to report this to my father. My father replied by telling me to first infiltrate the Kingdom of Aixia to investigate the situation and to also learn about the knowledge you humans possesses. Just like that, I entered the Royal Advanced Magic Academy. I had used my abilities to enter and also used a revamped wing magic. Even though I may not be your match, if I use my full power, it will definitely be hard for you to defeat me.”

While saying this, Mu Zi’s face expressed a proud expression.

I chuckled. “You’re awesome! Oh, that’s right! I want to ask you how were you able to cross the Ström Fortress to come to the Eastern continent?”

Mu Zi replied, “You’re so stupid. It can’t be that only you human kind have knowledge of teleportation magic array right?”

I said surprised, “You had teleported over, and now you’re going to teleport an entire army. Won’t the Ström Fortress be immediately devastated?”

Chapter 8: The Truth of the Assassination

Mu Zi glanced at me and said, “Do you really think it is that easy to teleport over? Tian Duo Mountain is blocking the path to reach Ström Fortress. A Great Mage won’t be able to use his abilities to teleport over. If we really wanted to teleport over, a Magister’s assistance is needed for that to work. Moreover, a Magister can at most send over two people at a time. How many Magisters do you think we have at our side? We have almost the same number as yours. If it that wasn’t the case, we would have invaded long ago. When we met previously, Teacher Fu Rui had used an entire month’s time. After teleporting five times, you then met the few of us, as Teacher Fu Rui’s strength had been mostly depleted at that time. If not, I doubt you would have been able to escape at that time. Xixi!”

I asked, “What about the few women that came with you here? Where did they go?”

Mu Zi’s expression dampened and didn’t directly answer the question before she continued to reply, “After coming over to your side, I had been captivated by the beautiful sceneries and delicacies. Your side rarely has killings so everyone spends their time here peacefully. After two years, I almost forgot that I am of the demon race.”

I sighed. “If you can really forget about it, it would have been great.”

Mu Zi nodded. “That’s right! Truly a pity that I couldn’t do that. As the demon race’s princess and the successor to the throne, I must always think for my people so I had continuously send back information to my home country. After a year, I found out that you were lying when we first met as only a minority of the human race learns light magic. But I kept on delaying that information as I really didn’t want to watch a war erupt. After a short period of time, you had come. When I first met you at the academy, my thoughts were complicated.”

I chuckled, “It can’t be that you fell for me at that time, right?”

Mu Zi said displeased, “Pei! At that time, I hated you to the core. After that, you had written a love letter to pursue me. I initially felt that you

just wanted to toy with me so I ignored you. However, I increasingly felt your sincerity. I gradually was unable to bear rejecting you. I knew that it would be wrong to let it happen but I couldn't help myself but to accept you." I tightly embraced Mu Zi. My heart was surging out with overflowing love for her.

"It is all your fault for disturbing my heart. Every time you gave me a love letter, your position in my heart deepens. I was so tempted get closer to you but I have been suppressing my feelings as I knew that it was impossible for us to be together. After the semester ended and I headed back to the demon race, I found out how terrible was the feeling missing someone after parting from you. I also realized that I had completely fallen for you at that time."

I replied affectionately, "I also love you." We hugged each other and remained wordless for a long time. I suddenly thought about something and asked, "I just thought about something. Is Si Feng Ri one of your people?"

Mu Zi shook her head. "No, I don't know that person!"

It looked like my guess was right. Si Feng Ri really was the subordinate of the Demon King.

"After heading back, I couldn't hide any more information. After father knew about the situation at this side, he rejoiced and immediately started to deploy the invasion. He also didn't allow me to return here. I didn't know how my father got the information that Ke Zha Ao Er had inherited the throne of the Aixia's Kingdom. My father clearly realized that Ke Zha wasn't simple and was more shrewd than the deceased Emperor from the information we relayed to him. He knew that if he were to fight head on, he would definitely suffer a huge loss. Thus, he started to plan the assassination. When I came to the eastern continent two years ago, my magic clan had already teleported a vast number of advanced level mages and warriors. It included three Magisters and 96 Magic Scholars. In total, there were about 400 of us. After my father assassinated Ke Zha, he would really start invading the human race."

I asked, "Then why were you back?"

Mu Zi distressingly said, "It is all because of you. I really couldn't bear missing you. I then told my father that I had the most understanding to this side's matters and begged him to send me with a few teachers to assist in the assassination, therefore I came back again, as I also couldn't wait to return to the academy. When I saw you at the academy, my heart felt really complexed. When you said to me that you wanted to elope with me, I was extremely moved but I had to complete my mission. Therefore, on that night, we commenced the invasion."

Mu Zi looked deeply at me before continuing to say, "But, the human race enjoyed peace for far too long, as the invasion succeeded without a hitch. The Royal Mage Union was unable to stop our advancement, and we quickly invaded the inner palace. When we were close in succeeding, you and Teacher Zhen came and used a magic spell that made me quake in fear, even I now.. Zhang Gong, what spell did you use? I still didn't know what happened. Two hundred of my demon race were instantly annihilated. Teacher had said you had used a forbidden spell. Is that true?"

I nodded. "He's right. I had used the light forbidden spell--Eternal Recovery Light. That spell was an ultimate recovery spell. However, since it is light attribute, it carries a strong killing force to you. I also didn't know it was that potent. I was lucky that that old man protected you. If not, I would have regretted it for my whole life."

Mu Zi sighed, "The eight women that you asked previously had all died under that spell. Even though you killed so many of my people, I still couldn't hate you at all. I was worried about you discovering my identity instead. I was actually eager to die under that spell as you would at least won't know where I have gone and in your heart, you will forever know me as the wind element mage--Mu Zi that isn't from the demon race."

"What nonsense are you talking about? You will forever be in my heart even if you're from the demon race."

Mu Zi replied, "I really didn't know what you were thinking. When you

spat out blood after hearing I was from the demon race, my heart was in great pain. I thought that everything was over. When I was locked up in the prison cell, I didn't want to think about anything. I just wanted to die quickly. What I feared most was that I would meet you again. I wouldn't have thought that you would unexpectedly come to save me. Won't you regret doing that?"

I resolutely shook my head. "Saving you was the best decision I had made. I won't regret about it in my entire life."

Mu Zi's entire body shuddered. "Zhang Gong, there isn't any place for you here anymore so come to the demon race with me? Even though you're a human, I will definitely persuade my father, alright?"

Chapter 9: Behind Bars

I said with great difficulty, “But will your father really accept me? Don’t forget that I had killed so many that were from your demon race, making you suffer a great loss. Furthermore, I wouldn’t be able to watch as you invade the humans.

Mu Zi remained speechless for a long time before replying, “Maybe the loss this time will make my father stop his wild schemes to invade. I have an extremely important position in his heart. Will you come with me? I don’t want to part from you ever again.”

“How can I also want to be apart from you?” Mu Zi’s words had greatly moved me. If the war could be avoided, it would be even better.

When I was apprehensive, the old man from the demon race suddenly opened his eyes and shouted, “Not good! There is magic undulations!”

I was startled and immediately discovered the strong magic undulations. I shouted, “Quickly enter the magic array! They may be coming to pursue us!”

It really proved my guesses. After a white light shone, Teacher Zhen, Teacher Di, Teacher Long, Teacher Lie and Teacher Xi, all of which appeared before us.

When Teacher Di saw me embracing Mu Zi, he shouted angrily, “Zhang Gong! What are you doing? Don’t you know what you are doing are acts of treason towards the Kingdom?!?”

The other Magisters looked at me with pity.

I let go of Mu Zi and kneeled on the ground before replying to Teacher Di. “Teacher Di, I have let you down. But I really couldn’t watch Mu Zi die!”

Teacher Zhen sighed and said, “Zhang Gong, even if you wanted to escape, you’re too careless. The markings you left on the ground had sold you out. After we tried many places, we finally found this place. Stop continuing your wrongdoings!”

Teacher Xi said, “That’s enough! Don’t say any further. Zhang Gong, if you immediately help us capture those two from the demon race, with your previous contributions and with us old fellows’ help as your guarantee, you still can turn the situation around.”

I shook my head dejectedly before violently striking my fusion spell of magic and battle spirit at the few teachers. I turned my head and shouted at that old man of the demon race, “I can’t hold on much longer. Quickly, go and take Mu Zi away from here.”

The few teachers weren’t able to defend themselves in time and was forced down the hill.

Mu Zi shouted mournfully, “No! Zhang Gong, if I go, we have to go together.”

The old man from the demon race held her and said, “Princess, we have to go now. If not, it will be too late. There is a chance that he won’t die if he stays here.”

The few teachers already readied themselves. They wordlessly shot hand magics over. I knew time was pressing and shouted. “Mu Zi, quickly go! If I don’t die, I will go to the demon race to find you.” For her to escape, I couldn’t not lie to her. As I shouted, I used all of my might to cast a light blade to form a light rain that blocked the advancement of all five teachers.

The old man already activated the magic array whilst I was already crumbling under the attack of the five Magisters. It was impossible for me to withstand their attacks. If it wasn’t for the Sukrad’s staff, I was afraid that I wouldn’t be able to withstand their attacks.

After the light ray shined out, Mu Zi and the old man disappeared.

Under the overwhelming attacks, I couldn’t use the Holy Sword’s power. I just used the remainder of my powers to cast a light blade, erasing the remnants of the magic array. I wouldn’t do the same mistakes again.

“Peng!” The Fire Dragon cast by Teacher Long broke the defence barrier and it struck on my chest. I soared like the clouds, I violently spat out

blood. Even if it was like this, I knew that Teacher Long had held back. If not, I, who had used up all of my strength, would already turn into ashes.

I fell on the ground 33 metres away. The Sukrad's staff fell out from my hands. There was a tinge of happiness expressed from the corner of my mouth as Mu Zi had already succeeded in escaping.

Teacher Di hugged me and tears flowing down as he said, "Zhang Gong! My child, is it really worth it?!"

I replied as I groaned, "Teacher...Di, I..failed to live up to...your expectations. I..am sorry. Please....take this...magic...staff as your...last re...remembrance of me." After I said that, my head tilted forward and I fainted.

It was so painful and hot! My entire body seemed like it was torn apart.

"Water, I want some water." I said dazedly but no one paid any attention to me. I became light headed and passed out again.

I didn't know how much time had passed. As I groggily opened my eyes after regaining my consciousness, I was submerged into total darkness. 'Where am I? Is this hell? It shouldn't be as I feel pain.' It looked like my wounds weren't light. As I tried to circulate the magic power in my body but found that I had none. I knew that my power had been sealed. With my body void of strength, it was impossible for me to break the magic seal.

My eyes gradually adapted to the darkness, and it seemed to be a stone prison. I was lying on a stone bed, with withered grass beneath me. My limbs were locked by at all four corners of the stone bed. Actually, there wasn't a need for locks as I couldn't even move my fingers. I also definitely couldn't talk.

The left side of the wall suddenly opened and a servant came in. She held a bowl in her hands as she walked to my side. She used a spoon in her hand to feed me a mouthful of the thick congee in the bowl. There had a sweet medicinal taste to it but I didn't know what it was.

Just like that, I was fed 18 times. If three times meant a day, I should

already had been in here for 6 days. I gradually recovered my ability to talk. My wounds weren't as painful, but the other parts of my body were still immobilized.

After the servant came in on the 19th times, I hoarsely asked her, "Where is this?"

After hearing my voice, the servant was startled and shook her head without replying me before feeding me the bowl of thick congee as usual.

I anxiously asked, "Say Something!"

The servant ignored me before turning around and walked out.

After a short period of time, the stone wall opened again. From the sound of the foot step, I knew that it was another person that came.

Ke Zha's voice voiced out, "Zhang Gong, was it really worth the trouble?"

I replied huskily, "Uncle Ke Zha, is that you?"

Ke Zha replied, "It is me. How are you? How is your body recovering?"

I replied, "It is alright. My wounds are already fine but I still couldn't move my body."

Ke Zha sighed, "You child. You really know how to solitarily make decisions without consulting others, and had even destroyed your future for that demonised woman from the demon race. You had hurt the hearts of the few teachers and even Principal Di has fallen ill."

Chapter 10: The Demon Race Invades

I said, “Uncle Ke Zha, I won’t plead for you to forgiveness, but please, just give me a quick end. I know what I have done was a gargantuan crime. How is Teacher Di?”

After a long time, Ke Zha replied, “You had saved me once and also helped me to gain the throne. You also have so many people protecting you. Therefore, how can I kill you? But alas, your crime is too severe, so I can only imprison you. Since your power is too strong, I had them seal your magic power and also fed you medicine that softens your cartilages so that it will be impossible for you to escape. Maybe after many years, Ma Ke will succeed in my position and let you out. Teacher Di shouldn’t have too many problems. It is just that his fury was so strong that he got ill. In his heart, you’re his hope and something that he can be proud of but now, due to your feelings for that girl, you have ignored his feelings. This is a stone prison that is in my original prince mansion. Except for me, there isn’t anyone that knows about this and it is heavily guarded. I won’t let anyone that knows you see you as I don’t want the same mistake to occur again. You should just stay here quiet and steadfastly.”

‘No wonder I couldn’t move. So that was what happened. There was no strong relationship between me and the Emperor. If he had just killed me, I wouldn’t have blamed him. His way of problem-solving has greatly disappointed me.’ I sighed and replied, “I have let Teacher Di down. If there is a next life, I will do anything to repay that old man, even if I’ve to work as an ox or horse for him. Thank you for not killing me, Your Majesty.”

Ke Zha replied helplessly, “I know you will blame me for doing this but you have to know that I am the Kingdom’s Emperor. I have my responsibilities to my people. Your power is too strong so I can’t let you go to side with the demon race. Do you understand?”

I knew that even if I swore that I wouldn’t side with the demon race, he wouldn’t have believed me. I didn’t say anything to see if he still had anything left to say.

Ke Zha continued on to say, “Now, Aixia has already allied with the two big kingdoms Xiuda and Dalu and will all be sending military forces to assist the Ström Fortress. Maybe not long from now, wars will erupt again throughout the entire world. You just rest up here. I will leave first. If I have any time, I will come to see you again.”

I shouted, “Please wait a minute, Your Majesty. Have you captured Mu Zi and the other man?”

Ke Zha sighed and replied, “You have succeeded. The two from the demon race have already escaped.”

At that moment, I rejoiced. My sacrifice wasn’t a waste. Mu Zi was finally out of danger.

The stone wall rang out and Ke Zha left.

My heart surged out like the sea. Even though Ke Zha’s actions were ruthless, I still had my life. I tried to circulate the magic power in my body time after time but the seal was too rigid. Except for the small amount of power from the Holy Sword I felt in my body, there wasn’t any magic undulations. The medicine that softened my cartilages had not only restrained my battle spirit, but had also made it impossible for me to use the Dragon clan’s removal of seals spell due to my lack of strength. Now, I was just a cripple.

One day, two days, three days...

I didn’t know how much time had passed, and I had already completely given up. If someone were to see me, they would see that I had lost a lot of weight and my complexion had paled. I didn’t know how much longer I could hold on.

Emperor Ke Zha returned again today.

His expression was severe and just looked gloomily at me. I asked, “What is it, Your Majesty? Did something happen?”

Ke Zha nodded. “The demon race and the beast clans have allied and is already starting to invade Ström Fortress .”

I was astonished, it couldn't be that Mu Zi didn't convince her father to stop the invasion, right? I anxiously asked, "When did this happen?"

Ke Zha replied, "It is the the day before yesterday. We had already send out the fourth, seventh and twelfth armies to stop the advancement with Principal Long leading them."

I asked, "Is Teacher Di feeling better already?"

Ke Zha shook his head. "I don't know what is really going on with him but he hasn't been doing his job properly."

I nodded. "I'll have to trouble you to check on that old man. Is there something you needed for me by coming to visit me this time?"

Ke Zha replied amazed, "You're really smart. If you didn't betray the human race, it would have been so much better. I am currently not afraid about the Ström Fortress as the defense there is extremely rigid. What I fear is that the method the demon race used to enter the back of the Ström Fortress. We currently don't know how those assassins were able to enter the eastern continent. You had spent sometimes with that demoness of the demon race. I came this time is to ask you if you know how they were able to come over."

I replied, "I know how the demon race came over. You shouldn't need to worry about that as they will need to have a Magister to bring their people over and will deplete their strength due to the immense magic power needed to activate the teleportation array. Moreover, the previous assassination had made them loss a lot of their forces. Even if they were to teleport over, there won't be a lot of them." 'I am a human after all. I definitely don't wish for the magic clan to invade us. A terrible situation will occur that way.'

Ke Zha heaved a sigh of relief. "Zhang Gong, thank you for telling me such a good news. I can relax a little that way. Rest up." After he said that, he turned and walked away. It seemed that he had come in here just to gather information.

The demon race had already started the invasion. I didn't know what the front line was like. I didn't know if Mu Zi had participated in the start

of the war. No matter what the outcome was, it didn't have any relation to me as I was just like a living dead person.

.....

After another three days, and after I had finished eating the thick congee around noon, there was suddenly a bright light that shone beside me. As I had been in darkness for a long time, I instantly saw everything become completely white. I hastily closed my eyes.

When the white light disappeared, I squinted my eyes. There was a small delicate black masked person standing before me.

I asked, "Who are you? Why did you come here?"

The masked person pulled down the black mask. "Zhang Gong, it is me. I have come to rescue you."

After I looked straight at the person, I found out it was Hai Shui. I momentarily turned pale with fright. "Hai Shui, why did you come in here? You should hurriedly leave this place. If you're discovered, you'll be in big trouble."

Hai Shui chucked mournfully, "You can give up your life for Big Sister Mu Zi. Why can't I come to save you?"

I asked, "How did you come here? Ke Zha had said that he was the only one that knew about this place."

Hai Shui replied, "You have already been locked up in this place for two months. In these past two months, you had made a few of the teachers to be extremely anxious about you. Do you know that those few teachers have been monitored by His Majesty because of you, since he feared that they will come to save you?"

Chapter 11: Recovering Magic Power

I dejectedly said, “I’ve caused trouble for those teachers.”

Hai Shui walked to my front and squatted down. Her entire body shuddered and tears flowed out from her eyes. She took out a pill from her bosom and forced it into my mouth. She gently caressed my thin and pallid face and said, “How can they treat you like this? Big brother Zhang Gong, you’ve really suffered.”

The pill liquefied and flowed down my throat. My stomach instantly seemed to work and my energy slowly rejuvenated. I asked, “It is the antidote to the powder that softened my cartilages?”

Hai Shui nodded. “You should try your best to recover your strength and magic powers. If you want to get out of here, you’ve got to rely entirely on yourself.”

I asked, “You still haven’t explained to me on how you got in here?”

Hai Shui replied, “After you were captured that day, Teacher Zhen came to find me and told me about what happened to you before asking me if I’m willing to go save you. I replied that I am. Teacher Zhen said that the few old fellows were being monitored so they couldn’t come and rescue you. The Emperor would definitely not lock you up in the palace, so I have kept a lookout outside the palace to see when His Majesty would leave the palace. After waiting for a long time, he finally came out and I followed him here. However, I couldn’t get in here as it was too heavily guarded, so I returned to tell Teacher Zhen. After he and Teacher Di discussed the problem, they decided to use a teleportation array to come and save you. We estimated the distance and tested it out a couple of times. We finally succeeded. Actually, I had already come in once but it was when you were asleep. I discovered you were abnormally weak and didn’t want to startle you so I headed back and told Teacher Zhen. Teacher Zhen said you should have been given a medication that would soften your cartilages. I don’t know where he got the antidote before letting me come again.”

I had never thought that those few old teachers still had not given up on

me after all this time and still cared for me. Tears flowed down my face and I replied choked with sobs, “You return and help me to thank Teacher Zhen.”

Hai Shui replied, “Time is pressing so I’ve got to go. I’ll come again three days later. It will also be the time you make your escape. You’ll have to spend three days recovering your strength.”

I asked, “How is Ma Ke and your sister?”

Hai Shui sighed, “His Majesty feared that Ma Ke will come to save you due to your brotherhood so he locked him up. My sister hasn’t seen Ma Ke for a long time already.”

I replied in pain, “I never thought that because of me, I would have implicated so many people. I’m really sorry. You really shouldn’t have come to save me. If something goes wrong, you’ll ruin your future. I really don’t know how to repay you, you’ve done such an immense favor for me.”

Hai Shui’s tears dropped on my face before she replied, “Big brother Zhang Gong, you don’t need to say anything further. As long as you can give a small portion of your heart to me, I’ll be satisfied. We’re all your friends. You’ll only know our feelings during dangerous times. Now, I really have to go. Take care! We’ll meet again in three days time. “After she said that, she took out an escape scroll from her bosom and teleported away.”

I finally understood. Hai Shui treated me as though I was treating Mu Zi. It was out of willingness due to love. ‘You’ll only know our feelings during dangerous times.’ was an extremely good phrase. You came to save me in my most difficult time. How could I not feel gratitude towards you?

Hai Shui’s coming had let me break out from my living dead state; so everyone hadn’t abandoned me. I still had hope. I really still had hope. As I gradually recovered my strength, my heart gradually started to work again.

After an hour, I could slowly move my limbs. Since I hadn’t been moving for a long time, my blood flow wasn’t very smooth. My entire body was still void of strength. I needed to supplement my body. ‘If my body

isn't healthy, how can I recover? Didn't Ke Zha said that as long as I couldn't get out, he'll grant me any wishes that I have? Let's give it a try!"

When the time of food came again, it was the same servant as per usual that came bringing over a bowl of thick congee. After I drank the thick congee, I told her, "Can't you bring something else the next time you come?"

After suddenly hearing me, the servant jumped in fright before asking, "What do you want?"

I bitterly smiled and replied, "I currently don't even have the strength to chew. What can I even eat. I want to drink some Earth Dragon Grass Jelly.. If this continues, even if the Emperor doesn't kill me, I'll definitely die from being too weak."

The servant looked at me cautiously before saying, "Alright, but don't you dare play any tricks on me."

I hastily replied, "I'm already like this. What tricks will I be able to play?"

The servant nodded and turned before walking out. As expected, my next meal was Earth Dragon Grass Jelly. I greedily drank the nutrients of the soup. I initially thought about having main dishes but I didn't want her to become suspicious about me.

The Earth Dragon Grass Jelly was worthy of being a strong supplement. I felt much better under the effects of it.

After the servant had gone out, I started to constantly move my body to regain my strength as fast as possible.

After a day had passed, even though my body was still extremely feeble, my battle spirit had gradually recovered. This was really great! I would no longer feel feeble after drinking it.

The time was ripe to test chanting the weird chant from the Dragon clan. I needed to recover my magic power as soon as possible.

After trying the first time, it didn't work. After trying the second time, it

also didn't work. It was the same for the third time.....After trying it for 37 times, my entire body lit up. The familiar feeling of breaking the seal came back. A golden halo spreaded out with the center of my eye brows as its center.

After the golden light flashed, I could feel the Gold Dans in my body. I was wild with joy. The warmth of the Holy Sword came forth. The Gold Dans status were abnormally dispirited while the Holy Sword was the complete opposite. The warmth of the power permeated through my body, constantly expanding my shrunken meridians.

I didn't dare move the shackles and just quietly laid there, carefully circulating the power of the Holy Sword.

As I feared being discovered by the servant who came to deliver the food, I let my body recover gradually.

The Holy Sword's power was really strong. My body was soon recovered. Even though it wasn't comparable to how I was previously, it shouldn't affect my movements.

The two Gold Dans in my body regained their liveliness after I had continuously poured light elements into my body. They started to circulate in my body so that the recovery speed of my magic power would become much faster.

I hadn't craved for power like I had now. Even though I was still in prison, my mood had changed as if the sky and the earth had turned upside down. I felt that living was so amazing and that I could control my fate again.

Chapter 12: Escaping from the Abyss

Three days and 9 times of drinking the soup had quickly passed by, as I anticipated for Hai Shui to come release me.

Finally, the waiting was over. A light shone and Hai Shui's familiar figure appeared before me once again with a long bag in her hand. When she saw that I was still locked on the stone bed, she was astonished and whispered, "Zhang Gong, you still haven't recovered?"

I replied, "I already have, but I was afraid that they would figure it out, so I didn't break free from the shackles."

Hai Shui sighed in relief. "Hurry, we've got to go! We'll need to make use of the time we have."

After I silently circulated my battle spirit, my entire body emitted bright white light. After using strength on my limbs, 'Dang! Dang! Dang! Dang!' sounded as I easily freed myself from my shackles. I leapt to Hai Shui's side. I also found that being able to stand was so awesome.

Hai Shui passed me the long bag and took out an escape scroll. "Let's be on our way!"

I took the long bag and opened it. It was my Sukrad's staff. When I tightly held onto it, I felt the ties that were linked by flesh and blood.

I took the escape scroll from Hai Shui. "I think it is better that I do it. You just have to hold onto my arm."

Hai Shui asked, "Are you sure you can do it with the current state of your body?"

I nodded. "No problem. I've already recovered half of my magic powers. As long as I don't face the powers of the few old teachers, I should be able to deal with them."

Hai Shui expressed a happy look and replied, "This escape scroll is Teacher Zhen's most recent research. It has the ability to determine the spot of the teleportation. It can send to an exact spot with a limit of 10 kilometers. In other words, it can send us to any position we want within

a 10 kilometers range. I've already set the location so you can just activate the scroll." After I said that, she clung onto my arm and also stuck her body to mine.

I looked at her embarrassedly but seeing that she didn't have any intention to move back a little, I just let her be. I deeply inhaled before using the Sukrad's staff to cast a protective barrier around us before activating the escape scroll. The stone prison had lost our presence after a golden light flashed.

The feeling of using magic again was so moving. It felt as though I had gained a new life. I was extremely interested in everything and magics phenomenons. I was filled with love towards life.

After the light shone, I found that we had unexpectedly teleported into a room. The room was all pale pink in colour. It felt very comforting. The entire room was filled with sunlight. I asked Hai Shui in surprise, "Where is this? Did you set the location wrongly?"

Hai Shui reluctantly pulled away from my arm and pouted. "It is only you that set the location wrongly. This is my room."

I immediately was greatly alarmed. "What? This is your room? Why did you set this place as the location for the escape scroll?" It was unexpectedly Hai Shui's room.

Hai Shui replied, "What's wrong with my room? This place is safe and is also in my family's place. Who will come here to search, especially if it is my room?"

I blushed and replied abashedly, "I am a guy. If I stay in your room, it will damage your reputation and integrity."

Hai Shui's expression darkened. "I'm not scared. Why are you? Your heart only holds Sister Mu Zi. If this is her room, you won't be so conservative."

Seeing that she got a little angry, I didn't dare to rebuke her. I changed the conversation topic by asking, "How are the few teachers? Is Teacher Di feeling better? How is the situation at the frontlines?"

Hai Shui said with her eye brows frowned, “You ask so many questions at one go. How do you expect me to answer your questions!”

I surrendered and said, “Alright...Alright! You can answer them one at the time. You can start by telling me about Teacher Di’s situation.”

Hai Shui giggled and replied, “Teacher Di doesn’t have any problems. The main reason was that he was extremely worried about you to the point that he fell ill. You are Teacher Di’s heart problem.”

My eyes reddened as I thought about the many years that Teacher Di had guided me. I lamented, “I really let Teacher Di down this time. Hai!”

Hai Shui replied, “You don’t have to be this upset. If you can make accomplishments in the world in the future, he will be pleased. He also wishes you the best. That old man said you don’t have to look for him and wants you to hurry, and get away from here. After everything has settled, we’ll discuss further and to also not forget your tasks.”

I shook my head. “I’m afraid that I’ll have to let him down again. After I get out of here, the first thing I’ll do is to save Mu Zi. One out of ten demon race will survive. If I don’t die in the process, I’ll accomplish the tasks.”

Hai Shui asked in surprise, “What? You’re going to the demon race?”

I resolutely nodded my head. “I must go and find Mu Zi. I really can’t lose her.”

Hai Shui lowered her head and muttered, “If you can treat me like this, and even if I die, I’m willing.” She said that as she cried. Looking at her appearance, it was so moving. I couldn’t control myself and gently embraced her and patted her back. “Be good. Don’t cry. How can I not understand your feelings to me? You have risked your life to save mine this time. I am really grateful for that. If you don’t mind, I am willing.....” I really didn’t want to hurt this adorable girl anymore. Even though it might be out of sympathy, I was prepared to accept her.

Hai Shui widened her eyes and asked. “Really? Is this for real?” She rejoiced for only a short while before she quietened and said, “It is

impossible. You already have Sister Mu Zi. She won't accept me."

I patted her head, "Silly girl, Mu Zi isn't that stingy. She has already brought this up many times to accept you."

Hai Shui raised her head and asked, "Really?"

I sincerely nodded my head and held Hai Shui's hand. "Are you willing to accept me? Even though I can't say that I love you, I'm willing to slowly cultivate my feelings towards you. You helped me too many times. I also don't want to continue hurting you any further."

Hai Shui's face expressed a sign of happiness before her happiness surged out. She tightly hugged my waist and place her face on my chest and said elatedly, "This is too awesome! It's just so great! My dream finally came true. Zhang Gong, do you know that I've waited for this day to come after suffering from so much pain?"

I said in astonishment. "It can't be that you're as open minded as Mu Zi, right? You don't mind being with her as well?"

Hai Shui shook her head smilingly, "I definitely don't mind. Your magic is so strong so there'll be a lot of girls that will fall for you. I'm already extremely ecstatic that Sister Mu Zi doesn't mind me being with you. As long as I can be with you, I don't care about anything."

Chapter 13: Finale – Sorrowful Parting

Hai Shui's love for me was unexpectedly deep, I found myself moved. I gently kissed her forehead. Hai Shui's entire body shivered before she raised her head and looked at me, her eyes filled with deep feelings for me. She slowly closed her eyes and I leaned forward. I, at first, gently kissed her lips. After that, it became out of hand. Hai Shui reacted frantically as she wrapped her arms around my neck. It was as though she wanted to release all of her love for me.

I seemed to be open with Hai Shui, compared to being conservative with Mu Zi. I didn't know when I actually embraced her as we laid on the bed before extending my hand into her clothes. My thigh unintentionally touched the icy pillar of the bed. My mind became slightly more clear. I gently pushed Hai Shui away. Her delicate face was completely red and her eyes were filled with lust. She said seductively, "Zhang Gong! Zhang Gong!"

The clearness of my mind had awoken my rationality. Therefore, I suppressed my arousal. I said, "Behave yourself. We shouldn't be doing this. Wake up." As I said that, I gathered a small ice cone and placed it on Hai Shui's forehead.

Hai Shui's body shuddered and the lust in her eyes decreased. She saw what was in front of her before she shyly buried her head in my embrace. "You're so bad. I won't come again."

I hadn't experienced such a situation before. I felt that it was not bad that, I could control myself. I said embarrassed, "Sorry, I didn't do that on purpose. Just now....."

Hai Shui chuckled and replied, "You're still talking about that? You're annoying. That's right, now isn't the time to talk about this. You should set a teleportation array to be able to leave the place anytime. It'll be safer that way."

I nodded. "What you say is right. Please help me, keep a lookout outside. I'll start drawing it now."

Hai Shui agreed before she fixed her clothings. She covered her red hot face and ran to the entrance to cool down.

Seeing her fading back, there was an indescribable feeling in my heart. I shook my head before I started to draw the escape magic array on the ground.

Since my condition wasn't perfect, I couldn't teleport too far away. So, I had decided to design the teleport to move me 500 kilometres away, just as I did for Mu Zi to allow her a path of escape. I felt I would have a better chance of escaping that way.

The drawing of the teleportation array was really tiring, especially when I was not in a perfect condition. Hai Shui came to look in a couple of times. I had used an entire day to complete the magic array.

I stretched my waist before laying on Hai Shui's bed. Hai Shui asked, "Have you finished drawing?"

I replied, "Yes, I have. How is the condition outside?"

Hai Shui said smilingly, "What else can happen? They are searching to capture you. You're wanted throughout the Kingdom already. As long as you're within the Aixia Kingdom, you must be careful."

I replied, "Is there really such a need to be so exaggerated? Am I that important?"

Hai Shui sniggered before replying, "Of course you are. You are one of eleven Magisters in the entire human race and you can also use forbidden spells."

I sighed, "Maybe it was because I showed too much of my talents that had resulted in such an outcome. After I leave, you must keep a low profile so that you won't suffer what I did. Please convey my words to Ma Ke and the rest."

Hai Shui looked at me with her eyes widened.

I asked astonishingly, "What is the matter? Why do you look as though you want to eat me?"

Hai Shui said grievanced, “You are not bringing me along?”

I immediately was startled. “What? You want to go with me? It’s impossible.”

Hai Shui momentarily cried and said as she sobbed, “You lied to me. You lied. You just said that you accepted me and now, you suddenly change your mind.”

I said, while at a loss, “How can I do that? What I said previously was true. I’m going to an extremely dangerous place. It will be too dangerous if you’re to go there as well. You should stay here to increase your magic power. If I succeed in saving Mu Zi, I’ll definitely come back for you.”

After she heard what I said, she cried more vigorously. As she cried, she said, “You’re so bad. You lied to me to get my body before tossing me aside. Wu....Wu....Wu!”

What? When did I lie to get her body? I hastily went over to cover her mouth and said, “Little missy, can you lower your voice? If someone else was to listen to what you said, I’ll no longer be human.”

Hai Shui ignored me and continued crying.

I suddenly said sternly, “Stop crying and listen to me!”

Hai Shui was shocked from my sudden rage and stopped crying.

I gently said, “Be good. You must listen to me. It’ll be very inconvenient if I bring you along. I don’t know what is the situation like at the demon race. Furthermore, I need to take care of the aftermath. Do you know why I was caught previously? It was because I left traces of the magic array. After I leave, I want you to help me erase the traces. Don’t worry. I’ll definitely try my best to stay alive. I also can’t bear to part with you. You must be good and obediently await for my return. I’ll definitely come back for you, alright?”

Hai Shui’s eyes flashed with complicated expressions. It was obvious that she was having an inner battle.

I continued saying, “I’ll first find some of my friends in Xiuda. With

their help, I'm sure that I won't be in any danger."

Hai Shui tilted her head and asked, "Will you really be out of danger?"

I nodded. "I promise." 'Only the Gods will know what I just promised. Can I predict whether it will be dangerous? The answer is most definitely, no.'

Hai Shui replied sulkily, "You were so fierce previously." She was really an adorably petite little thing.

I embraced her and replied, "I won't do that ever again. How can I bear to be fierce towards you?"

Hai Shui replied, "You must come back safely. I'll wait for you. No matter how long it takes, I'll wait for you."

I nodded. "Alright. I'll definitely be back. There's my teachers, friends and you, who is the most important to me, waiting for me here."

Hai Shui said with her face reddened, "Can I give you my first time? I'll feel more secure that way."

I jumped in fright from her words. I never thought that such an innocent little girl would say such words. "No, I'll wait for the time when I formally marry you then....."

Hai Shui revealed an adorable expression. "You really don't want?"

I seriously nodded my head. If I really took Hai Shui now, wouldn't it be bad for her if I were to die in some foreign land?

Hai Shui replied, "Alright! However, you must give something to me as a pledge of your love for me to keep and remember."

I was stunned. "What shall I give you?"

Hai Shui thought for a while and replied, "Anything."

I thought for a while before taking out a relatively big blue crystal from my spatial space. "This shall be it." After saying that, I took out the dagger that Ma Ke had given to me previously and used my battle spirit to carve the crystal. My hands were counted to be stable, and a sparkling

and translucent blue heart shaped crystal very quickly appeared in my hand. I also craved ‘Zhang Gong’ on top of it before giving it to Hai Shui. “Do you like it?”

Hai Shui carefully took it in her hand and answered with a joyful face. “I really like it. Whenever I see this heart, it’ll be as though I’m looking at you in the future.” After she said that, she grabbed onto my left hand and unknowingly took out a dark green ring and put it onto my middle finger. She smiled and said, “This is what I’ll give you. There is my name on the inner side of the ring. You mustn’t lose it. I’ll leave the ring finger for Sister Mu Zi.”

I gently kissed her cheek. “Silly girl, you just have to wait for me to come back. Do you know what is the situation like of the demon race?”

Hai Shui replied, “I heard that they weren’t fighting ferociously. Both sides had gathered their army forces and just stood opposite of each other. There were only some small confrontations. From the looks of it, the demon race and the beast clans still can’t easily make their moves. Relax! The security of the Ström Fortress shouldn’t be a problem.”

I had let down a stone in my heart. “That’s great. If they were really to fight, both sides will definitely suffer. War is too terrifying and the ones that suffers the most are the commoners.”

I caressed Hai Shui’s long hair and continued to say, “You should stay at the academy to train. After everything is settled, I’ll definitely come to find you. The current atmosphere is extremely nerve wrecking. I have to go as soon as possible.”

Hai Shui eye immediately reddened. She tightly hugged me and replied, “I don’t want you to go. I really don’t.”

I consoled her by saying, “Be good and stop throwing childish tempers. It isn’t that I won’t be coming back. Please help me look after those few old teachers. They aren’t young so it’ll be great if nothing happens to them. Even though Emperor Ke Zha has great skills and strategy, he isn’t as magnanimous. After you graduate, it’ll be best that you don’t join the military. Don’t tell this to Ma Ke either as it may influence his mood. Ma

Ke has a magnanimous personality. If he inherits the throne in the future, I'll be able to relax."

Hai Shui nodded. "Do you really have to go?"

I nodded. "I also don't know how my friends in Xiuda are doing. I'll first go and meet up with them, before going towards the demon races stronghold. I hope that she's willing to come back with me though."

Hai Shui said, "Sister Mu Zi will definitely come back with you. I'll wait for you two."

I replied, "After I leave, you must immediately erase the magic array and never let anyone discover it. If not, it'll not only bring you trouble, it'll also implicate your family. The three main families had allied with Duke Te Yi initially to rebel against Ke Zha. Ke Zha's heart must be filled with hatred. If he gets the chance, he'll definitely treat you badly."

I embraced Hai Shui and stepped into the magic array. I deeply kissed her lips before pushing her out of the array. A golden light enclosed her body.

I shouted, "Hai Shui! You must take care of yourself. I'm leaving." After saying that, I activated the array. If I don't head off now, Hai Shui would definitely badger me. It was better to just get the pain over with, rather than prolonging the agony.

Hai Shui cried out in fear, "Big brother Zhang Gong, you must come back safely."

I smiled and waved my hands at her. "I will." I instantly vanished from Hai Shui's room after a golden light flashed.

Hai Shui teared as she cleared the magic array that I had drawn but her heart had come with me.

Illustrations

Zhang Gong Wei



Mu Zi Mo



Zhan Hu



Lao Lun Di



Xiu Si Ma Li



Dong Ri Huo



Credits

Translator: [Radiant Translations](#)

Epub: [Estevam](#) / [dotNOVEL](#)